

# Database Management Systems

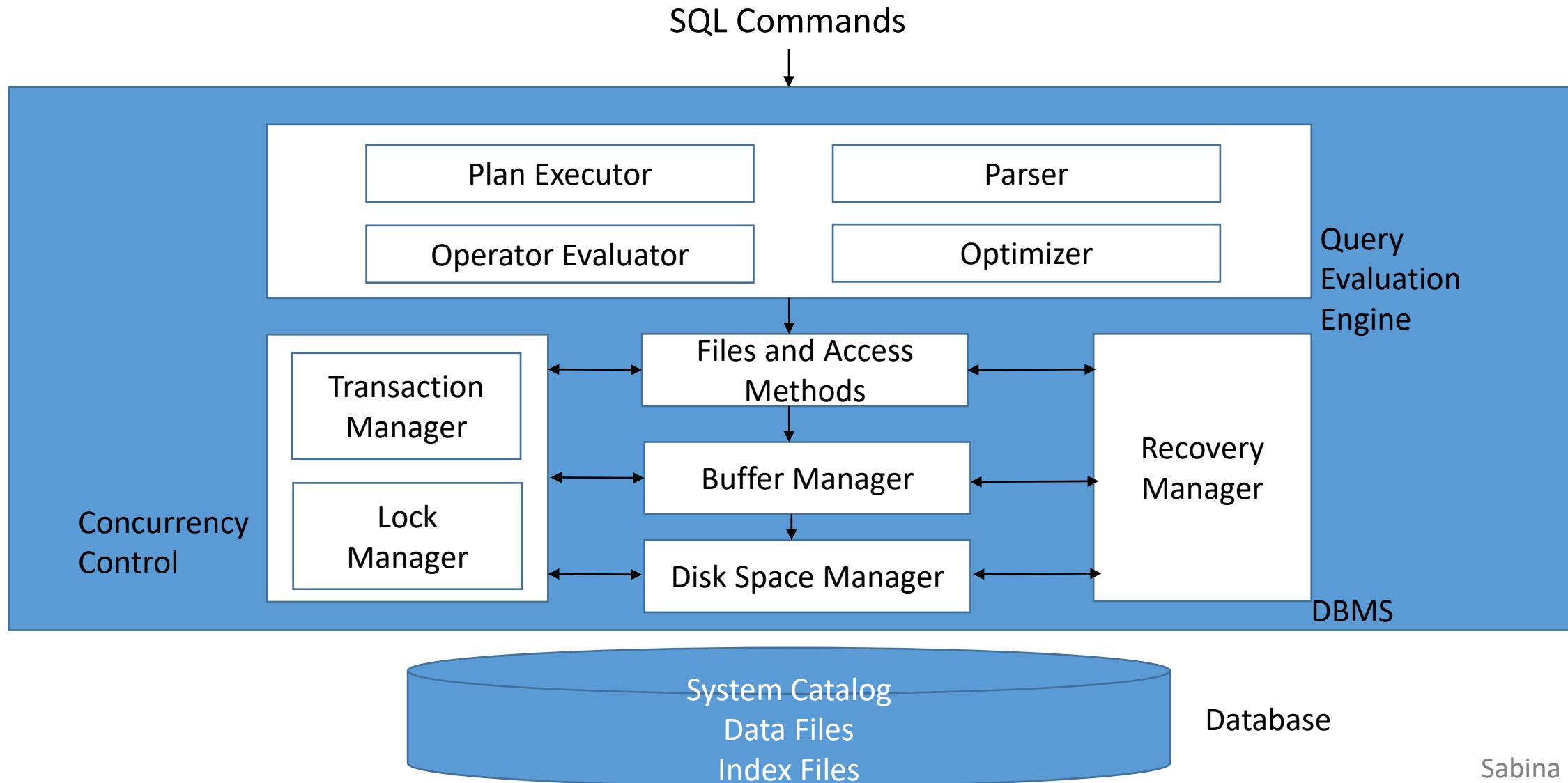
Lecture 1

Introduction - Transactions

# DBMSs

- Lecture2 + Seminar1 + Laboratory1
- grading
  - written exam (W) - 50%
  - practical test (P) - 25%
  - labs (L) - 25%
  - W, P  $\geq$  5
- to attend the exam, a student must have at least 6 laboratory attendances and at least 5 seminar attendances, according to the Computer Science Department's decision:
  - <https://www.cs.ubbcluj.ro/wp-content/uploads/Hotarare-CDI-15.03.2017.pdf>
  - <https://www.cs.ubbcluj.ro/~sabina>
  - sabina@cs.ubbcluj.ro

# DBMS Architecture



# Concurrency in a DBMS

- scenarios

1. airline reservation system

- travel agent 1 (TA1) processes customer 1's (C1) request for a seat on flight 10
  - system retrieves from the DB tuple *<flight: 10, available seats: 1>* and displays it to TA1
  - C1 takes time to decide whether or not to make the reservation
- travel agent 2 (TA2) processes customer 2's (C2) request for a seat on flight 10
  - system displays the same tuple to TA2: *<flight: 10, available seats: 1>*
  - C2 immediately reserves the seat:
    - system updates the tuple retrieved by TA2: *<flight: 10, available seats: 0>*

# Concurrency in a DBMS

- scenarios

1. airline reservation system

- system updates the database, i.e., replaces flight 10's tuple in the DB with the new tuple *<flight: 10, available seats: 0>*
  - C1 also decides to reserve the seat
    - however, TA1 is still working on the previously retrieved tuple, not knowing another user has changed the data
    - system updates the tuple retrieved by TA1: *<flight: 10, available seats: 0>*
    - system updates the database, i.e., replaces flight 10's tuple in the DB with the new tuple *<flight: 10, available seats: 0>*
- => the last remaining seat on flight 10 has been sold 2 times!

# Concurrency in a DBMS

- scenarios

## 2. bank system

- 1000 accounts:  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_{1000}$
- program P1 is computing the total balance:  $\sum_{i=1}^{1000} Balance(A_i)$
- program P2 transfers 500 lei from  $A_1$  to  $A_{1000}$
- if P2's transfer occurs after P1 has “seen”  $A_1$ , but before it has “seen”  $A_{1000}$   
=> the total balance will be incorrect:  $\sum_{i=1}^{1000} Balance(A_i) + 500$
- objective: prevent such anomalies without disallowing concurrent access!

# Concurrency in a DBMS

- what happens when concurrent access is forbidden?
    - consider again scenario 1
    - regard the activity of  $TA_i$  as invoking a copy of the program below:
- ```
S ← seatsAvailable(flight 10)
if (S > 0) then
    if (customer decides to purchase ticket)
        S--
        seatsAvailable(flight 10) ← S
    endif
else
    tell customer there are no more seats on flight 10
endif
```

# Concurrency in a DBMS

- what happens when concurrent access is forbidden?
  - if the scheduling policy doesn't allow interleaved execution, TA2's copy of the previous program can begin execution only after TA1's invocation of the program has completed, i.e., after C1 has made the decision and the DB has been updated  
=> if C1 decided to buy the ticket, TA2 sees tuple *<flight: 10, available seats: 0>* => C2 will be correctly informed that flight 10 is sold out

# Concurrency in a DBMS

- what happens when concurrent access is forbidden?
- disallowing concurrent execution can lead to unacceptable delays
  - e.g., while C1 decides whether to make the reservation, travel agent 3 (TA3) receives a request from customer 3 (C3) for a seat on flight 11
  - since C1 and C3 are interested in different flights, their requests can be concurrently processed
  - if concurrent access is not allowed, C3's request can be processed only after C1 has made the decision and TA1's invocation of the program has finished

# Concurrency in a DBMS

- what happens when concurrent access is forbidden?
- obs. when programs are executed serially (i.e., one after the other), results are correct
- however, the DBMS interleaves the operations (reads / writes of database objects) of different user programs, as concurrent execution is fundamental for the performance of the application
- the disk is frequently accessed (and access times are relatively slow) => overlap I/O and CPU activity
- if concurrent execution is allowed, one needs to tackle the effects of interleaving user programs

# Transactions

- database partitioned into items (e.g., *tuple*, *attribute*)
- transaction
  - any *one execution* of a program in a DBMS
  - sequence of one or more operations on a database: *read* / *write* / *commit* / *abort*
  - final operation:
    - commit or abort

# Transactions

- $I$  – an item in a DB
- fundamental operations in a transaction  $T$  ( $T$  can be omitted when clear from context):
  - $\text{read}(T, I)$
  - $\text{write}(T, I)$
  - $\text{commit}(T)$ 
    - successful completion:  $T$ 's changes are to become permanent
  - $\text{abort}(T)$ 
    - $T$  is *rolled back*: its changes are undone

# Transaction Properties – ACID

- properties a DBMS must ensure for a transaction in order to maintain data in the presence of concurrent execution / system failures
- atomicity
  - a transaction is atomic
  - either all the operations in the transaction are executed, or none are (*all-or-nothing*)
- consistency
  - a transaction must preserve the consistency of the database after execution, i.e., a transaction is a correct program
- isolation
  - a transaction is protected from the effects of concurrently scheduling other transactions

# Transaction Properties – ACID

- durability
  - the effects of a successfully completed transaction should persist even if a system crash occurs before all the changes have been written to disk

# Transaction Properties – Atomicity

- a transaction can commit / abort:
  - *commit* – after finalizing all its operations (successful completion)
  - *abort* – after executing some of its operations; the DBMS can itself abort a transaction
- user's perspective:
  - either all operations in a transaction are executed, or none are
  - the transaction is treated as an indivisible unit of execution
- the DBMS *logs* all transactions' writes, so it can *undo* them if necessary (i.e., undo the actions of incomplete transactions)
- *crash recovery*
  - guarantees atomicity in the presence of system crashes

## Transaction Properties – Atomicity

- e.g., consider the following transaction transferring money from AccountA to AccountB:

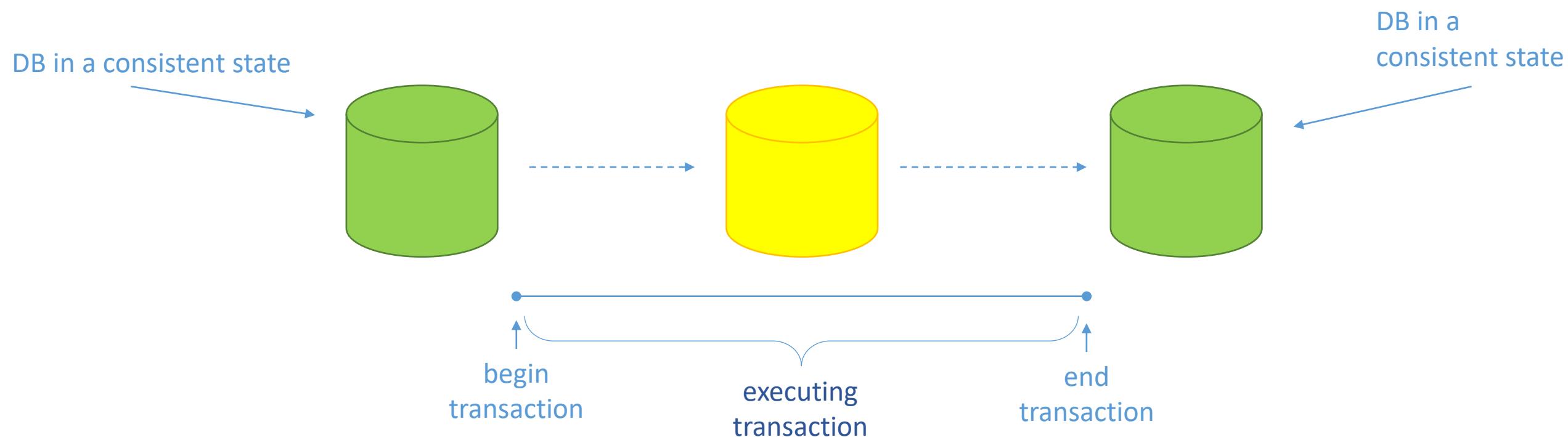
AccountA  $\leftarrow$  AccountA - 100

AccountB  $\leftarrow$  AccountB + 100

- if the transaction fails in the middle, 100 lei must be restored to AccountA, i.e., partial effects are undone

# Transaction Properties – Consistency

- in the absence of other transactions, a transaction that executes on a consistent database state leaves the database in a consistent state



## Transaction Properties – Consistency

- transactions do not violate the integrity constraints (ICs) specified on the database (e.g., restrictions declared via CREATE TABLE statements) and enforced by the DBMS
- transactions are correct programs
- e.g.: consider again the money transfer transaction:

AccountA  $\leftarrow$  AccountA - 100

AccountB  $\leftarrow$  AccountB + 100

- assume the transaction starts execution at time  $t_i$  and completes at  $t_j$
- consistency constraint:  $\text{Balance}(\text{AccountA}) + \text{Balance}(\text{AccountB}) \text{ at } t_i = \text{Balance}(\text{AccountA}) + \text{Balance}(\text{AccountB}) \text{ at } t_j$
- it's the responsibility of the user to write a correct transaction that meets the above constraint

## Transaction Properties – Consistency

- the DBMS does not understand the semantics of the data, of user actions (e.g., how is the interest computed, the fact that AccountB must be credited with the amount of money debited from AccountA, etc)

## Transaction Properties – Isolation

- transactions are protected from the effects of concurrently scheduling other transactions
- users concurrently submit transactions to the DBMS, but can think of their transactions as if they were executing in isolation, independently of other users' transactions
- i.e., users must not deal with arbitrary effects produced by other concurrently running transactions; a transaction is seen as if it were in single-user mode

# Transaction Properties – Durability

- the system must guarantee the effects of a successfully completed transaction won't be lost, even if failures subsequently occur
- i.e., once the DBMS informs the user a transaction has completed successfully, its effects should persist, even if a system crash occurs before all changes have been saved on the disk
  - the *Write-Ahead Log* property
    - changes are written to the log (on the disk) before being reflected in the database
  - the log ensures atomicity, durability

# Interleaved Executions - Example

- consider the two transactions below:

|           |                         |                         |     |
|-----------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----|
| T1: BEGIN | $A \leftarrow A - 100$  | $B \leftarrow B + 100$  | END |
| T2: BEGIN | $A \leftarrow 1.05 * A$ | $B \leftarrow 1.05 * B$ | END |

- T1 is transferring 100 lei from account A to account B
- T2 is adding 5% interest to both accounts
- T1 and T2 are submitted together to the DBMS
- serial execution: T1 can execute before or after T2 on a database DB, resulting in one of the following database states:
  - State( (T1T2), DB) or
  - State( (T2T1), DB)
- interleaved execution: the net effect of executing T1 and T2 *must* be identical to State( (T1 T2), DB) or State( (T2 T1), DB)

# Interleaved Executions - Example

- consider the following interleaving of operations (schedule):

| T1                     | T2                      |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| $A \leftarrow A - 100$ | $A \leftarrow 1.05 * A$ |
| $B \leftarrow B + 100$ | $B \leftarrow 1.05 * B$ |

✓

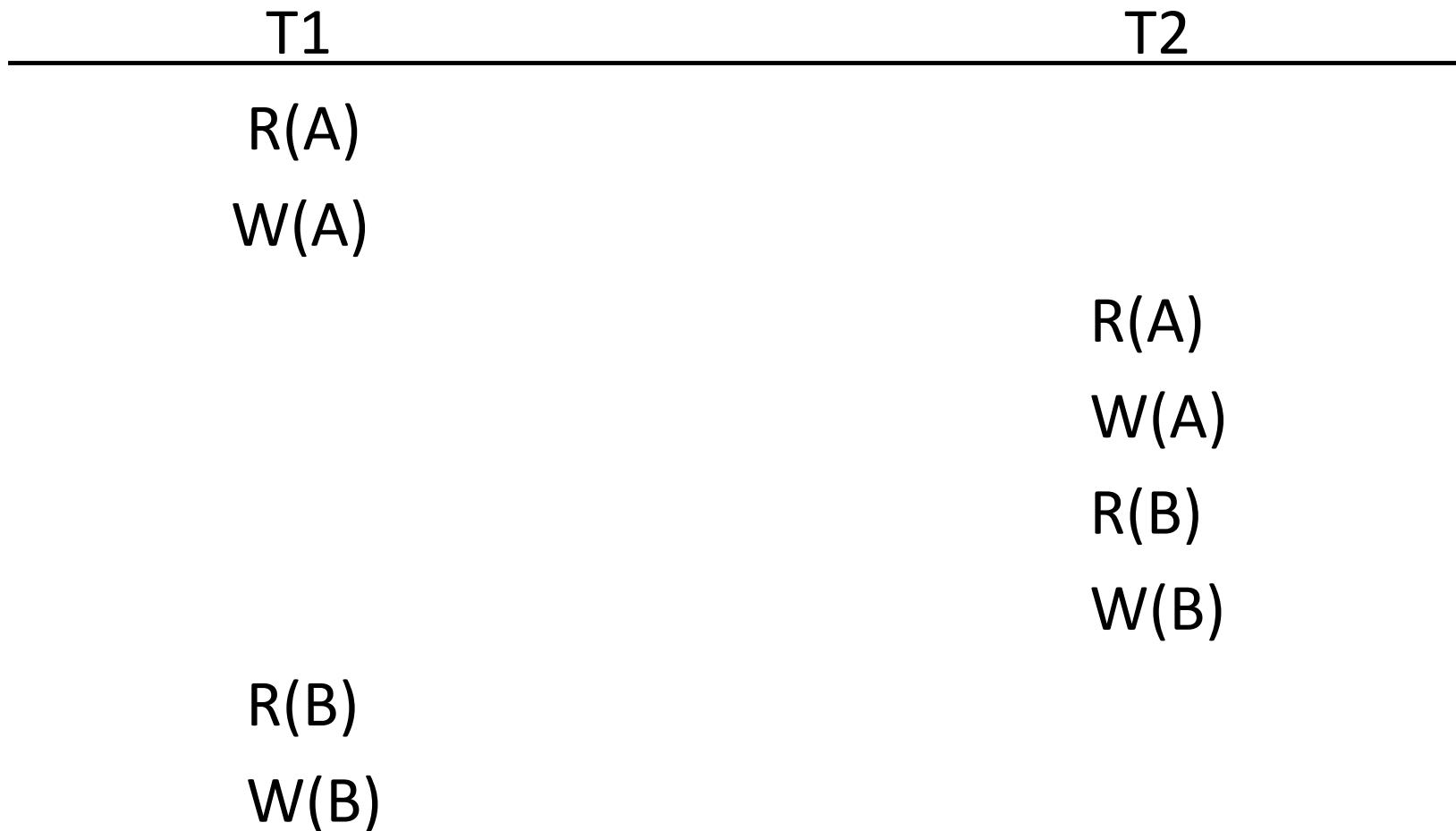
# Interleaved Executions - Example

- but what about the following schedule:



# Interleaved Executions - Example

- the DBMS's view of the second schedule:

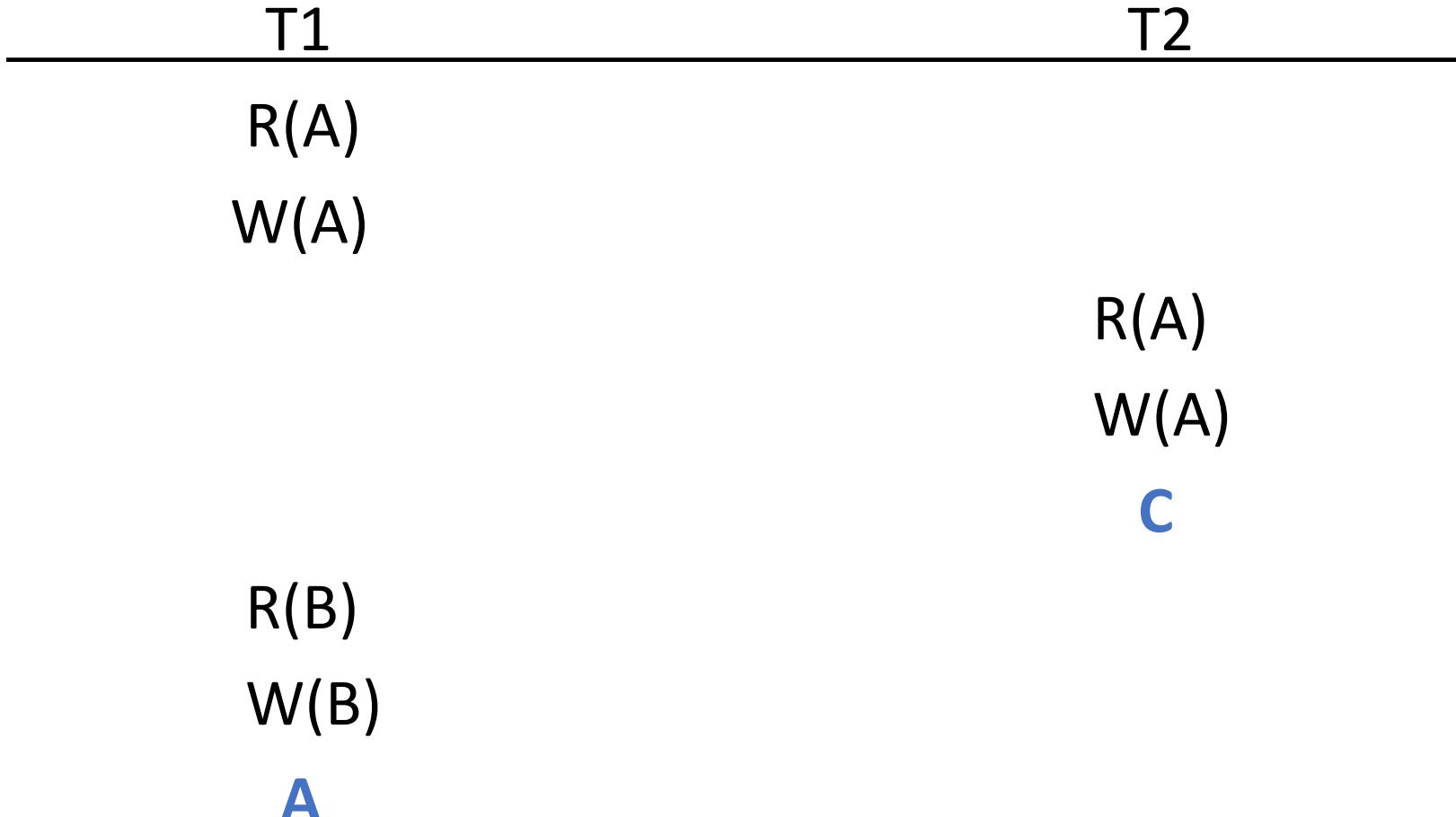


# Interleaved Executions - Anomalies

- two transactions are only reading a data object => no conflict, order of execution not important
- two transactions are reading and / or writing completely separate data objects => no conflict, order of execution not important
- two transactions are operating on the same data object, and at least one of them performs a write operation => order of execution is important
  - WR conflict
    - T2 is reading a data object previously written by T1
  - RW conflict
    - T2 is writing a data object previously read by T1
  - WW conflict
    - T2 is writing a data object previously written by T1

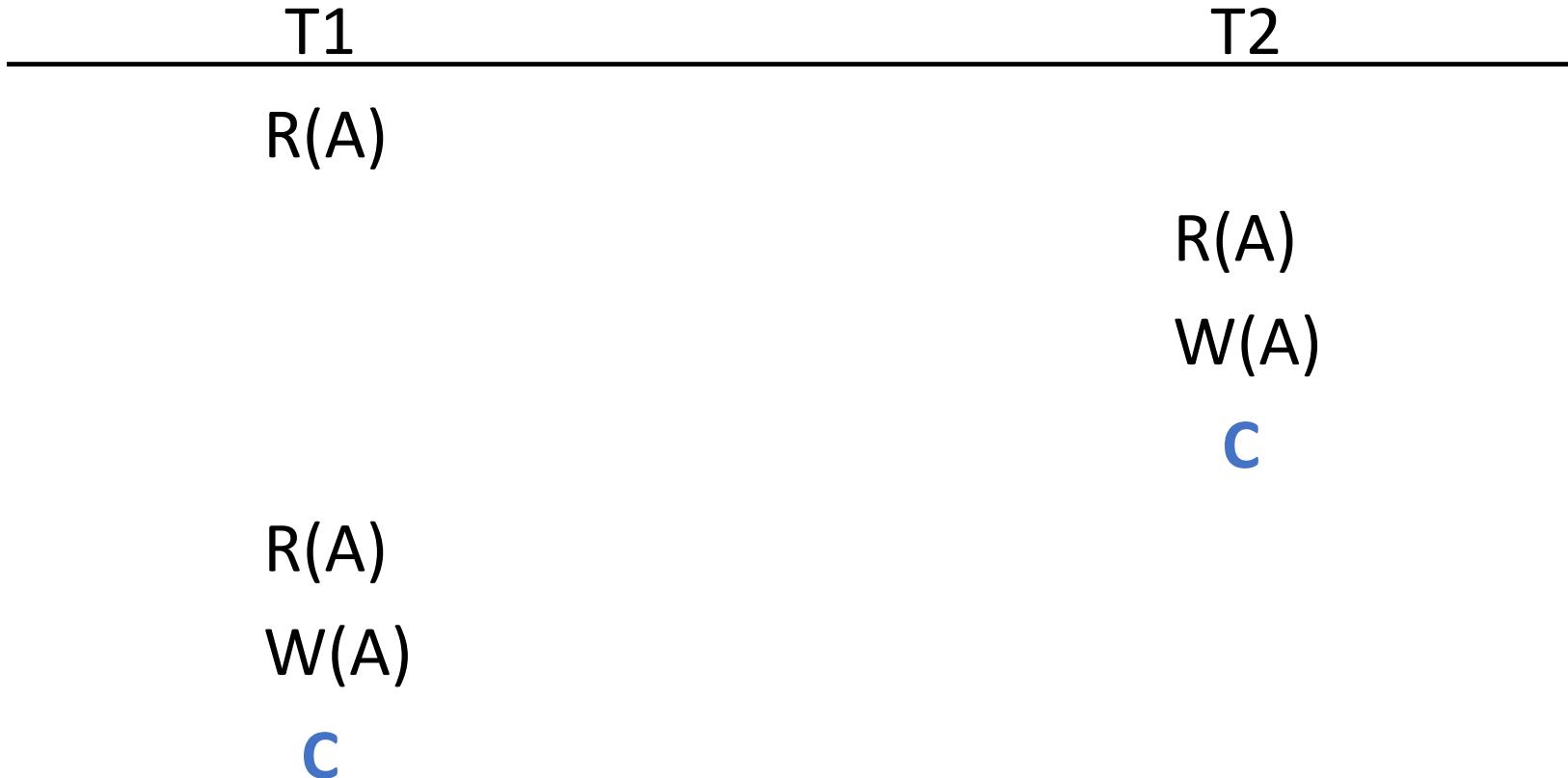
# Interleaved Executions - Anomalies

- reading uncommitted data (WR conflicts, *dirty reads*)



# Interleaved Executions - Anomalies

- unrepeatable reads (RW conflicts)



# Interleaved Executions - Anomalies

- overwriting uncommitted data (WW conflicts):



# Scheduling Transactions

- schedule
  - a list of operations (Read / Write / Commit / Abort) of a set of transactions with the property that the order of the operations in each individual transaction is preserved

# Scheduling Transactions

T1

read(V)

read(sum)

read(V)

sum := sum + V

write(sum)

commit

T2

read(V)

V := V + 50

write(V)

commit

Schedule

read1(V)

read1(sum)

read2(V)

write2(V)

commit2

read1(V)

write1(sum)

commit1

# Serial and Non-Serial Schedules

- serial schedule

- a schedule in which the actions of different transactions are not interleaved

| T1                                                                                        | T2                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| read(V)<br>read(sum)<br>read(V)<br>$\text{sum} := \text{sum} + V$<br>write(sum)<br>commit | read(V)<br>$V := V + 50$<br>write(V)<br>commit |

# Serial and Non-Serial Schedules

- non-serial schedule
  - a schedule in which the actions of different transactions are interleaved

read1(V)

read1(sum)

read2(V)

write2(V)

commit2

read1(V)

write1(sum)

commit1

# Serializability

- $C$  – set of transactions
- $Sch(C)$  – the set of schedules for  $C$
- *Serializable schedule*
  - a schedule  $S \in Sch(C)$  is serializable if the effect of  $S$  on a consistent database instance is identical to the effect of some serial schedule  $S_0 \in Sch(C)$

# Serializability

- serializability - correctness criterion for an interleaved execution schedule
  - consider the serial execution schedule  $(T_1, T_2, \dots, T_n)$ ,  $T_i \in C$
  - assume the database instance is in a correct state prior to executing  $T_1$
  - every transaction must preserve the consistency of the database
    - => the database is in a correct state after  $T_n$  completes execution
    - => if a serializable schedule is executed on a correct database instance, it produces a correct database instance (since it is equivalent to some serial schedule)
- ensuring serializability prevents inconsistencies generated by concurrent transactions that interfere with one another
- objective - finding interleaved schedules enabling transactions to execute concurrently without interfering with each other (such schedules result in a correct database state)

# References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Le99] LEVENE, M., LOIZOU, G., A Guided Tour of Relational Databases and Beyond, Springer, 1999
- [Ga09] GARCIA-MOLINA, H., ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., Database Systems: The Complete Book (2nd Edition), Pearson Education, 2009
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si11] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (6th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2011
- [Si10] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts, McGraw-Hill, 2010, <http://codex.cs.yale.edu/avi/db-book/>
- [Ul11] ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., A First Course in Database Systems,  
<http://infolab.stanford.edu/~ullman/fcdb.html>

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 2

Transactions. Concurrency Control

## Conflict Serializability

- $C$  – set of transactions
- $Sch(C)$  – the set of schedules for  $C$
- $Op(C)$  – set of operations of the transactions in  $C$
- consider schedule  $S \in Sch(C)$
- the *conflict relation* of  $S$  is defined as:
  - $conflict(S) = \{(op_1, op_2) \mid op_1, op_2 \in Op(C), op_1 \text{ occurs before } op_2 \text{ in } S, op_1 \text{ and } op_2 \text{ are in conflict}\}$

## Conflict Serializability

- $C$  – set of transactions
- $Sch(C)$  – the set of schedules for  $C$
- two schedules  $S_1$  and  $S_2 \in Sch(C)$  are conflict equivalent, written  $S_1 \equiv_c S_2$ , if  $conflict(S_1) = conflict(S_2)$ , i.e.:
  - $S_1$  and  $S_2$  contain the same operations of the same transactions and
  - every pair of conflicting operations is ordered in the same manner in  $S_1$  and  $S_2$

# Conflict Serializability

S1

| T1           | T2           |
|--------------|--------------|
| Read(A)      |              |
| A := A - 100 |              |
| Write(A)     |              |
| Read(B)      |              |
| B := B + 200 |              |
| Write(B)     |              |
|              | Read(A)      |
|              | A := A * 0.2 |
|              | Write(A)     |
|              | Read(B)      |
|              | B := B + 300 |
|              | Write(B)     |

S2

| T1           | T2           |
|--------------|--------------|
| Read(A)      |              |
| A := A - 100 |              |
| Write(A)     |              |
|              | Read(A)      |
|              | A := A * 0.2 |
|              | Write(A)     |
| Read(B)      |              |
| B := B + 200 |              |
| Write(B)     |              |
|              | Read(B)      |
|              | B := B + 300 |
|              | Write(B)     |

$\text{conflict}(S1) = \text{conflict}(S2)$   
 $\Rightarrow S1 \equiv_c S2$

$\text{conf}(S1) = \{(\text{Read}(T1, A), \text{Write}(T2, A)), (\text{Write}(T1, A), \text{Read}(T2, A)), (\text{Write}(T1, A), \text{Write}(T2, A)), (\text{Read}(T1, B), \text{Write}(T2, B)), (\text{Write}(T1, B), \text{Read}(T2, B)), (\text{Write}(T1, B), \text{Write}(T2, B))\}$

Sabina S. CS

# Conflict Serializability

S1

| T1           | T2           |
|--------------|--------------|
| Read(A)      |              |
| A := A - 100 |              |
| Write(A)     |              |
| Read(B)      |              |
| B := B + 200 |              |
| Write(B)     |              |
|              | Read(A)      |
|              | A := A * 0.2 |
|              | Write(A)     |
|              | Read(B)      |
|              | B := B + 300 |
|              | Write(B)     |

S3

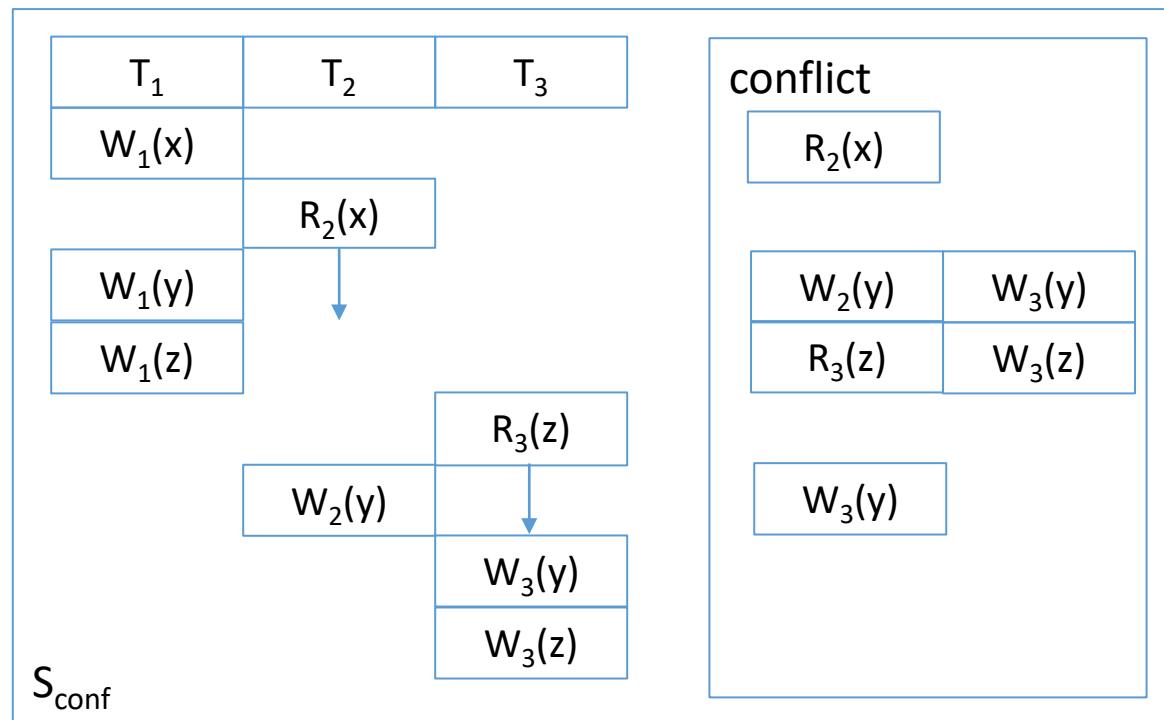
| T1           | T2           |
|--------------|--------------|
|              | Read(A)      |
|              | A := A * 0.2 |
|              | Write(A)     |
|              | Read(B)      |
|              | B := B + 300 |
|              | Write(B)     |
| Read(A)      |              |
| A := A - 100 |              |
| Write(A)     |              |
| Read(B)      |              |
| B := B + 200 |              |
| Write(B)     |              |

$\text{conflict}(S1) \neq \text{conflict}(S3)$   
 $\Rightarrow S1 \not\equiv_c S3$

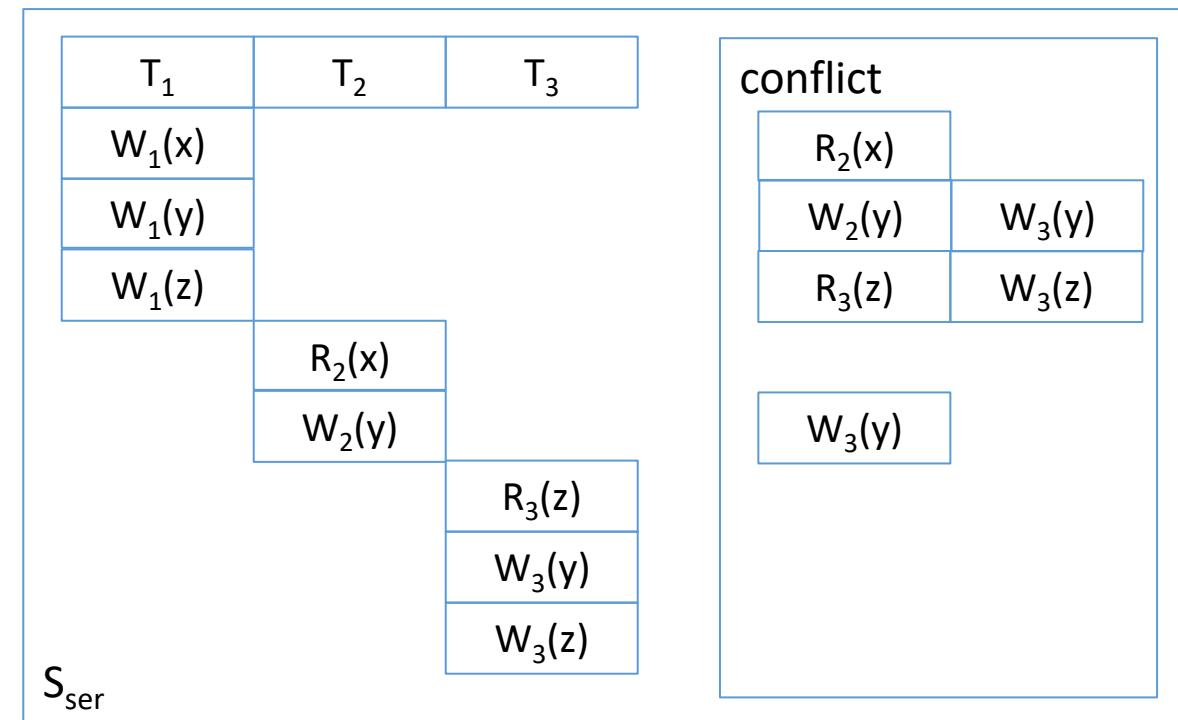
## Conflict Serializability

- $C$  – set of transactions
- $Sch(C)$  – the set of schedules for  $C$
- let  $S$  be a schedule in  $Sch(C)$
- schedule  $S$  is conflict serializable if there exists a serial schedule  $S_0 \in Sch(C)$  such that  $S \equiv_c S_0$ , i.e.,  $S$  is conflict equivalent to some serial schedule

# Conflict Serializability



conflict serializable schedule



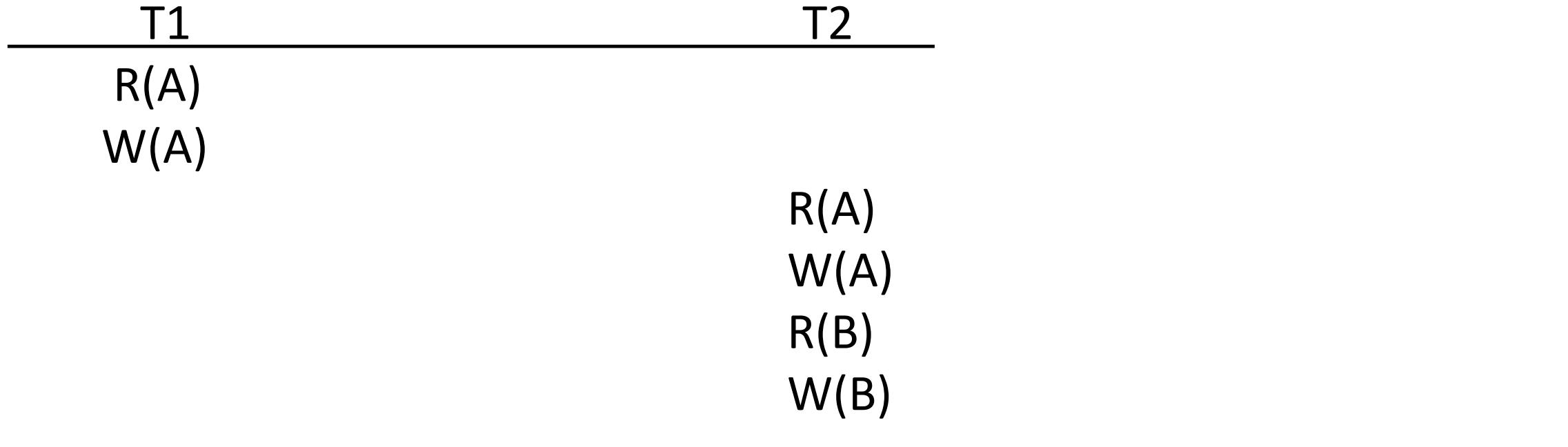
serial schedule

## Conflict Serializability - Precedence Graph

- let  $S$  be a schedule in  $Sch(C)$
- the precedence graph (serializability graph) of  $S$  contains:
  - one node for every committed transaction in  $S$
  - an arc from  $T_i$  to  $T_j$  if an action in  $T_i$  precedes and conflicts with one of the actions in  $T_j$
- Theorem:
  - a schedule  $S \in Sch(C)$  is conflict serializable if and only if its precedence graph is acyclic

## Conflict Serializability - Precedence Graph

- example - a schedule that is not conflict serializable:



- the precedence graph has a cycle:

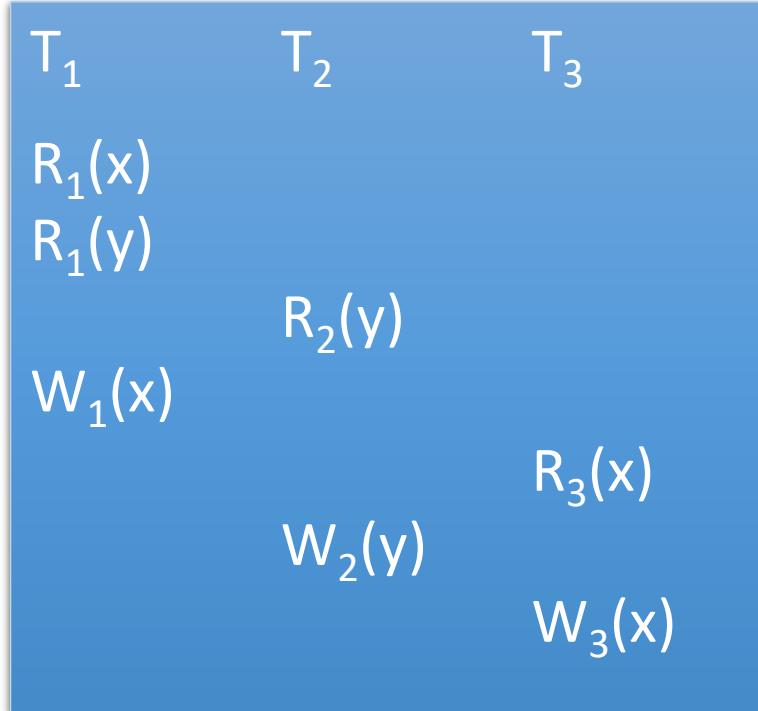


## Conflict Serializability - Precedence Graph

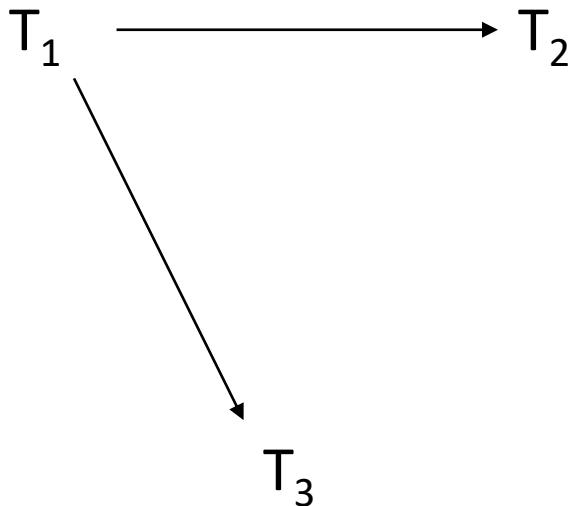
- algorithm to test the conflict serializability of a schedule  $S \in Sch(C)$ 
  1. create a node labeled  $T_i$  in the precedence graph for every committed transaction  $T_i$  in the schedule
  2. create an arc  $(T_i, T_j)$  in the precedence graph if  $T_j$  executes a  $\text{Read}(A)$  after a  $\text{Write}(A)$  executed by  $T_i$
  3. create an arc  $(T_i, T_j)$  in the precedence graph if  $T_j$  executes a  $\text{Write}(A)$  after a  $\text{Read}(A)$  executed by  $T_i$
  4. create an arc  $(T_i, T_j)$  in the precedence graph if  $T_j$  executes a  $\text{Write}(A)$  after a  $\text{Write}(A)$  executed by  $T_i$
  5.  $S$  is conflict serializable if and only if the resulting precedence graph has no cycles

## Conflict Serializability - Precedence Graph

- examples
- let  $S_1$  be a schedule over  $\{T_1, T_2, T_3\}$ :

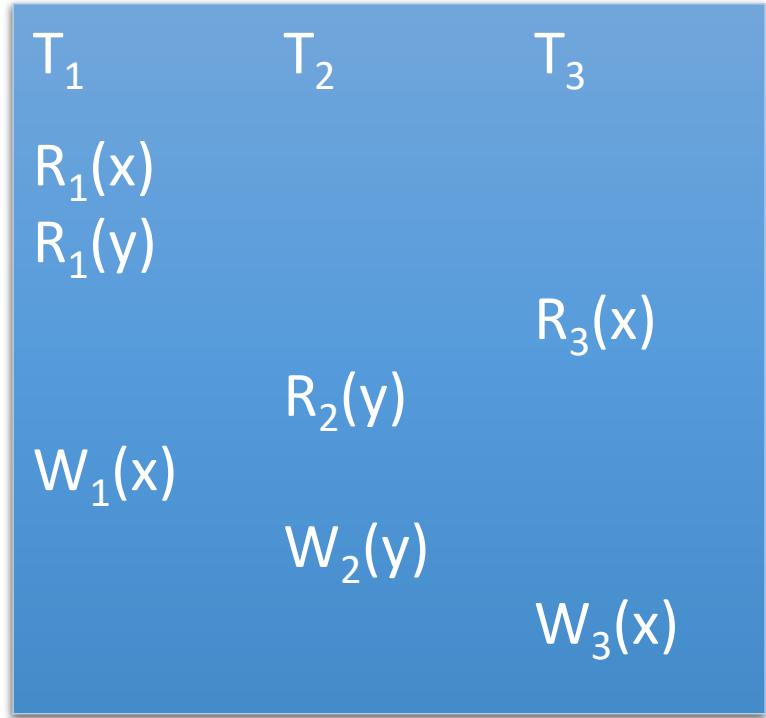


- the precedence graph for  $S_1$ :

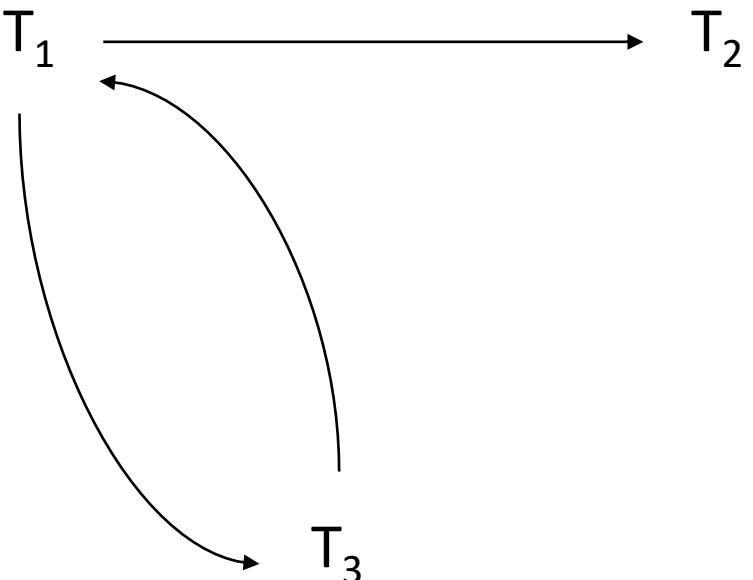


## Conflict Serializability - Precedence Graph

- examples
- let  $S_2$  be a schedule over  $\{T_1, T_2, T_3\}$ :

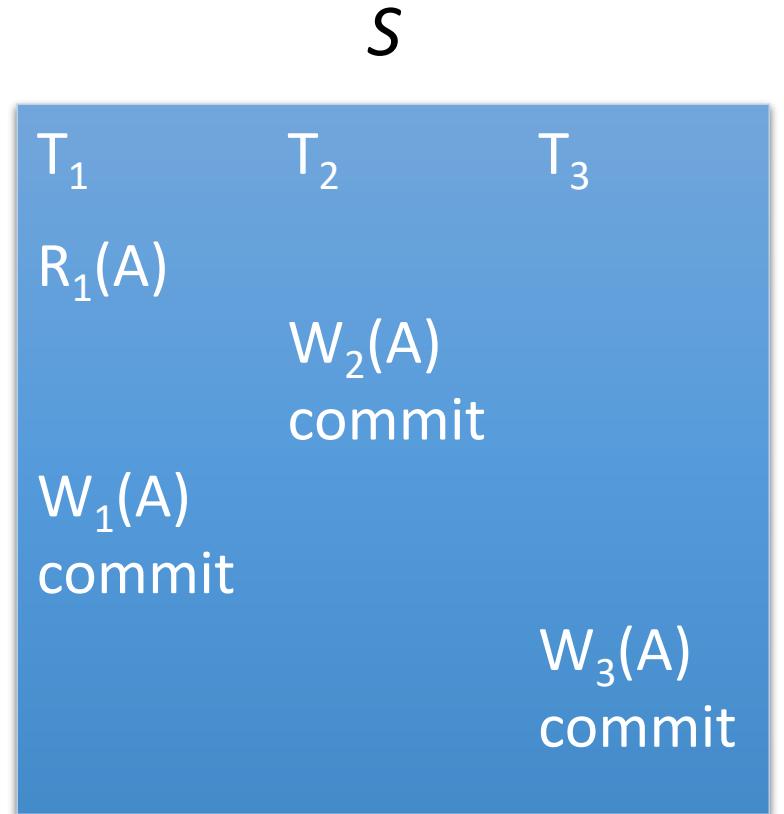


- the precedence graph for  $S_2$ :



## Conflict Serializability

- every conflict serializable schedule is serializable (in the absence of inserts / deletes, when items can only be updated)
- there are serializable schedules that are not conflict serializable
- $S$  is equivalent to the serial execution of transactions  $T_1, T_2, T_3$  (in this order), but it is not conflict equivalent to this serial schedule (the write operations in  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  are ordered differently)



## View Serializability

- conflict serializability is a sufficient condition for serializability, but it is not a necessary one
- *view serializability*
  - a more general, sufficient condition for serializability
  - based on *view-equivalence*, a less stringent form of equivalence

## View Serializability

- $C$  – set of transactions
  - $Sch(C)$  – the set of schedules for  $C$
  - let  $T_i, T_j \in C, S_1, S_2 \in Sch(C)$ ;  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  are view equivalent, written  $S_1 \equiv_v S_2$ , if the following conditions are met:
    - if  $T_i$  reads the initial value of  $V$  in  $S_1$ , then  $T_i$  also reads the initial value of  $V$  in  $S_2$ ;
    - if  $T_i$  reads the value of  $V$  written by  $T_j$  in  $S_1$ , then  $T_i$  also reads the value of  $V$  written by  $T_j$  in  $S_2$ ;
    - if  $T_i$  writes the final value of  $V$  in  $S_1$ , then  $T_i$  also writes the final value of  $V$  in  $S_2$ .
  - i.e.:
    - each transaction performs the same computation in  $S_1$  and  $S_2$
- and
- $S_1$  and  $S_2$  produce the same final database state.

# View Serializability

S1

| T1           | T2           |
|--------------|--------------|
| Read(A)      |              |
| A := A - 100 |              |
| Write(A)     |              |
| Read(B)      |              |
| B := B + 200 |              |
| Write(B)     |              |
|              | Read(A)      |
|              | A := A * 0.2 |
|              | Write(A)     |
|              | Read(B)      |
|              | B := B + 300 |
|              | Write(B)     |

S2

| T1           | T2           |
|--------------|--------------|
| Read(A)      |              |
| A := A - 100 |              |
| Write(A)     |              |
|              | Read(A)      |
|              | A := A * 0.2 |
|              | Write(A)     |
| Read(B)      |              |
| B := B + 200 |              |
| Write(B)     |              |
|              | Read(B)      |
|              | B := B + 300 |
|              | Write(B)     |

$S1 \equiv_v S2$

# View Serializability

S1

| T1           | T2           |
|--------------|--------------|
| Read(A)      |              |
| A := A - 100 |              |
| Write(A)     |              |
| Read(B)      |              |
| B := B + 200 |              |
| Write(B)     |              |
|              | Read(A)      |
|              | A := A * 0.2 |
|              | Write(A)     |
|              | Read(B)      |
|              | B := B + 300 |
|              | Write(B)     |

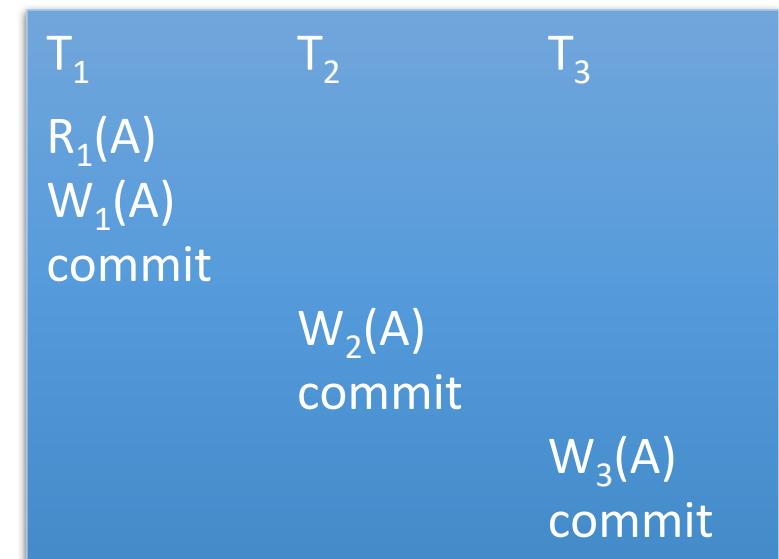
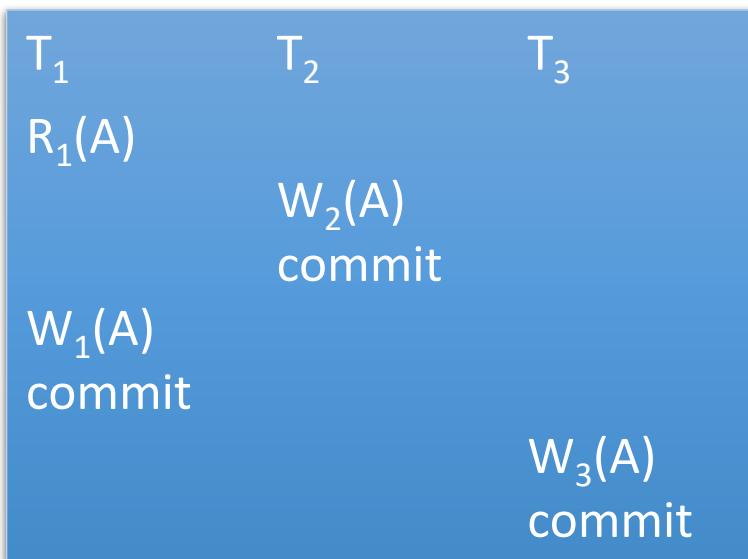
S3

| T1           | T2           |
|--------------|--------------|
|              | Read(A)      |
|              | A := A * 0.2 |
|              | Write(A)     |
|              | Read(B)      |
|              | B := B + 300 |
|              | Write(B)     |
| Read(A)      |              |
| A := A - 100 |              |
| Write(A)     |              |
| Read(B)      |              |
| B := B + 200 |              |
| Write(B)     |              |

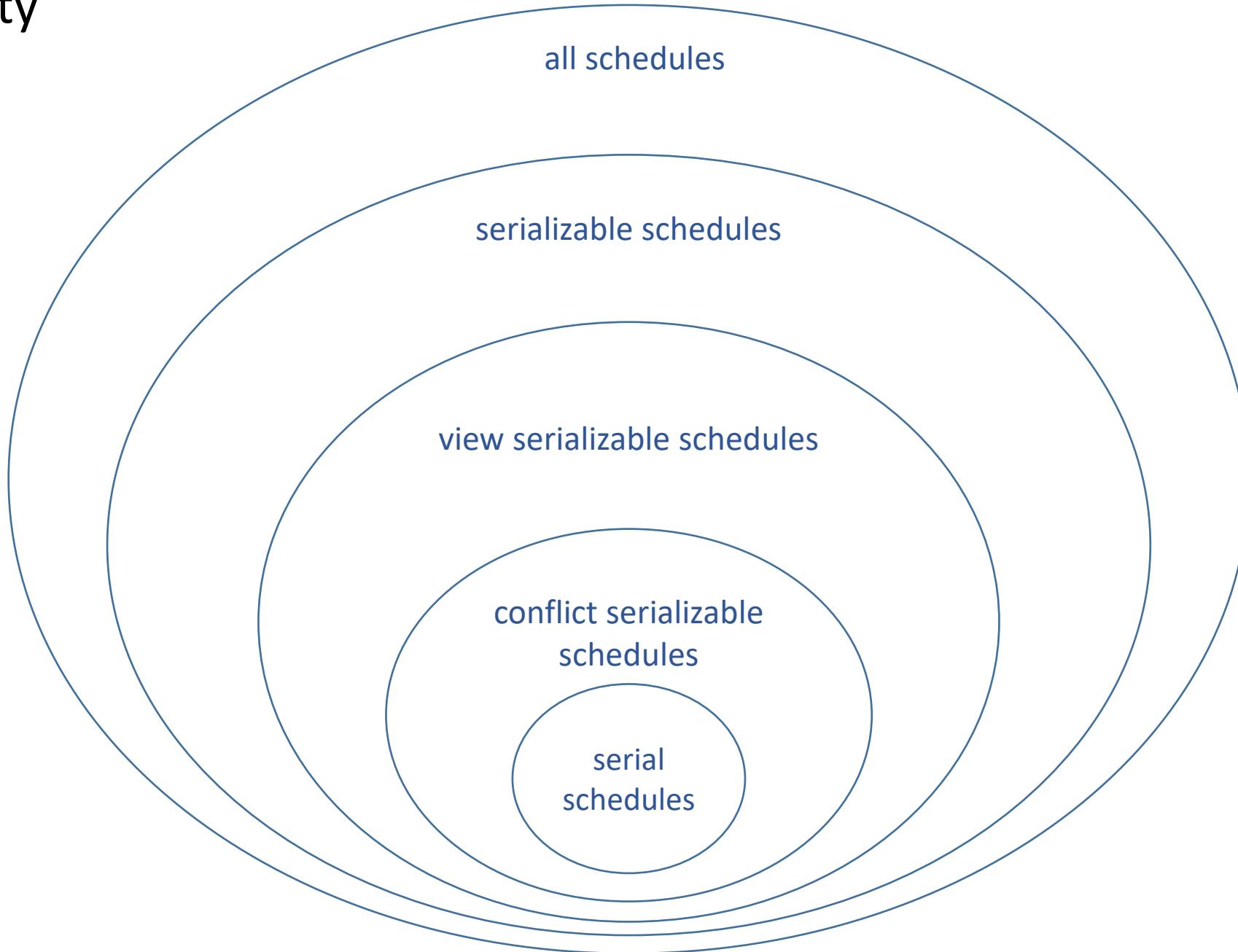
$S1 \not\equiv_v S3$

## View Serializability

- $C$  – set of transactions
- $Sch(C)$  – the set of schedules for  $C$
- a schedule  $S \in Sch(C)$  is view serializable if there exists a serial schedule  $S_0 \in Sch(C)$  such that  $S \equiv_v S_0$ , i.e.,  $S$  is view equivalent to some serial schedule

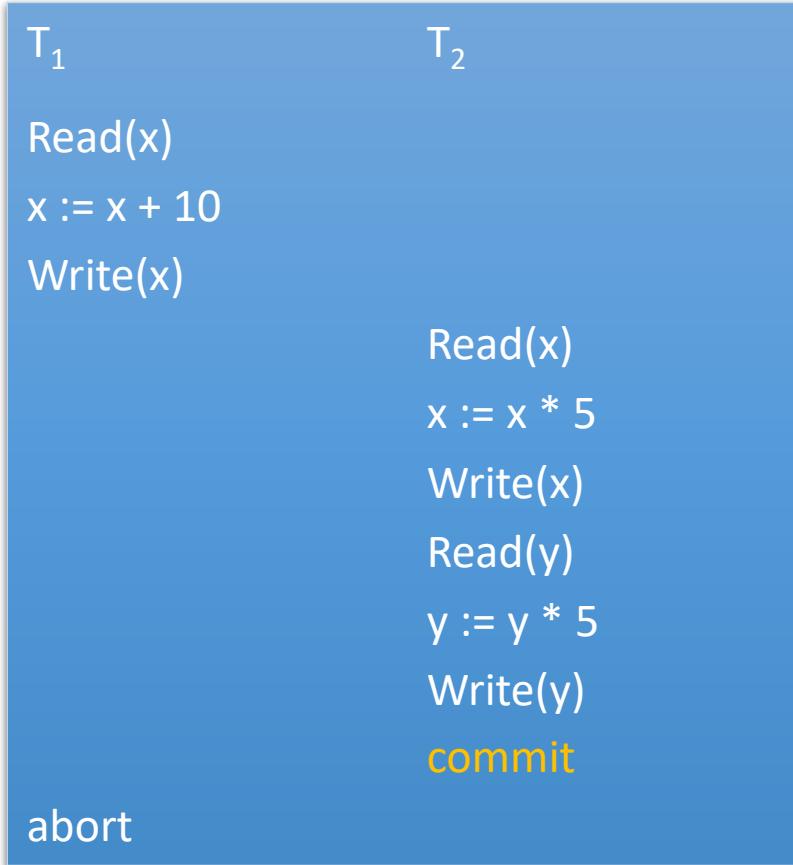


# Serializability



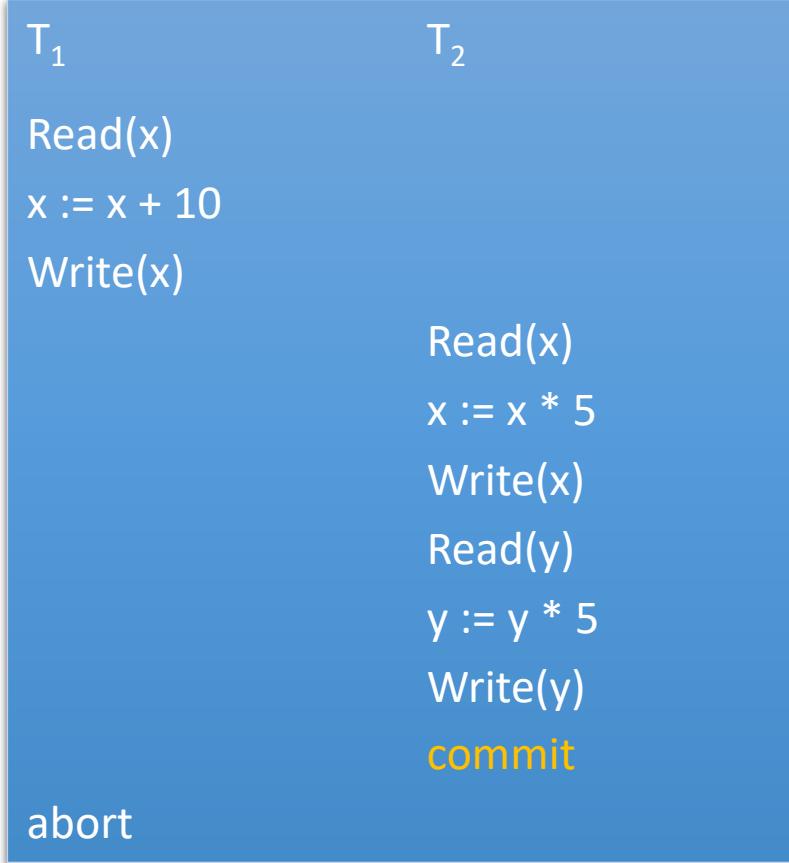
## Recoverable Schedules

- consider schedule  $S$  over  $\{T_1, T_2\}$



- $T_2$  operates on a value of  $x$  that shouldn't have been in the database, since  $T_1$  aborted

# Recoverable Schedules

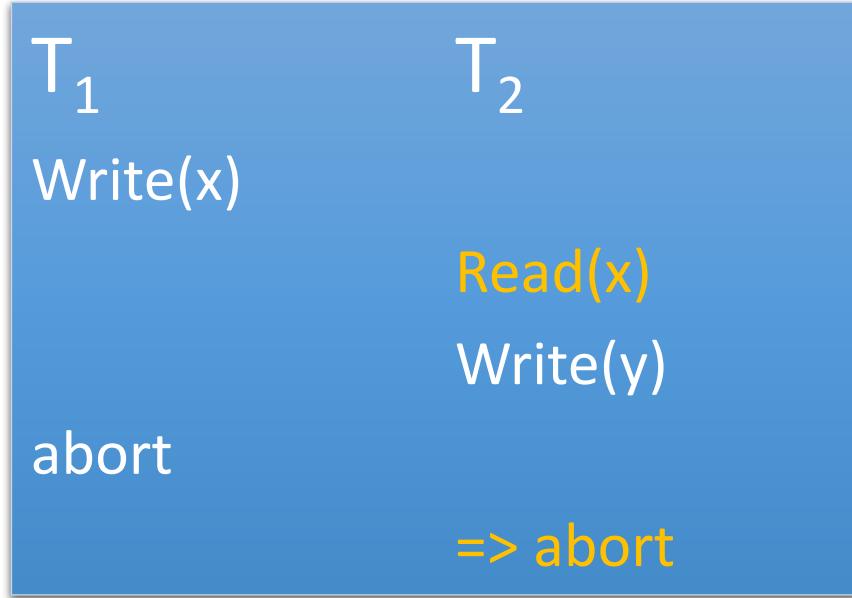


- cannot cascade the abort of  $T_1$ , since  $T_2$  has already committed
- schedule  $S$  is *unrecoverable*

## Recoverable Schedules

- recoverable schedule
  - a schedule in which a transaction T commits only after all transactions whose changes T read commit

# Avoiding Cascading Aborts



- a schedule in which a transaction  $T$  is reading only changes of committed transactions is said to avoid cascading aborts
- avoiding cascading aborts  $\Rightarrow$  recoverable schedules

## Lock-Based Concurrency Control

- technique used to guarantee serializable, recoverable schedules
- *lock*
  - a tool used by the transaction manager to control concurrent access to data
  - prevents a transaction from accessing a data object while another transaction is accessing the object
- *transaction protocol*
  - a set of rules enforced by the transaction manager and obeyed by all transactions
  - example – simple protocol: before a transaction can read / write an object, it must acquire an appropriate lock on the object
  - locks in conjunction with transaction protocols allow interleaved executions

## Lock-Based Concurrency Control

- SLock (*shared or read lock*)
  - if a transaction holds an SLock on an object, it can read the object, but it cannot modify it
- XLock (*exclusive or write lock*)
  - if a transaction holds an XLock on an object, it can both read and write the object
- if a transaction holds an SLock on an object, other transactions can be granted SLocks on the object, but they cannot acquire XLocks on it
- if a transaction holds an XLock on an object, other transactions cannot be granted either SLocks or XLocks on the object

|           | Shared | Exclusive |
|-----------|--------|-----------|
| Shared    | Yes    | No        |
| Exclusive | No     | No        |

# Lock-Based Concurrency Control

- *lock table*
  - structure used by the lock manager to keep track of granted locks / lock requests
  - entry in the lock table (corresponding to one data object):
    - number of transactions holding a lock on the data object
    - lock type (SLock / XLock)
    - pointer to a queue of lock requests

# Lock-Based Concurrency Control

- *transactions table*
  - structure maintained by the DBMS
  - one entry / transaction
  - keeps a list of locks held by every transaction

## References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Le99] LEVENE, M., LOIZOU, G., A Guided Tour of Relational Databases and Beyond, Springer, 1999
- [Ga09] GARCIA-MOLINA, H., ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., Database Systems: The Complete Book (2nd Edition), Pearson, 2009
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si19] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (7th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2019
- [Ul11] ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., A First Course in Database Systems,  
<http://infolab.stanford.edu/~ullman/fcdb.html>

# Database Management Systems

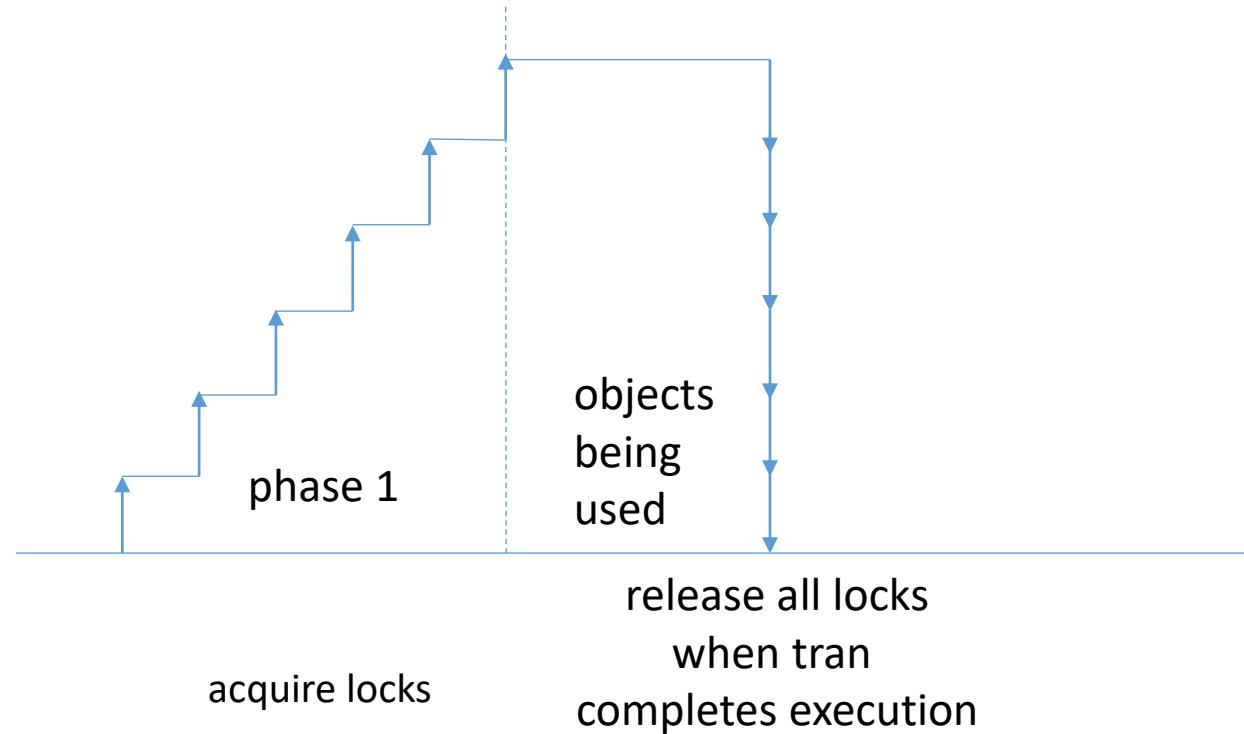
Lecture 3

Transactions. Concurrency Control

- locking *protocols*
  - Strict Two-Phase Locking
  - Two-Phase Locking
- *deadlocks*
  - prevention (Wait-die, Wound-wait)
  - detection (waits-for graph, timeout mechanism)
- the *phantom* problem
- *isolation levels*
  - READ UNCOMMITTED
  - READ COMMITTED
  - REPEATABLE READ
  - SERIALIZABLE

## Strict Two-Phase Locking (*Strict 2PL*)

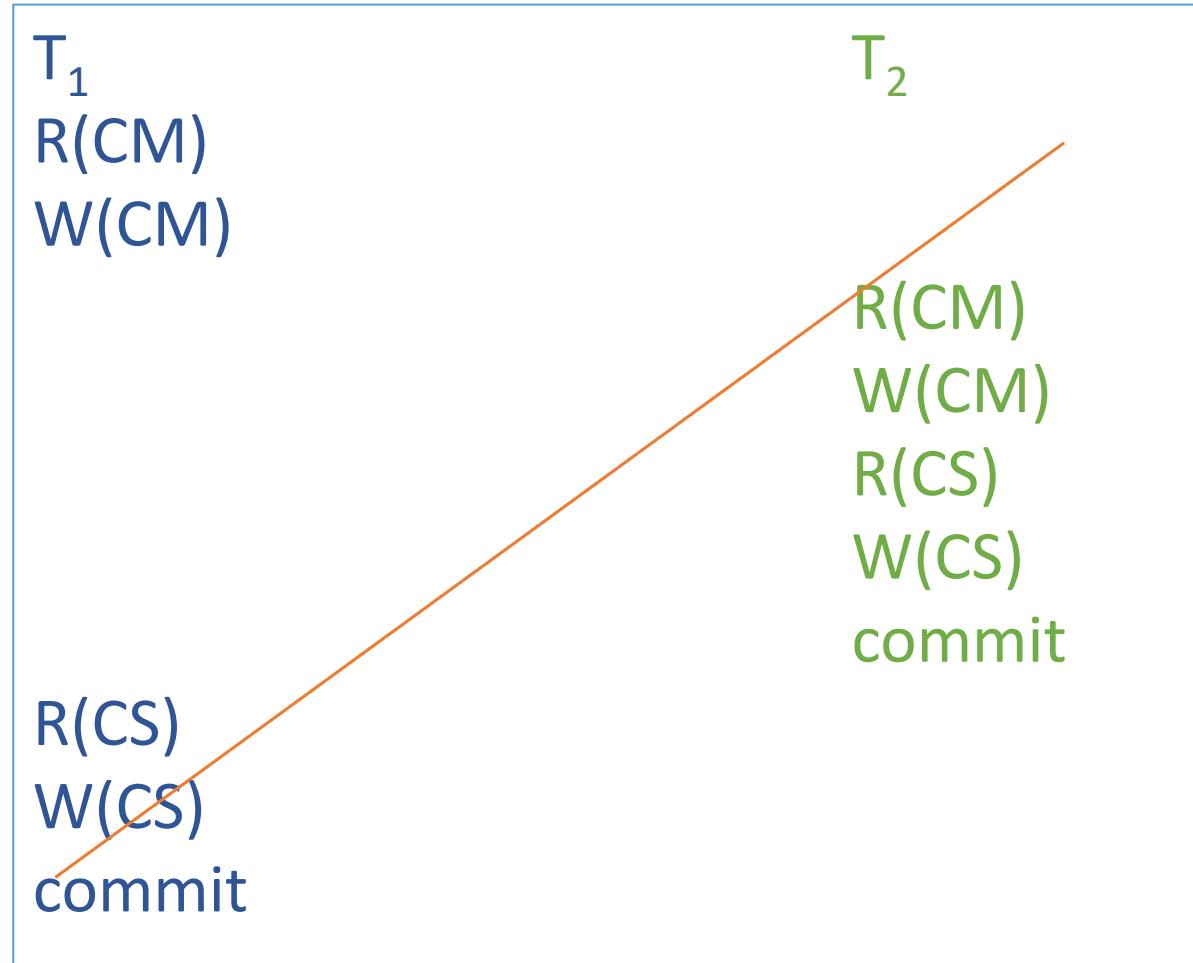
- \* before a transaction can read / write an object, it must acquire a S / X lock on the object
- \* all the locks held by a transaction are released when it completes execution



- the Strict 2PL protocol allows only serializable schedules (only schedules with acyclic precedence graphs are allowed by this protocol)

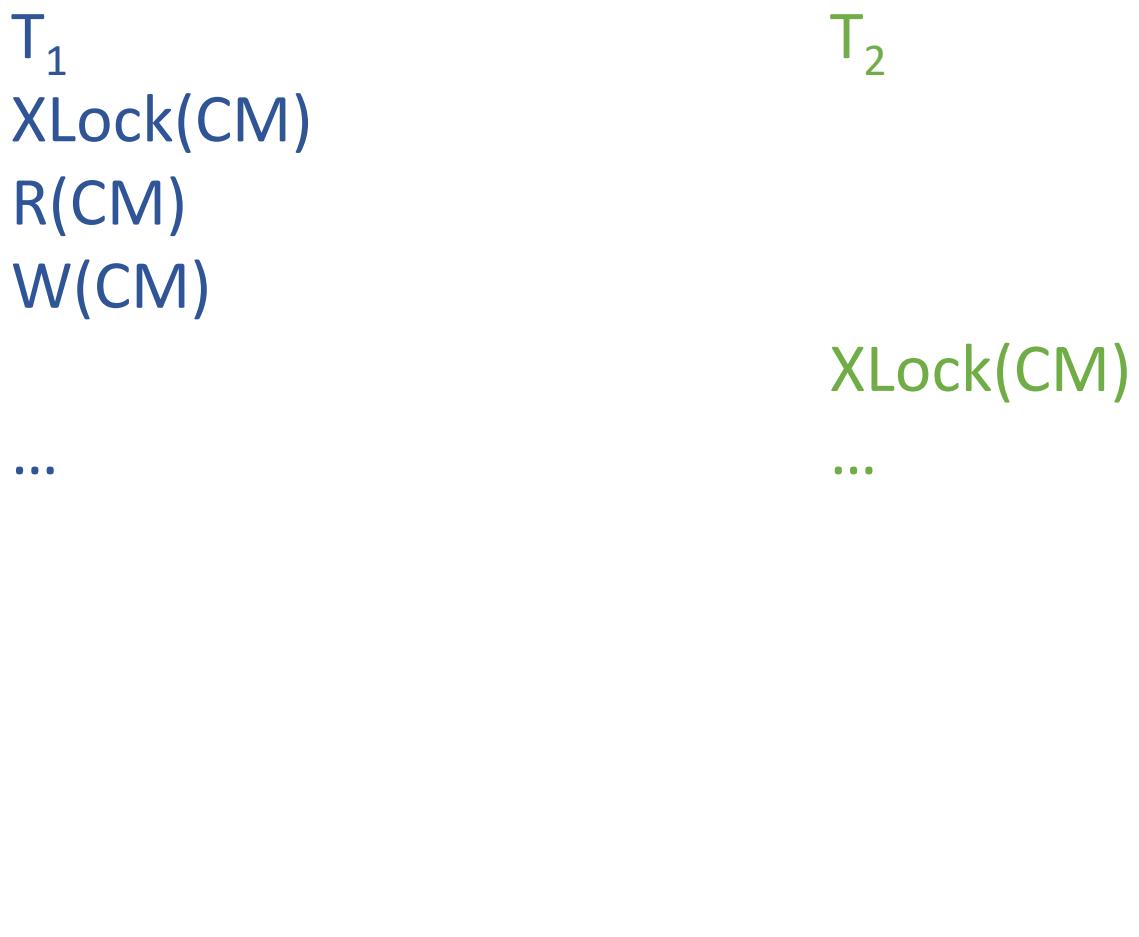
## Strict Two-Phase Locking

- the interleaving below is not allowed by Strict 2PL:



->

## Strict Two-Phase Locking



- T1 acquires an X lock on object CM, reads and writes CM
- T1 is still in progress when T2 requests a lock on the same object, CM
- T2 cannot acquire an exclusive lock on CM, since T1 already holds a conflicting lock on this object
- T1 will release its lock on CM only when it completes execution (with *commit* or *abort*)
- since it cannot grant T2 the requested lock on CM, the DBMS suspends T2

- in this example, we denote by *XLock(O)* the action of the current transaction requesting an X lock on object O

## Strict Two-Phase Locking

T<sub>1</sub>

XLock(CM)

R(CM)

W(CM)

XLock(CS)

R(CS)

W(CS)

commit

T<sub>2</sub>

XLock(CM)

R(CM)

W(CM)

XLock(CS)

R(CS)

W(CS)

commit

- T1 continues execution
- when T1 commits, it releases both locks (X lock on CM, X lock on CS)
- T2 can now be granted an X lock on CM
- T2 can now proceed

## Strict Two-Phase Locking

- the interleaving below is allowed by Strict 2PL:

T<sub>1</sub>  
XLock(CM)  
R(CM)  
W(CM)

XLock(CS)  
R(CS)  
W(CS)  
commit

T<sub>2</sub>  
  
XLock(CT)  
R(CT)  
W(CT)  
commit

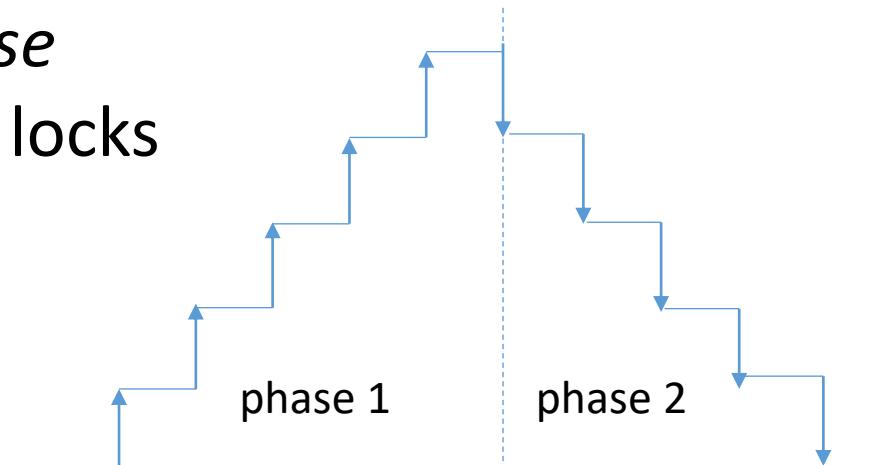
- in this example, since T1 and T2 are operating on separate data objects (CM, CT, CS), they can concurrently obtain all requested locks (an interleaved execution where T1 and T2 are only reading the same data object is also allowed)

## Two-Phase Locking (2PL)

- variant of Strict Two-Phase Locking

- \* before a transaction can read / write an object, it must acquire a S / X lock on the object
- \* once a transaction releases a lock, it cannot request other locks

- phase 1 - *growing phase*
  - transaction acquires locks
- phase 2 - *shrinking phase*
  - transaction releases locks



## Two-Phase Locking

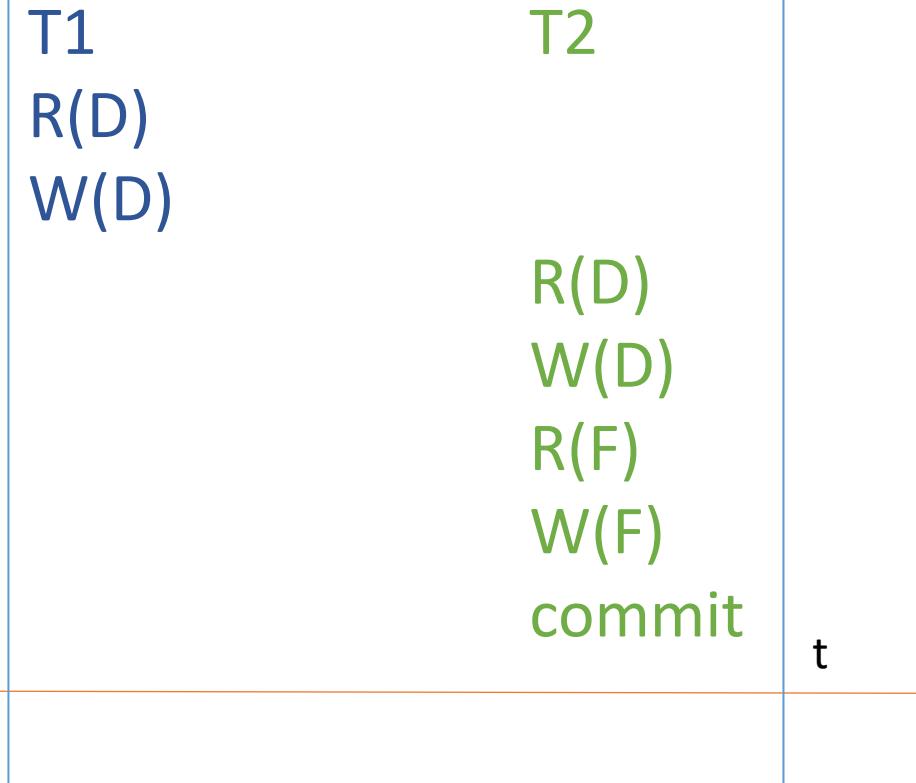
- $C$  – set of transactions
- $Sch(C)$  – set of schedules for  $C$
- if all transactions in  $C$  obey 2PL, then any schedule  $S \in Sch(C)$  that completes normally is serializable

## Two-Phase Locking

- the following execution is allowed by the protocol:
- T1 can release its X lock on D prior to completion
- so T2 can acquire an X lock on D while T1 is still in progress
- however, T1 cannot acquire any other locks once it releases a lock (in this case, its X lock on D)

| T1     | T2     |
|--------|--------|
| R(D)   |        |
| W(D)   |        |
|        | R(D)   |
|        | W(D)   |
|        | R(F)   |
|        | W(F)   |
|        | commit |
| ...    |        |
| commit |        |

## Two-Phase Locking



- suppose T1 is forced to terminate at time t
  - undo T1's updates => T2's update of D is lost (i.e., partial effects, as T2 also changed the value of F)
- problem – T1 released its exclusive lock on D prior to completion (under Strict 2PL, T1 can release its lock on D, as well as any other locks, only when it commits / aborts)

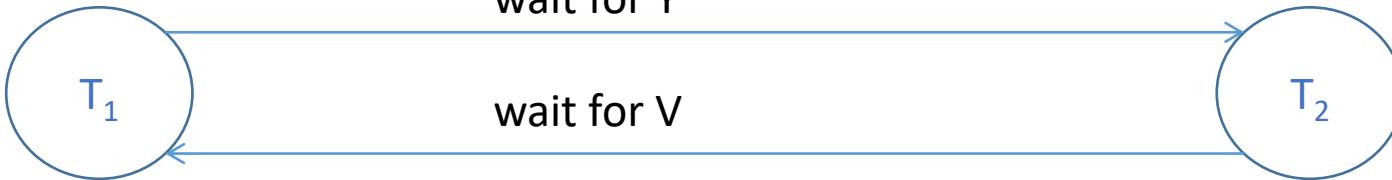
## Strict Schedules

- if transaction  $T_i$  has written object A, then transaction  $T_j$  can read and / or write A only after  $T_i$ 's completion (commit / abort)
- strict schedules:
  - avoid cascading aborts
  - are recoverable schedules
  - if a transaction is aborted, its operations can be undone
- Strict 2PL only allows strict schedules

## Deadlocks

- lock-based concurrency control techniques can lead to deadlocks
- deadlock
  - cycle of transactions waiting for one another to release a locked resource
  - normal execution can no longer continue without an external intervention, i.e., deadlocked transactions cannot proceed until the deadlock is resolved
- deadlock management
  - deadlock prevention
  - deadlock detection
    - allow deadlocks to occur and resolve them when they arise

# Deadlocks



T1

BEGIN TRAN

XLock(V)

Read(V)

V := V + 100

Write(V)

XLock(Y)

Wait

Wait

...

T2

BEGIN TRAN

XLock(Y)

Read(Y)

Y := Y \* 5

Write(Y)

XLock(V)

Wait

Wait

...

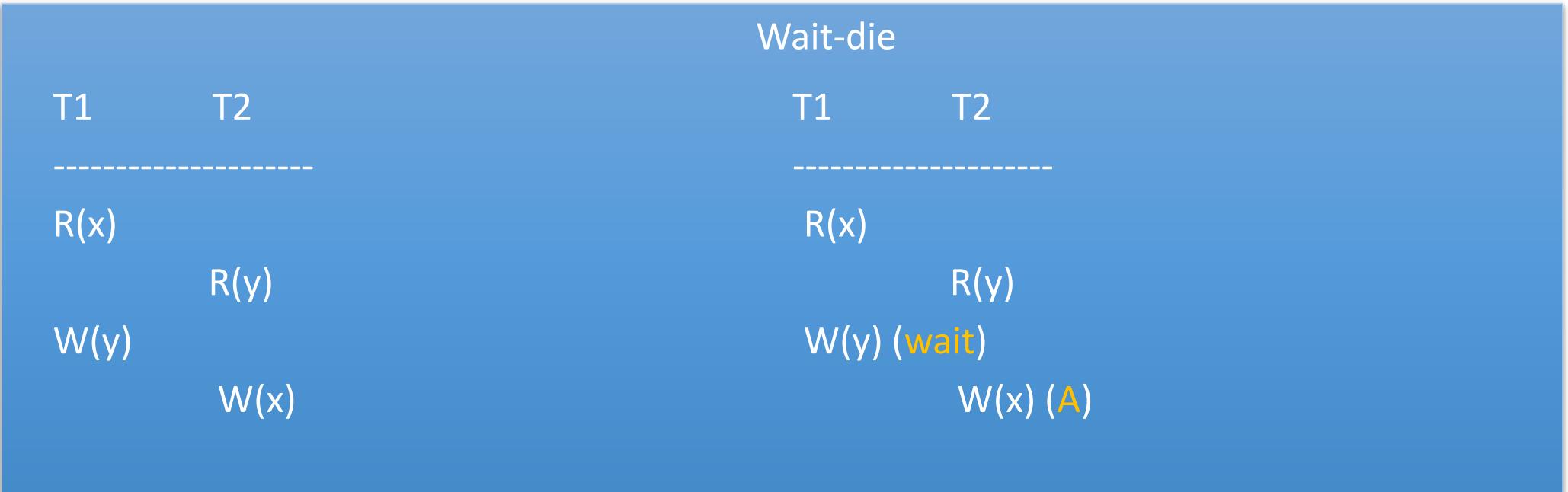
- T1 cannot obtain an X lock on Y, since T2 holds a conflicting lock on Y
- similarly, T2 cannot obtain an X lock on V, since T1 holds a conflicting lock on V

## Deadlocks - Prevention

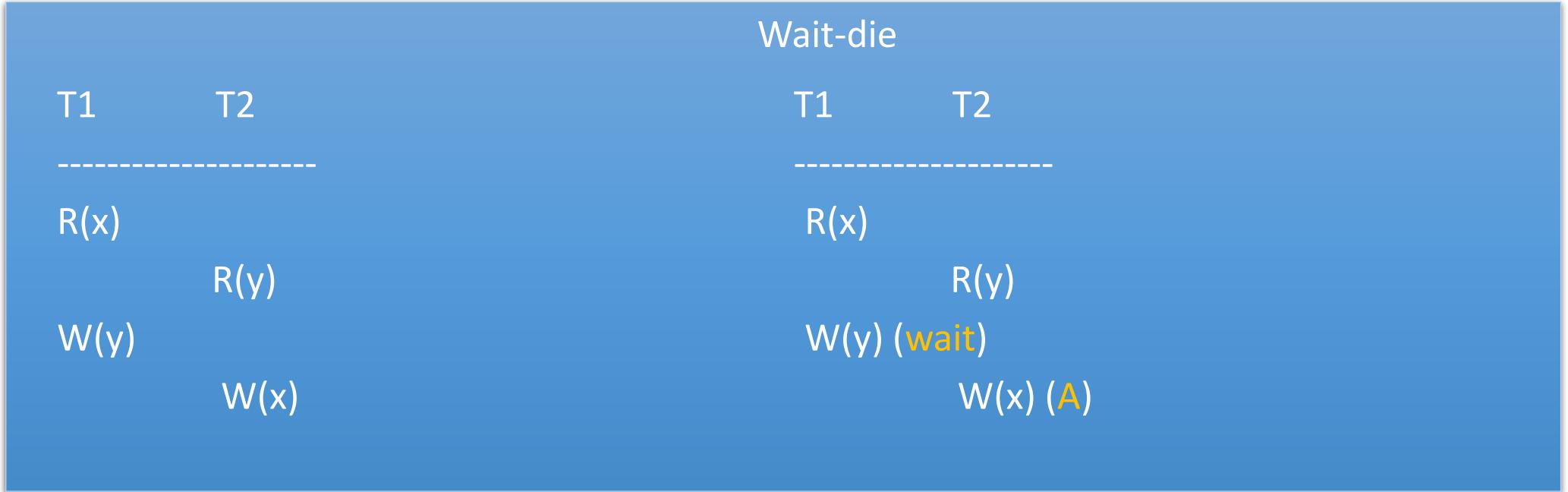
- assign transactions timestamp-based priorities (each transaction has a timestamp - the moment it begins execution)
- the lower the timestamp, the older the transaction
- the older a transaction is, the higher its priority, with the oldest transaction having the highest priority
- 2 deadlock prevention policies: Wait-die and Wound-wait

## Deadlocks - Prevention

- assume  $T_1$  wants to access an object locked by  $T_2$  (with a conflicting lock)
  - Wait-die
    - if  $T_1$ 's priority is higher,  $T_1$  can wait; otherwise,  $T_1$  is aborted
- in the following execution, 2 transactions are reading and / or writing 2 objects, x and y;  $T_1$ 's priority is higher:



# Deadlocks - Prevention



- T1 requests an X lock on object y, which is already locked with a conflicting lock by T2
- since T1 has a higher priority, it is allowed to wait
- T2 asks for an X lock on object x, already locked with a conflicting lock by T1
- since T2 has a lower priority, it is aborted
- T1 now obtains the requested lock on object y and proceeds with the write operation

## Deadlocks - Prevention

- assume  $T_1$  wants to access an object locked by  $T_2$  (with a conflicting lock)
  - Wound-wait
    - if  $T_1$ 's priority is higher,  $T_2$  is aborted; otherwise,  $T_1$  can wait



- $T_1$  requests an X lock on object y, which is already locked with a conflicting lock by  $T_2$
- since  $T_1$  has a higher priority,  $T_2$  is aborted
- $T_1$  obtains the requested lock on object y and continues execution

## Deadlocks - Prevention

- under these policies (Wait-die / Wound-wait), deadlock cycles cannot develop
- if an aborted transaction is restarted, it's assigned its original timestamp

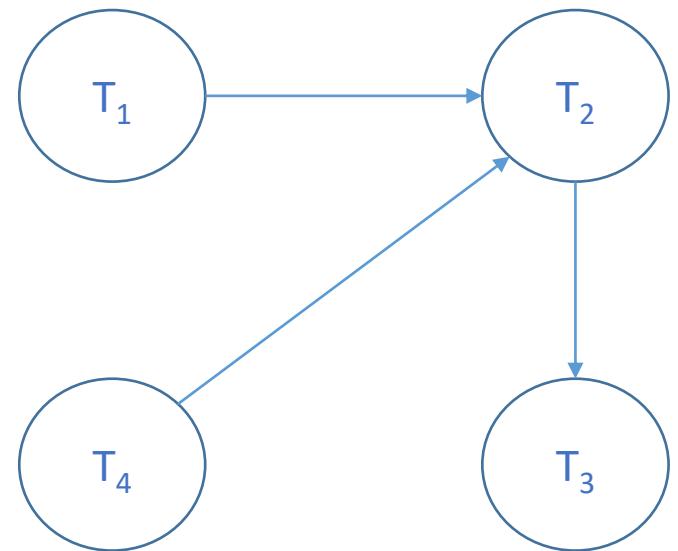
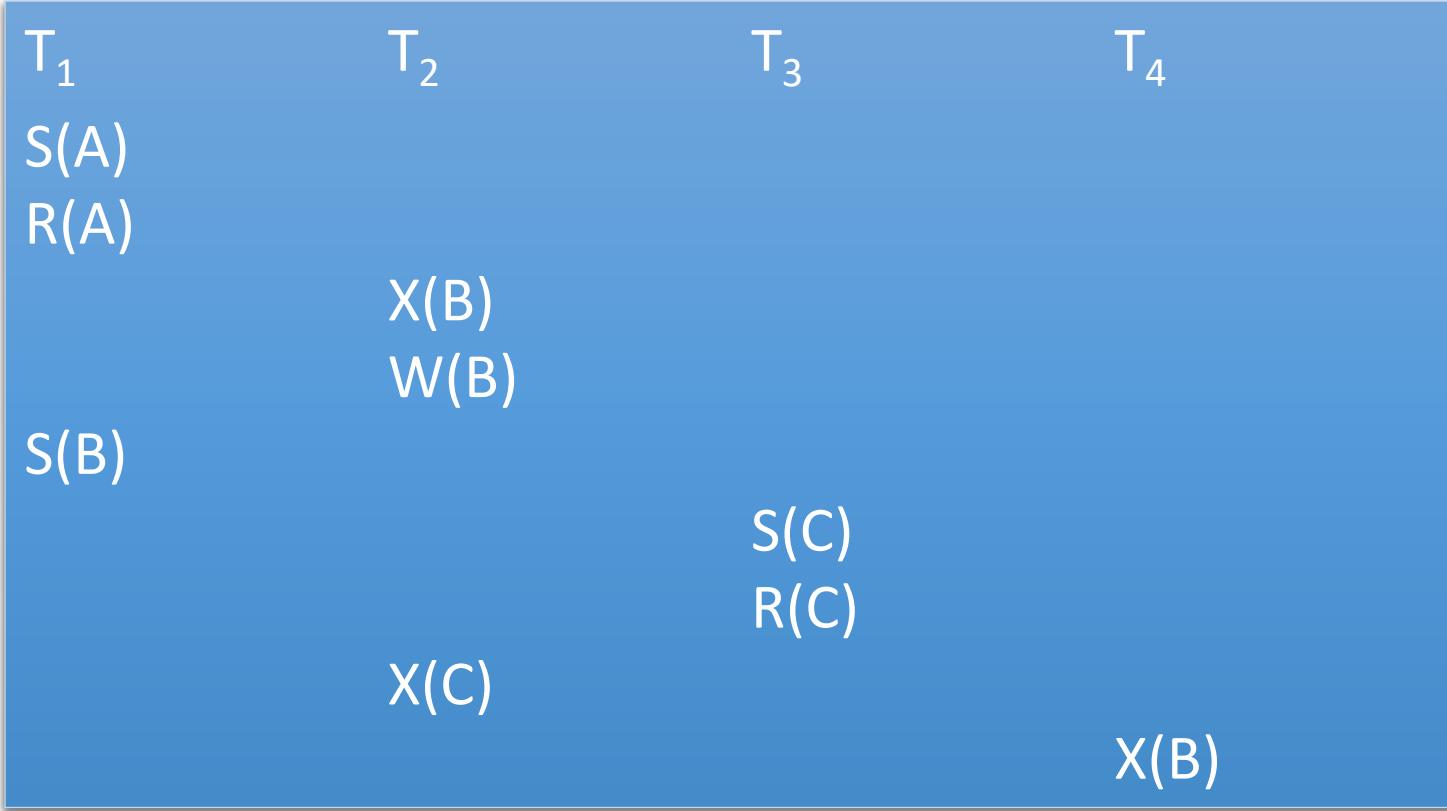
## Deadlocks - Detection

### a. waits-for graph

- structure maintained by the lock manager to detect deadlock cycles
  - a node / active transaction
  - arc from  $T_i$  to  $T_j$  if  $T_i$  is waiting for  $T_j$  to release a lock
- cycle in the graph  $\Rightarrow$  deadlock
- DBMS periodically checks whether there are cycles in the waits-for graph

# Deadlocks - Detection

## a. waits-for graph



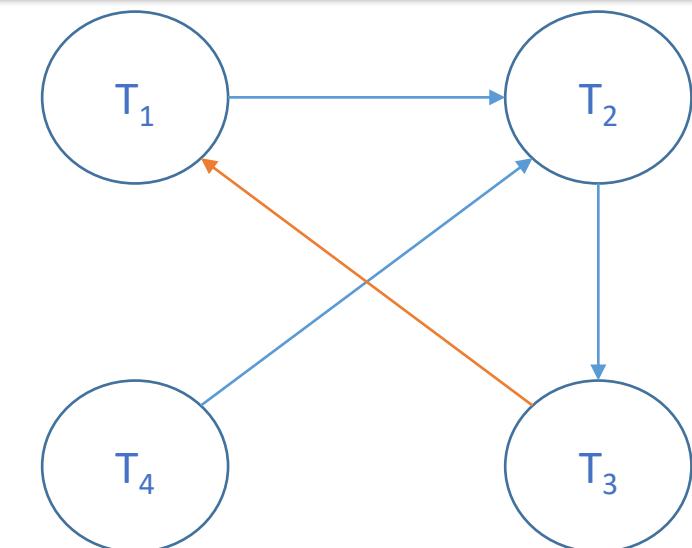
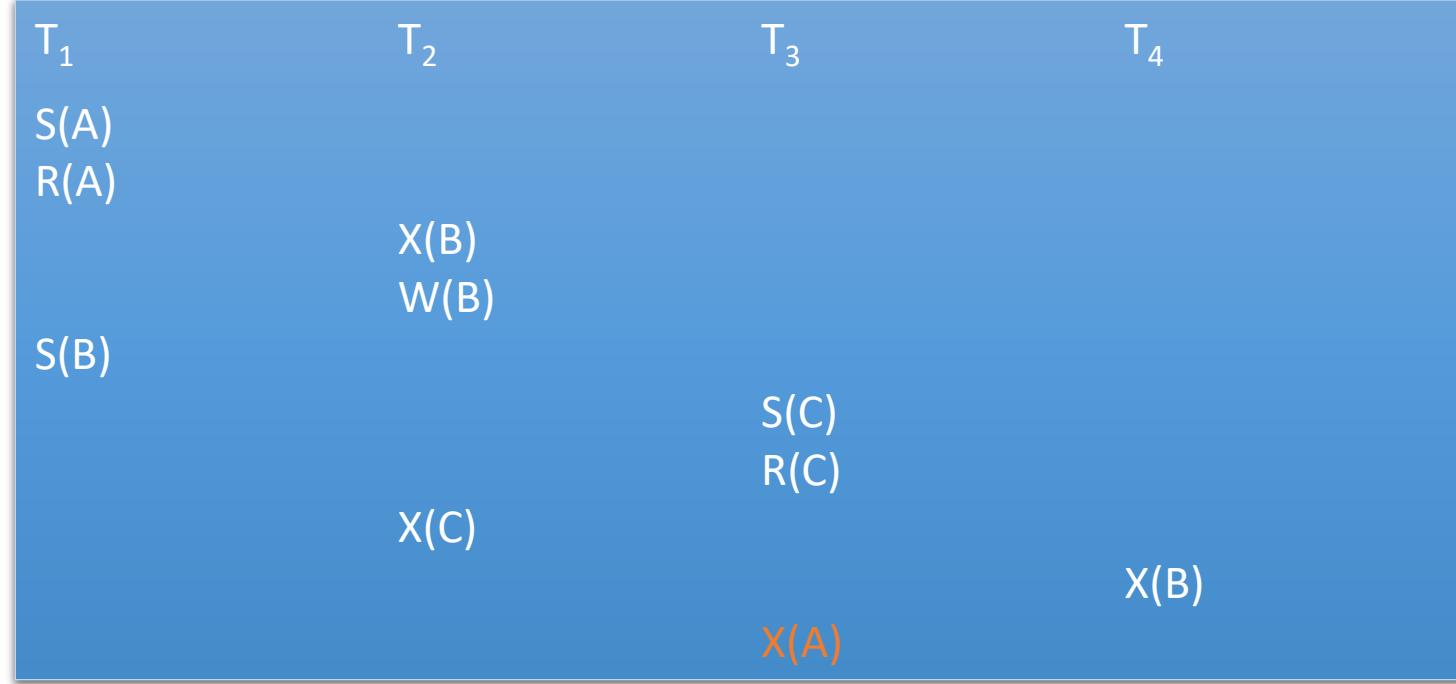
## Deadlocks - Detection

### a. waits-for graph

- if operation  $X(A)$  is also part of T3, there will be an arc from T3 to T1 in the graph (since T1 holds a conflicting lock on A, and T3 is waiting for T1 to release this lock)

- the graph has a cycle (T1 is also waiting for T2 to release a lock, which in turn is waiting for T3 to release a lock)  
=> deadlock

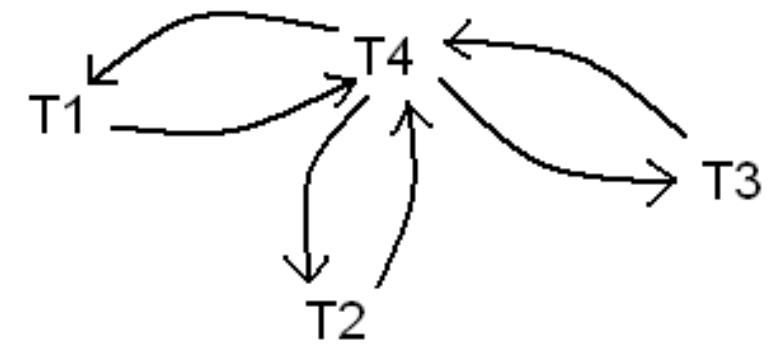
- aborting a transaction that appears on a cycle allows several other transactions to proceed



# Deadlocks - Detection

## a. waits-for graph

| $T_1$  | $T_2$  | $T_3$  | $T_4$                             |
|--------|--------|--------|-----------------------------------|
| $S(A)$ | $S(A)$ | $S(A)$ |                                   |
| $R(A)$ | $R(A)$ | $R(A)$ |                                   |
| $X(B)$ | $X(B)$ | $X(B)$ |                                   |
| ...    | ...    | ...    |                                   |
|        |        |        | $S(B)$<br>$R(B)$<br>$X(A)$<br>... |



## Deadlocks – Choosing the Deadlock Victim

- possible criteria to consider when choosing the deadlock victim
  - the number of objects modified by the transaction
  - the number of objects that are to be modified by the transaction
  - the number of locks held
- the policy should be “fair”, i.e., if a transaction is repeatedly chosen as a victim, it should be eventually allowed to proceed

## Deadlocks - Detection

### b. timeout mechanism

- very simple, practical method of detecting deadlocks
- if a transaction T has been waiting too long for a lock on an object, a deadlock is assumed to exist and T is terminated

## The Phantom Problem

example 1. Researchers[RID, ..., ImpactFactor, Age]

- Page1: <R1, 5, 30>, <R2, 5, 20>
- Page2: <R3, 5, 100>, <R4, 5, 90>
- Page3: <R8, 6, 18>, <R9, 6, 19>
  
- concurrent transactions T1 and T2
  - transaction T1
    - retrieve the age of the oldest researcher for each of the impact factor values 5 and 6
  - transaction T2
    - add a new researcher with impact factor 5
    - remove researcher R9
  
- T1 and T2 obey Strict 2PL

## The Phantom Problem

- Page1: <R1, 5, 30>, <R2, 5, 20>
- Page2: <R3, 5, 100>, <R4, 5, 90>
- Page3: <R8, 6, 18>, <R9, 6, 19>

- T1 identifies and locks pages holding researchers with IF 5 (Page1, Page2)
- T1 computes max age for IF 5 (100)
- T2 acquires X locks on: Page4 (onto which it adds a new researcher with IF 5 and age 102) and Page3 (from which it deletes researcher R9)
- T2 then commits, releasing all its locks
- T1 now obtains an S lock on Page3 (containing all researchers with IF 6), and computes max age for IF 6 (18)

T1

SLock(Page1)

SLock(Page2)

compute max age for IF 5 => 100

SLock(Page3)

compute max age for IF = 6 => 18

...

T2

XLock(Page4)

XLock(Page3)

add record <R5, 5, 102> to Page4

delete researcher R9

commit – all locks are released

## The Phantom Problem

- Page1: <R1, 5, 30>, <R2, 5, 20>
- Page2: <R3, 5, 100>, <R4, 5, 90>
- Page3: <R8, 6, 18>, <R9, 6, 19>
- outcome of interleaved schedule on the right:
  - IF 5, Max Age 100
  - IF 6, Max Age 18
- outcome of serial schedule (T1T2):
  - IF 5, Max Age 100
  - IF 6, Max Age 19
- outcome of serial schedule (T2T1):
  - IF 5, Max Age 102
  - IF 6, Max Age 18

T1

SLock(Page1)

SLock(Page2)

compute max age for IF 5 => 100

SLock(Page3)

compute max age for IF = 6 => 18

...

T2

XLock(Page4)

XLock(Page3)

add record <R5, 5, 102> to Page4

delete researcher R9

commit – all locks are released

->

## The Phantom Problem

=> the interleaved schedule is not serializable (no serial schedule over the same set of transactions has the same outcome)

- however, the schedule is conflict serializable (the precedence graph is acyclic)

=> in the presence of insert operations, i.e., if new objects can be added to the database, conflict serializability does not guarantee serializability

# The Phantom Problem

## example 2.

T1

```
SELECT *  
FROM Students  
WHERE GPA >= 8
```

T2

```
INSERT INTO Students VALUES  
(12, 'Mara', 'Dobse', 10)  
COMMIT
```

```
SELECT *  
FROM Students  
WHERE GPA >= 8
```

...

result set for T1's query

row corresponding to student with sid 12  
is not in the result set

row corresponding to student with sid 12  
now appears in the result set

## Transaction Support in SQL - Isolation Levels

- *isolation level*
  - determines the degree to which a transaction is exposed to the operations of other concurrently running transactions
- greater concurrency -> concurrency anomalies

## Transaction Support in SQL - Isolation Levels

- isolation levels
  - READ UNCOMMITTED
  - READ COMMITTED
  - REPEATABLE READ
  - SERIALIZABLE
- isolation levels can be set with the following command:
  - SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL *isolevel*
  - e.g., SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL REPEATABLE READ
- *dirty writes* are not allowed under any isolation level (*dirty write* - a transaction T1 modifies an object previously written by an ongoing transaction T2)

## Isolation Levels

- READ UNCOMMITTED

- a transaction T can read data modified by an ongoing transaction (uncommitted data)
- lowest degree of isolation
- no S locks when reading data
- dirty reads ✓
- unrepeatable reads ✓
- phantoms ✓

## Isolation Levels

- READ COMMITTED
  - a transaction T can only read committed data
  - however, an object read by T can be changed by another transaction while T is in progress
  - a transaction must acquire an exclusive lock prior to writing an object
  - a transaction must acquire a shared lock prior to reading an object (i.e., the last transaction that modified the object is finished)
  - exclusive locks are released at the end of the transaction
  - shared locks are immediately released
  - dirty reads ✗
  - unrepeatable reads ✓
  - phantoms ✓

## Isolation Levels

- REPEATABLE READ

- a transaction T can only read committed data
- no object read by T can be changed by another transaction while T is in progress (if T reads an object O twice, no transaction can modify O between T's reads)
- a transaction must acquire an exclusive lock prior to writing an object
- a transaction must acquire a shared lock prior to reading an object
- exclusive locks are released at the end of the transaction
- shared locks are released at the end of the transaction
- dirty reads ✗
- unrepeatable reads ✗
- phantoms ✓

## Isolation Levels

- SERIALIZABLE
  - a transaction T can only read committed data
  - no object read by T can be changed by another transaction while T is in progress
  - if T reads a set of objects based on a search predicate, this set cannot be changed by other transactions while T is in progress
  - a transaction must acquire locks on objects before reading / writing them
  - a transaction also acquires locks on sets of objects that must remain unmodified
    - if query `SELECT * FROM Students WHERE GPA >= 8` is executed twice within a transaction, it must return the same answer set
  - locks are held until the end of the transaction

## Isolation Levels

- SERIALIZABLE
  - highest degree of isolation
  - dirty reads ✗
  - unrepeatable reads ✗
  - phantoms ✗

\* Jim Gray \*

## References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Le99] LEVENE, M., LOIZOU, G., A Guided Tour of Relational Databases and Beyond, Springer, 1999
- [Ga09] GARCIA-MOLINA, H., ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., Database Systems: The Complete Book (2nd Edition), Pearson, 2009
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si19] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (7th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2019
- [Ul11] ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., A First Course in Database Systems,  
<http://infolab.stanford.edu/~ullman/fcdb.html>

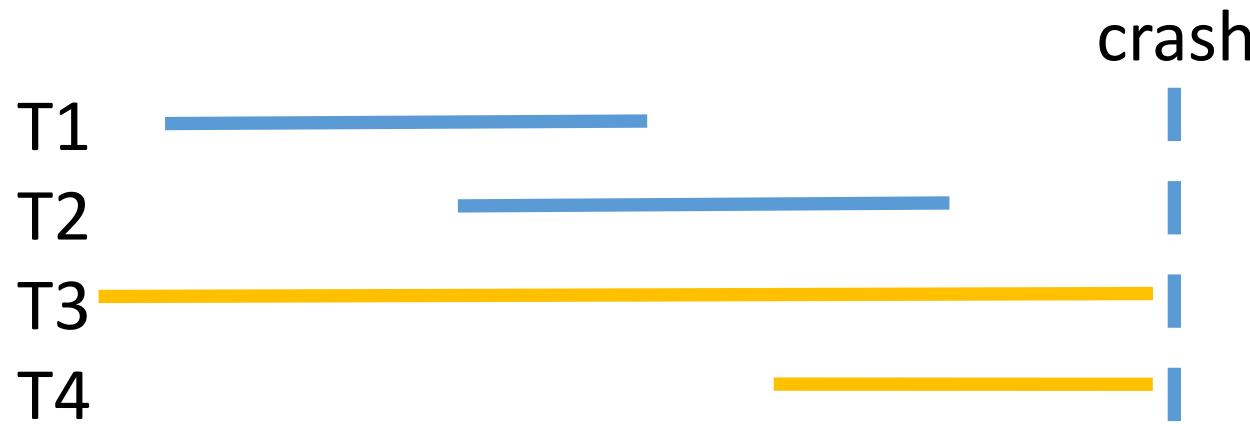
# Database Management Systems

Lecture 4  
Crash Recovery

## Recovery Manager

- the Recovery Manager in a DBMS ensures two important properties of transactions:
  - atomicity
    - the effects of uncommitted transactions are undone
  - durability
    - the effects of committed transactions survive system crashes

# Recovery Manager



- T1, T2 commit before the crash
- T3 and T4 are still active when the system crashes
- the system comes back up:
  - the effects of T1 & T2 must persist
  - T3 & T4 are undone (their effects are not persisted in the DB)

## Transaction Failure - Causes

- system failure
- application error
- action by the Transaction Manager
- self-abort
- system failure (hardware failures, bugs in the operating system, database system, etc)
  - all running transactions terminate
  - contents of internal memory – affected (i.e., lost)
  - contents of external memory – not affected

## Transaction Failure - Causes

- system failure
- application error
- action by the Transaction Manager
- self-abort
- application error (“bug”, e.g., division by 0, infinite loop, etc)  
=> transaction fails; it should be executed again only after the error is corrected

## Transaction Failure - Causes

- system failure
- application error
- action by the Transaction Manager
- self-abort
- action by the Transaction Manager (TM)
  - e.g., deadlock resolution scheme
  - a transaction is chosen as the deadlock victim and terminated
  - the transaction might complete successfully if executed again

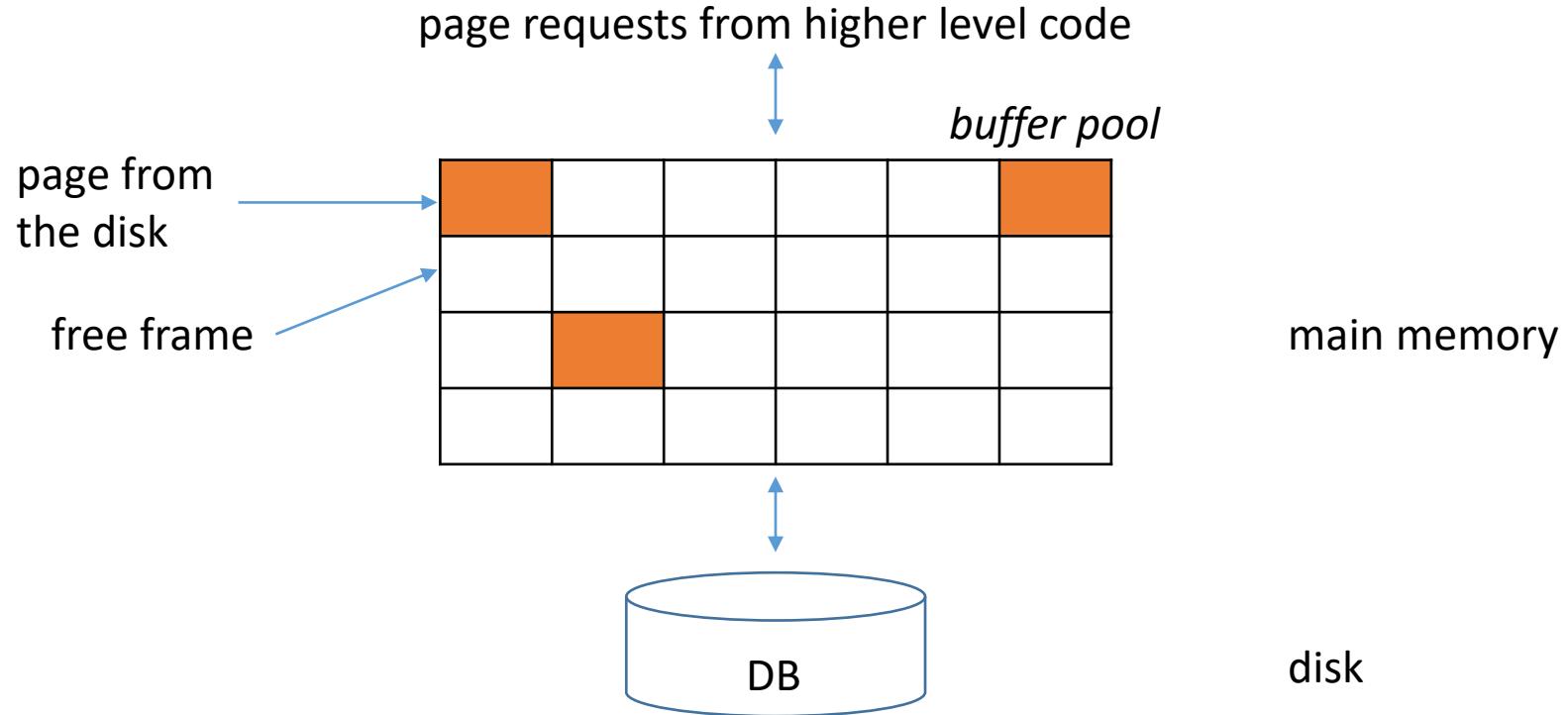
## Transaction Failure - Causes

- system failure
- application error
- action by the Transaction Manager
- self-abort
- self-abort
  - based on some computations, a transaction can decide to terminate and undo its actions
  - there are special statements for this purpose, e.g., *ABORT*, *ROLLBACK*
  - can be seen as a special case of *action by the TM*

## Normal Execution

- during normal execution, transactions read / write database objects
- reading database object O:
  - bring O from disk into a frame in the Buffer Pool (BP)
  - copy O's value into a program variable
- writing database object O:
  - modify an in-memory copy of O (in the BP)
  - write the in-memory copy to disk

# Buffer Manager\*



\*see the *Databases* course in the 1<sup>st</sup> semester (lecture 8 - Buffer Manager)

## Buffer Manager

- higher level layer L in the DBMS asks the Buffer Manager (BM) for page P
- if P is not in the BP, the BM brings it into a frame F in the BP
- when P is no longer needed, L notifies the BM (it releases P), so F can be reused
- if P has been modified, L notifies the BM, which propagates the changes in F to the disk

## Buffer Manager

- BM maintains 2 variables for each frame F
  - *pin\_count*
    - number of current users (requested the page in F but haven't released it yet)
    - only frames with *pin\_count* = 0 can be chosen as replacement frames
  - *dirty*
    - boolean value indicating whether the page in F has been changed since being brought into F
- incrementing *pin\_count*
  - pinning a page P in a frame F
- decrementing *pin\_count*
  - unpinning a page

## Buffer Manager

- initially,  $\text{pin\_count} = 0$ ,  $\text{dirty} = \text{off}$ ,  $\forall F \in \text{BP}$
- L asks for a page P; the BM:
  1. checks whether page P is in the BP; if so,  $\text{pin\_count}(F)++$ , where F is the frame containing P  
otherwise:
    - a. BM chooses a frame FR for replacement
      - if the BP contains multiple frames with  $\text{pin\_count} = 0$ , one frame is chosen according to the BM's replacement policy
      - $\text{pin\_count}(FR)++$ ;
    - b. if  $\text{dirty}(FR) = \text{on}$ , BM writes the page in FR to disk
    - c. BM reads page P in frame FR
  2. the BM returns the address of the BP frame that contains P to L

# Buffer Manager

- replacement policies
  - Least Recently Used
  - Most Recently Used
  - random
  - ...

## Writing Objects

- options: *steal / no-steal, force / no-force*
- transaction T changes object O (in frame F in the BP)
- *steal* approach:
  - T's changes can be written to disk before it commits
  - transaction T2 needs a page; the BM chooses F as a replacement frame (while T is in progress); T2 steals a frame from T
- *no-steal* approach:
  - T's changes cannot be written to disk before it commits

## Writing Objects

- options: *steal / no-steal, force / no-force*
- transaction T changes object O
- *force* approach
  - T's changes are immediately forced to disk when it commits
- *no-force* approach
  - T's changes are not forced to disk when it commits

## Writing Objects

- *no-steal* approach
  - advantage - changes of aborted transactions don't have to be undone (such changes are never written to disk!)
  - drawback - assumption: all pages modified by active transactions can fit in the BP
- *force* approach
  - advantage - actions of committed transactions don't have to be redone
    - by contrast, when using *no-force*, the following scenario is possible: transaction T commits at time  $t_0$ ; its changes are not immediately forced to disk; the system crashes at time  $t_1 \Rightarrow$  T's changes have to be redone!
  - drawback - can result in excessive I/O
- *steal, no-force* approach – used by most systems

## ARIES

- recovery algorithm; *steal, no-force* approach
- system restart after a crash - three phases:
  - analysis
    - determine:
      - active transactions at the time of the crash
      - *dirty pages*, i.e., pages in BP whose changes have not been written to disk
  - redo
    - reapply all changes (starting from a certain record in the log), i.e., bring the DB to the state it was in when the crash occurred
  - undo
    - undo changes of uncommitted transactions

## ARIES

- fundamental principle - *Write-Ahead Logging*
  - a change to an object O is first recorded in the log (in a log record LR)
  - LR must be written to stable storage before the change to O is written to disk

## ARIES

- \* example
  - analysis
    - active transactions at crash time: T1, T3 (to be undone)
    - committed transactions: T2 (its effects must persist)
    - potentially dirty pages: P1, P2, P3
  - redo
    - reapply all changes in order (1, 2, ...)
  - undo
    - undo changes of T1 and T3 in reverse order (6, 5, 1)

| LSN | Log                  |
|-----|----------------------|
| 1   | update: T1 writes P1 |
| 2   | update: T2 writes P2 |
| 3   | T2 commit            |
| 4   | T2 end               |
| 5   | update: T3 writes P3 |
| 6   | update: T3 writes P2 |
|     | crash, restart       |

## Storage Media

- volatile storage
  - information doesn't usually survive system crashes (e.g., main memory)
- non-volatile storage
  - information survives system crashes (e.g., magnetic disks, flash storage)
- stable storage
  - information is never lost
  - techniques that approximate stable storage (e.g., store information on multiple disks, in several locations)

## The Log (journal)

- history of actions executed by the DBMS
- file of records
- stored in *stable storage* (keep  $\geq 2$  copies of the log on different disks (locations) - ensures the durability of the log)
- records are added to the end of the log
- *log tail*
  - the most recent fragment of the log
  - kept in main memory and periodically forced to stable storage
- *Log Sequence Number (LSN)*
  - unique id for every log record
  - monotonically increasing (e.g., address of 1<sup>st</sup> byte of log record)

## The Log

- *pageLSN*
  - every page P in the DB contains the *pageLSN*: the LSN of the most recent record in the log describing a change to P
- *log record* – fields:
  - prevLSN
    - linking a transaction's log records
  - transID
    - id of the corresponding transaction
  - type
    - type of the log record

## The Log

- a log record is written for each of the following actions:
  - *update page*
  - *commit*
  - *abort*
  - *end*
  - *undo an update*

## The Log

- update page P
  - add an *update type* log record ULR to the log tail (with  $LSN_{ULR}$ )
  - $pageLSN(P)$  is set to  $LSN_{ULR}$
- transaction T commits\*
  - add a *commit type* log record CoLR to the log
  - force log tail to stable storage (including CoLR)
  - complete subsequent actions (remove T from transaction table)
- transaction T aborts
  - add an *abort type* log record to the log
  - initiate Undo for T

\* obs. committed transaction – a transaction whose log records (including the *commit log record*) have been written to stable storage

## The Log

- transaction T ends
  - T commits / aborts - complete required actions
  - add an *end type* log record to the log
- undo an update
  - i.e., when the change described in an update log record is undone
  - write a *compensation log record* (CLR)

## The Log

- *update log record*
  - additional fields
    - *pageID* (id of the changed page)
    - *length* (length of the change - in bytes)
    - *offset* (offset of the change)
    - *before-image* (value before the change)
    - *after-image* (value after the change)
  - can be used to undo / redo the change

## The Log

- *compensation log record*
  - let U be an update log record describing an update of transaction T
  - let C be the compensation log record for U, i.e., C describes the action taken to undo the changes described by U
  - C has a field named *undoNextLSN*:
    - the LSN of the next log record to be undone for T
    - set to the value of prevLSN in U

->

# The Log

- *compensation log record*
- \* example: undo T10's update to P10

=> CLR with:

*transID* = T10

*pageID* = P10

*length* = 2

*offset* = 10

*before-image* = JH

*undoNextLSN* = LSN of 1<sup>st</sup> log record (i.e., the next record that is to be undone for transaction T10)

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |



## The Transaction Table and the Dirty Page Table

- contain important information for the recovery process
- *transaction table*
  - 1 entry / active transaction
  - fields
    - *transID*
    - *status*
      - in progress
      - committed
      - aborted
    - *lastLSN*
      - LSN of the most recent log record for the transaction

->

# The Transaction Table and the Dirty Page Table

- *transaction table*
  - example (*status* = in progress, not displayed)

|                   | prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|-------------------|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|                   |         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|                   |         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|                   |         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
| transID           | lastLSN |         |        |        |        |        |              |             |
| T10               |         |         |        |        |        |        | log          |             |
| T15               |         |         |        |        |        |        |              |             |
| transaction table |         |         |        |        |        |        |              |             |

Diagram illustrating the relationship between the Transaction Table and the Dirty Page Table. The Transaction Table (bottom) shows transactions T10 and T15. The Dirty Page Table (top) shows log entries for pages P100 and P2. Arrows from the transaction IDs in the Transaction Table point to the corresponding log entries in the Dirty Page Table. A double-headed arrow connects the 'transID' column header in the Transaction Table to the 'transID' column in the Dirty Page Table.

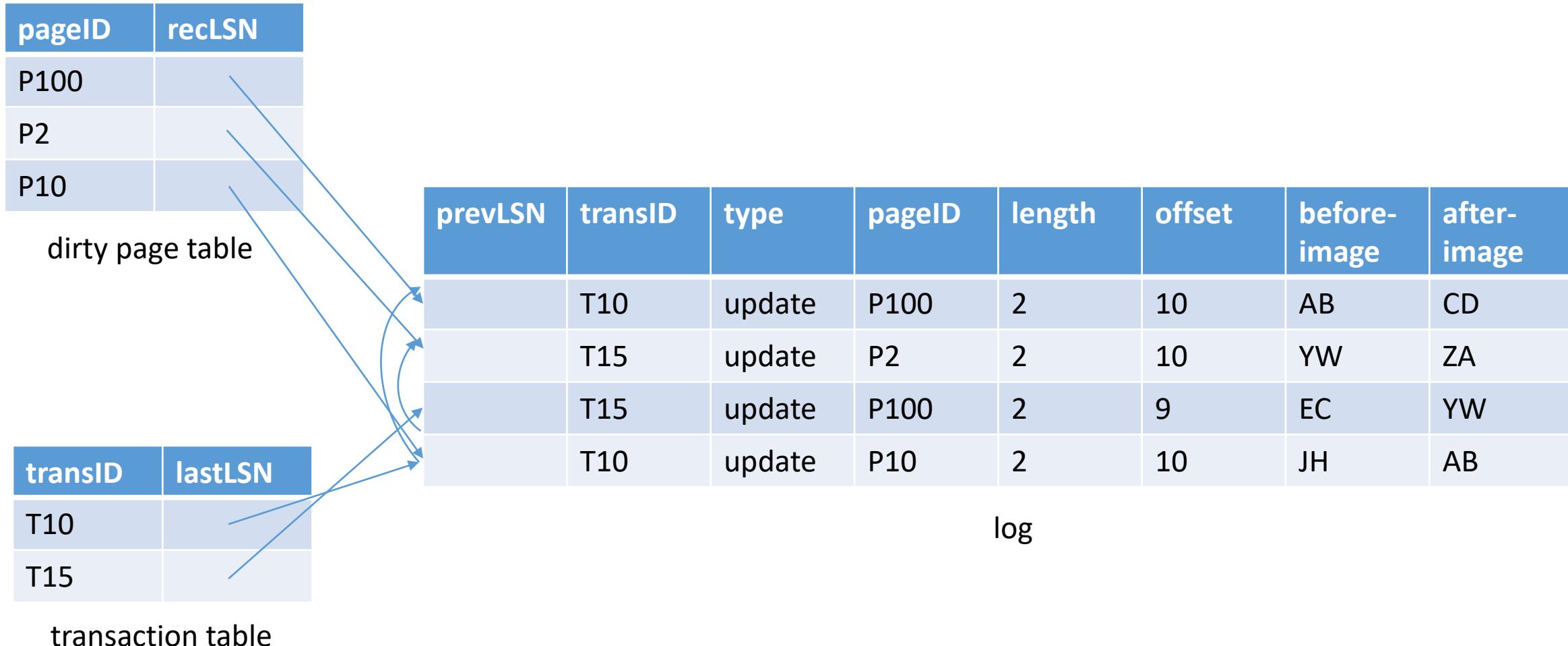
## The Transaction Table and the Dirty Page Table

- *dirty page table*
  - 1 entry / dirty page in the Buffer Pool
  - fields
    - *pageID*
    - *recLSN*
      - the LSN of the 1<sup>st</sup> log record that dirtied the page

->

# The Transaction Table and the Dirty Page Table

- *dirty page table*
  - example



## Checkpointing

- objective
  - reduce the amount of work performed by the system when it comes back up after a crash
- *checkpoints* taken periodically
- checkpointing in ARIES - 3 steps:
  - write a *begin\_checkpoint* record (it indicates when the checkpoint starts)
    - $LSN_{BCK}$  - LSN of *begin\_checkpoint* record
  - write an *end\_checkpoint* record
    - it includes the current Transaction Table and the current Dirty Page Table

## Checkpointing

- checkpointing in ARIES - 3 steps:
  - after the *end\_checkpoint* record is written to stable storage:
    - write a *master* record to a known place on stable storage
    - *master* record includes  $LSN_{BCK}$
- crash -> restart -> system looks for the most recent checkpoint
- normal execution begins with a checkpoint with an empty Transaction Table and an empty Dirty Page Table

## References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Le99] LEVENE, M., LOIZOU, G., A Guided Tour of Relational Databases and Beyond, Springer, 1999
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si19] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (7th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2019

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 5  
Crash Recovery

## Recovery - overview

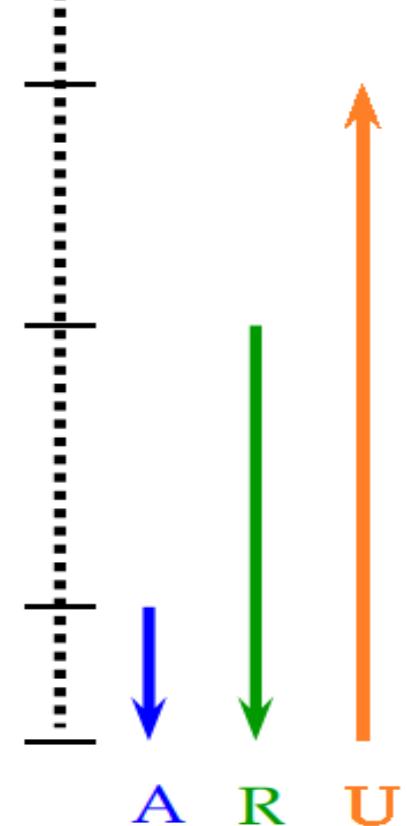
- system restart after a crash – 3 phases:
  - **Analysis**
    - reconstructs state at the most recent checkpoint
    - scans the log forward from the most recent checkpoint
    - identifies:
      - active transactions at the time of the crash (to be undone)
      - potentially dirty pages at the time of the crash
      - the starting point for the Redo pass

the oldest log record of transactions that were active at the time of the crash

the smallest recLSN in the dirty page table (determined during the Analysis pass)

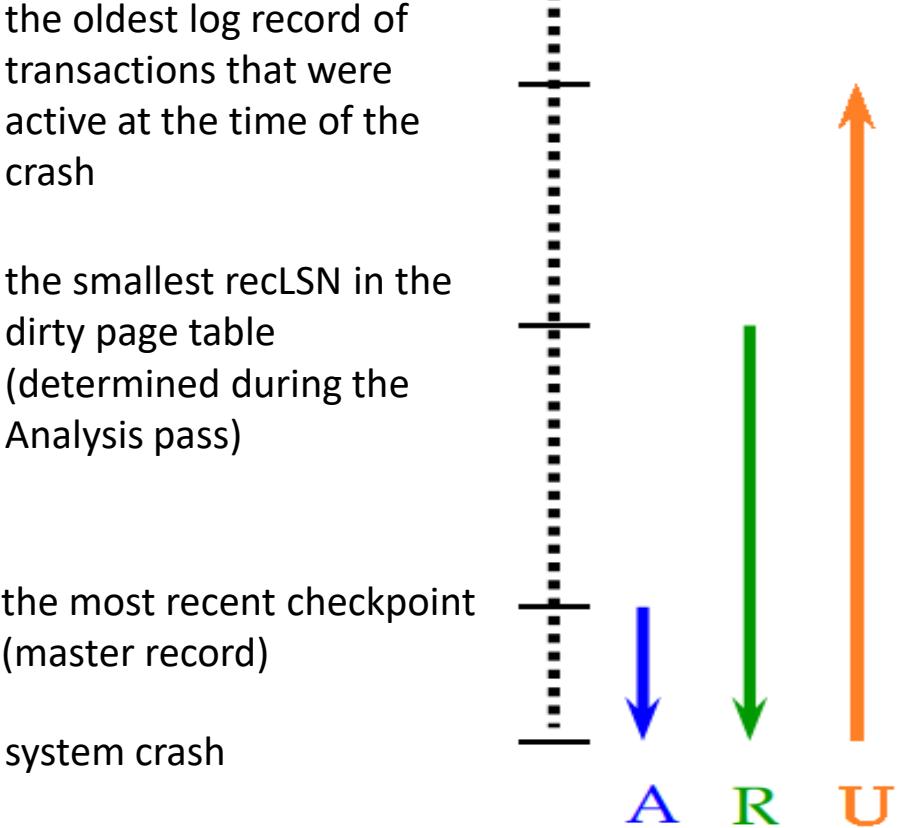
the most recent checkpoint (master record)

system crash



## Recovery - overview

- system restart after a crash – 3 phases:
  - Redo
    - repeats history, i.e., reapplies changes to dirty pages
    - all updates are reapplied (regardless of whether the corresponding transaction committed or not)
    - starting point is determined in the Analysis pass
    - scans the log forward until the last record



## Recovery - overview

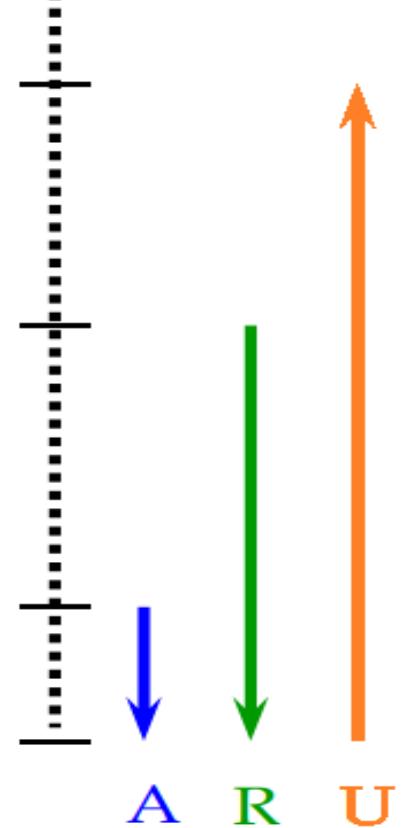
- system restart after a crash – 3 phases
  - Undo
    - the effects of transactions that were active at the time of the crash are undone
    - such changes are undone in the opposite order (i.e., Undo scans the log backward from the last record)

the oldest log record of transactions that were active at the time of the crash

the smallest recLSN in the dirty page table (determined during the Analysis pass)

the most recent checkpoint (master record)

system crash



## \* Analysis

- investigate the most recent *begin\_checkpoint* log record
  - get the next *end\_checkpoint* log record EC
- set Dirty Page Table to the copy of the Dirty Page Table in EC
- set Transaction Table to the copy of the Transaction Table in EC

->

\* Analysis - scan the log forward from the most recent checkpoint:

- transactions:

- encounter **end log record** for transaction T:
  - remove T from Transaction Table
- encounter **other log records (LR)** for transaction T:
  - add T to Transaction Table if not already there
  - set T.lastLSN to LR.LSN
  - if LR is a commit type log record:
    - set T's status to *C*
  - otherwise, set status to *U* (i.e., to be undone)

\* Analysis - scan the log forward from the most recent checkpoint:

- pages:
  - encounter **redoable log record (LR)** for page P:
    - if P is not in the Dirty Page Table:
      - add P to Dirty Page Table
      - set P.recLSN to LR.LSN

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |
|         | T10     | update | P11    | 3      | 20     | GFX          | YTR         |

log



- first 5 log records are written to stable storage
- system crashes before the 6<sup>th</sup> log record is written to stable storage

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |

log

### Analysis

- most recent checkpoint – beginning of execution (empty Transaction Table, empty Dirty Page Table)
- 1<sup>st</sup> log record
  - add T10 to the Transaction Table
  - add P100 to the Dirty Page Table (recLSN = LSN(1<sup>st</sup> log record))

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |

log

### Analysis

- 2<sup>nd</sup> log record
  - add T15 to the Transaction Table
  - add P2 to the Dirty Page Table (recLSN = LSN(2<sup>nd</sup> log record))

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |

log

### Analysis

- 4<sup>th</sup> log record
  - add P10 to the Dirty Page Table (recLSN = LSN(4<sup>th</sup> log record))
- active transactions at the time of the crash:
  - transactions with status *U*, i.e., T10 (T15 is a committed transaction)

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |

log

## Analysis

- Dirty Page Table:
  - can include pages that were written to disk prior to the crash
  - assume P2's update is the only change written to disk before the crash, i.e., P2 is not dirty, but it's in the Dirty Page Table
  - the pageLSN on page P2 is equal to the LSN of the 2<sup>nd</sup> log record

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |

log

### Analysis

- log record  is not seen during Analysis (it was not written to disk before the crash)
- Write-Ahead Logging protocol => the corresponding change to page P11 cannot have been written to disk

## \* Redo

- *repeat history*: reconstruct state at the time of the crash
  - reapply *all* updates (even those of aborted transactions!), reapply CLRs
- scan the log forward from the log record with the smallest recLSN in the Dirty Page Table
- for each **redoable** log record **LR** affecting page P, redo the described action unless one of the conditions below is satisfied:
  - page P is not in the Dirty Page Table
  - page P is in the Dirty Page Table, but P.recLSN > LR.LSN
  - P.pageLSN (in DB)  $\geq$  LR.LSN
- to redo an action:
  - reapply the logged action
  - set P.pageLSN to LR.LSN
  - no additional logging!

## \* Redo

- at the end of Redo:
  - for every transaction  $T$  with status  $C$ :
    - add an end log record
    - remove  $T$  from the Transaction Table

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |

log

### Redo

- previously stated assumption: P2's update is the only change written to disk before the crash, i.e., P2 is not dirty, but it's in the Dirty Page Table
- Dirty Page Table -> smallest recLSN is the LSN of the 1<sup>st</sup> log record

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |

log

### Redo

- 1<sup>st</sup> log record
  - fetch page P100 (its pageLSN is less than the LSN of the current log record) => reapply update, set P100.pageLSN to the LSN of the 1<sup>st</sup> log record

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |

log

### Redo

- 2<sup>nd</sup> log record
  - fetch page P2
  - P2.pageLSN = LSN of the current log record => update is not reapplied
- 3<sup>rd</sup>, 4<sup>th</sup> log records – processed similarly

## \* Undo

- *loser transaction* – transaction that was active at the time of the crash
- $\text{ToUndo} = \{ l \mid l - \text{lastLSN of a } \text{loser} \text{ transaction}\}$
- repeat:
  - choose the largest LSN in ToUndo and process the corresponding log record LR; let T be the corresponding transaction
  - if LR is a CLR:
    - if  $\text{undoNextLSN} == \text{NULL}$ 
      - write an end log record for T
    - else { $\text{undoNextLSN} != \text{NULL}$ }
      - add  $\text{undoNextLSN}$  to ToUndo
  - else {LR is an update log record}
    - write a CLR
    - undo the update
    - add  $\text{LR.prevLSN}$  to ToUndo
- until ToUndo is empty

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |

log

### Undo

- active transaction at the time of the crash: T10
- lastLSN of T10: LSN of the 4<sup>th</sup> log record
- 4<sup>th</sup> log record
  - undo update, write CLR
  - add LSN of 1<sup>st</sup> log record to ToUndo

## Example 1

| prevLSN | transID | type   | pageID | length | offset | before-image | after-image |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|
|         | T10     | update | P100   | 2      | 10     | AB           | CD          |
|         | T15     | update | P2     | 2      | 10     | YW           | ZA          |
|         | T15     | update | P100   | 2      | 9      | EC           | YW          |
|         | T10     | update | P10    | 2      | 10     | JH           | AB          |
|         | T15     | commit |        |        |        |              |             |

log

### Undo

- 1<sup>st</sup> log record
  - undo update (!T15's change to P100 is lost!)
  - write CLR, write end log record for T10
- obs. if Strict 2PL is used, T15 cannot write P100 while T10 is active (T10 has also modified P100)

## Example 2 – system crashes during Undo

- consider the execution history below:

| LSN | LOG                   |
|-----|-----------------------|
| 00  | begin_checkpoint      |
| 05  | end_checkpoint        |
| 10  | update: T1 writes P5  |
| 20  | update T2 writes P3   |
| 30  | T1 abort              |
| 40  | CLR: Undo T1 LSN 10   |
| 45  | T1 End                |
| 50  | update: T3 writes P1  |
| 60  | update: T2 writes P5  |
|     | <b>CRASH, RESTART</b> |

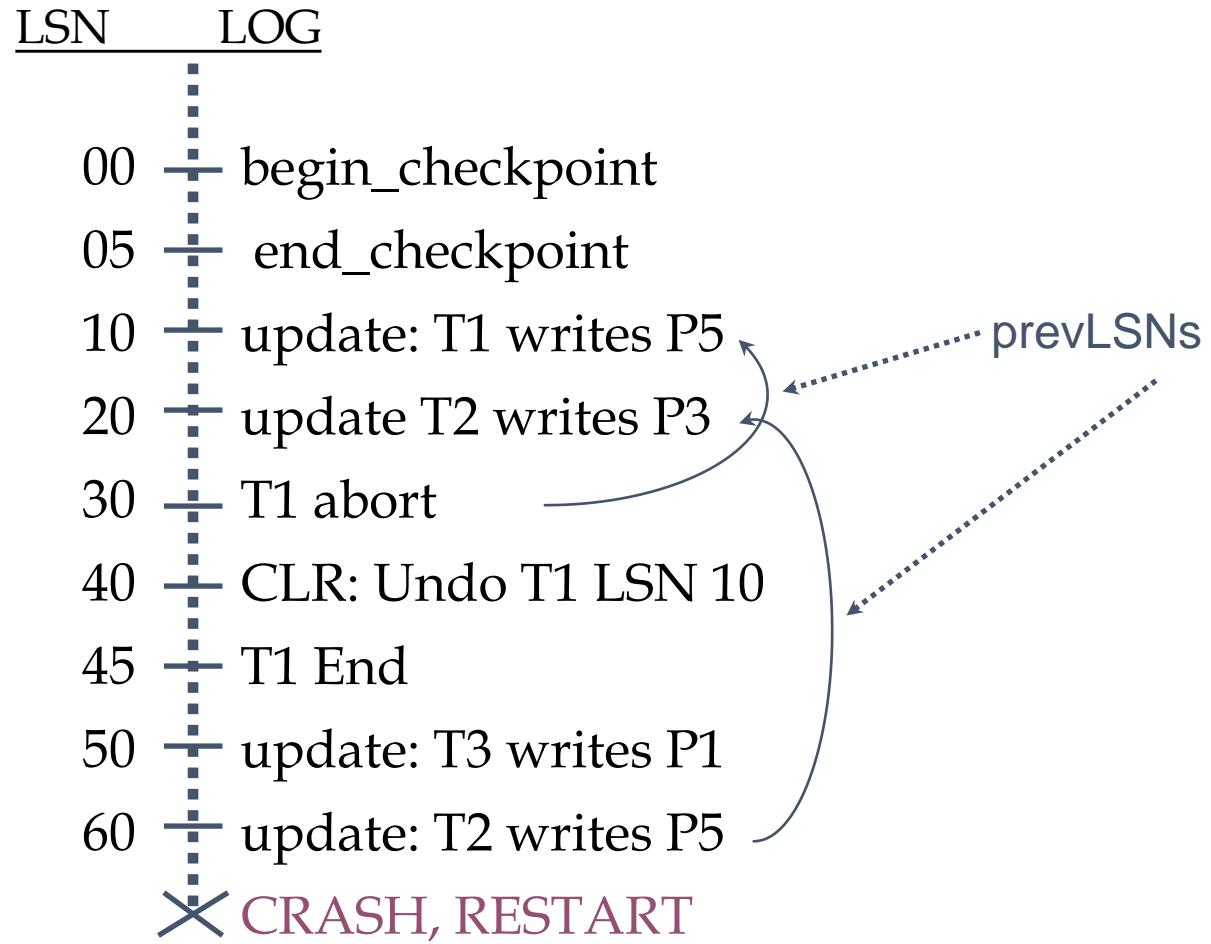
The diagram illustrates the sequence of log entries in a log file. A vertical dotted line represents the log stream, with horizontal tick marks indicating Log Sequence Numbers (LSNs). The log entries are as follows:

- LSN 00: begin\_checkpoint
- LSN 05: end\_checkpoint
- LSN 10: update: T1 writes P5
- LSN 20: update T2 writes P3
- LSN 30: T1 abort
- LSN 40: CLR: Undo T1 LSN 10
- LSN 45: T1 End
- LSN 50: update: T3 writes P1
- LSN 60: update: T2 writes P5

A red 'X' marks the entry at LSN 60, labeled "CRASH, RESTART". A blue curved arrow points from the "T1 abort" entry at LSN 30 to the "CRASH, RESTART" entry at LSN 60. Dotted arrows labeled "prevLSNs" point from the "T1 abort" entry to the "end\_checkpoint" entry at LSN 05 and to the "begin\_checkpoint" entry at LSN 00.

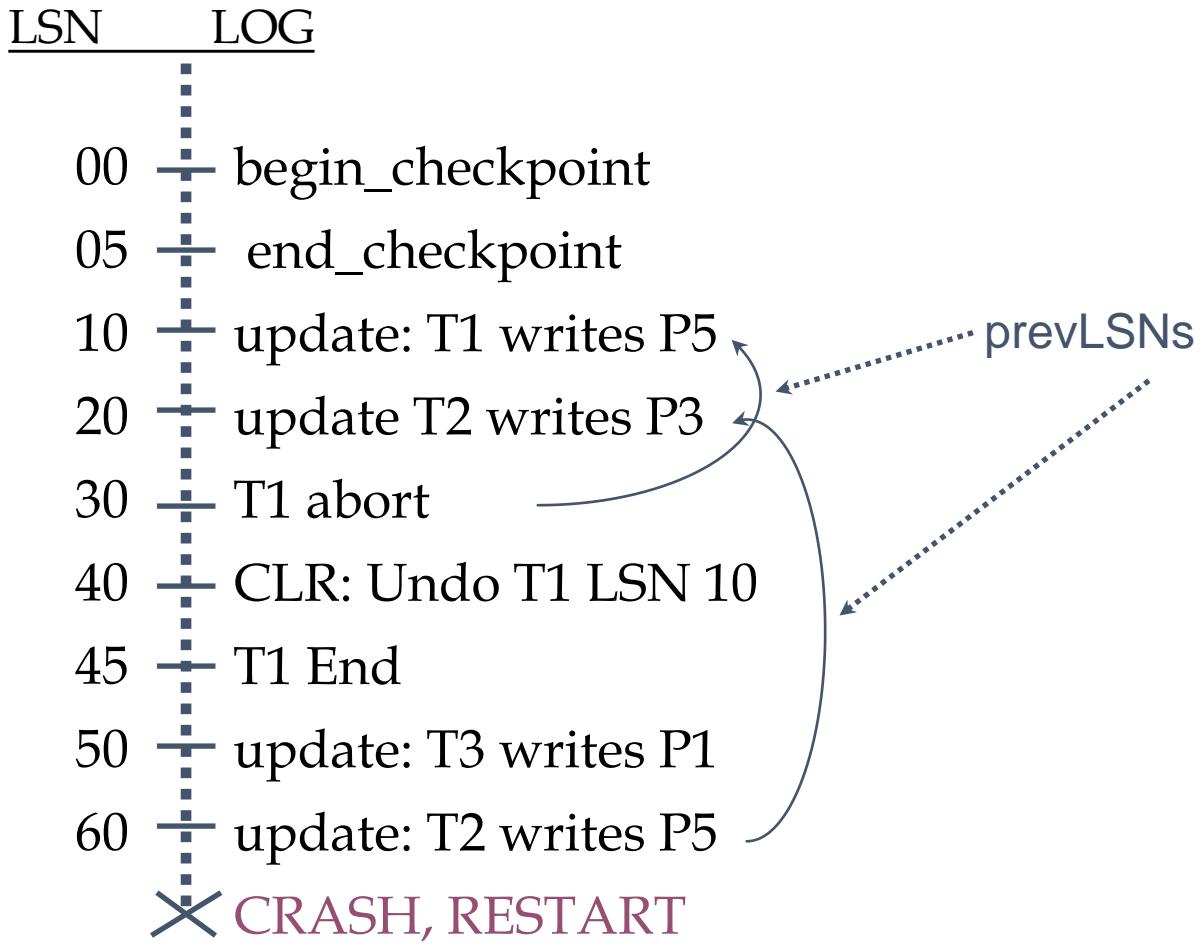
## Example 2

- T1 aborts
  - => its only update is undone (CLR with LSN 40)
  - T1 - terminated
- 1<sup>st</sup> crash:
  - Analysis:
    - dirty pages: P5 (recLSN 10), P3 (recLSN 20), P1 (recLSN 50)
    - active transactions at the time of the crash: T2 (lastLSN 60), T3 (lastLSN 50)



## Example 2

- 1<sup>st</sup> crash:
  - Redo:
    - starting point
      - log record with LSN = 10 (smallest recLSN in the Dirty Page Table)
    - reapply required actions in update log records / compensation log records



## Example 2

- 1<sup>st</sup> crash:
  - Undo:
    - T2, T3 – loser transactions  
=> ToUndo = {60, 50}
    - process log record with LSN 60:
      - undo update
      - write CLR (LSN 70) with undoNextLSN 20 (i.e., the next log record that should be processed for T2)

| LSN   | LOG                                |
|-------|------------------------------------|
| 00,05 | + begin_checkpoint, end_checkpoint |
| 10    | - update: T1 writes P5             |
| 20    | - update T2 writes P3              |
| 30    | - T1 abort                         |
| 40,45 | - CLR: Undo T1 LSN 10, T1 End      |
| 50    | - update: T3 writes P1             |
| 60    | - update: T2 writes P5             |
| X     | CRASH, RESTART                     |
| 70    | - CLR: Undo T2 LSN 60              |
| 80,85 | - CLR: Undo T3 LSN 50, T3 end      |
| X     | CRASH, RESTART                     |

## Example 2

- 1<sup>st</sup> crash:
  - Undo:
    - process log record with LSN 50:
    - undo update
    - write CLR (LSN 80) with *undoNextLSN null* (i.e., T3 completely undone, write end log record for T3)
  - log records with LSN 70, 80, 85 are written to stable storage
- 2<sup>nd</sup> crash (during undo)!

| LSN   | LOG                                |
|-------|------------------------------------|
| 00,05 | + begin_checkpoint, end_checkpoint |
| 10    | - update: T1 writes P5             |
| 20    | - update T2 writes P3              |
| 30    | - T1 abort                         |
| 40,45 | - CLR: Undo T1 LSN 10, T1 End      |
| 50    | - update: T3 writes P1             |
| 60    | - update: T2 writes P5             |
| X     | CRASH, RESTART                     |
| 70    | - CLR: Undo T2 LSN 60              |
| 80,85 | - CLR: Undo T3 LSN 50, T3 end      |
| X     | CRASH, RESTART                     |

undonextLSN

## Example 2

- 2<sup>nd</sup> crash:
  - Analysis:
    - the only active transaction: T2
    - dirty pages: P5 (recLSN 10), P3 (recLSN 20), P1 (recLSN 50)
  - Redo:
    - process log records with LSN between 10 and 85

| LSN   | LOG                                |
|-------|------------------------------------|
| 00,05 | + begin_checkpoint, end_checkpoint |
| 10    | - update: T1 writes P5             |
| 20    | - update T2 writes P3              |
| 30    | - T1 abort                         |
| 40,45 | - CLR: Undo T1 LSN 10, T1 End      |
| 50    | - update: T3 writes P1             |
| 60    | - update: T2 writes P5             |
| X     | CRASH, RESTART                     |
| 70    | - CLR: Undo T2 LSN 60              |
| 80,85 | - CLR: Undo T3 LSN 50, T3 end      |
| X     | CRASH, RESTART                     |
| 90    | - CLR: Undo T2 LSN 20, T2 end      |

## Example 2

- 2<sup>nd</sup> crash:
  - Undo:
    - lastLSN of T2: 70
    - ToUndo = {70}
    - process log record with LSN 70:
      - add 20 (undoNextLSN) to ToUndo
    - process log record with LSN 20:
      - undo update
      - write CLR (LSN 90) with undoNextLSN null => write end log record for T2

| LSN   | LOG                                |
|-------|------------------------------------|
| 00,05 | + begin_checkpoint, end_checkpoint |
| 10    | - update: T1 writes P5             |
| 20    | - update T2 writes P3              |
| 30    | - T1 abort                         |
| 40,45 | - CLR: Undo T1 LSN 10, T1 End      |
| 50    | - update: T3 writes P1             |
| 60    | - update: T2 writes P5             |
| 70    | X CRASH, RESTART                   |
| 70    | - CLR: Undo T2 LSN 60              |
| 80,85 | - CLR: Undo T3 LSN 50, T3 end      |
| 80,85 | X CRASH, RESTART                   |
| 90    | - CLR: Undo T2 LSN 20, T2 end      |

## Example 2

- 2<sup>nd</sup> crash:
    - Undo:
      - ToUndo empty
- => recovery complete!

| LSN   | LOG                                |
|-------|------------------------------------|
| 00,05 | + begin_checkpoint, end_checkpoint |
| 10    | - update: T1 writes P5             |
| 20    | - update T2 writes P3              |
| 30    | - T1 abort                         |
| 40,45 | - CLR: Undo T1 LSN 10, T1 End      |
| 50    | - update: T3 writes P1             |
| 60    | - update: T2 writes P5             |
| X     | CRASH, RESTART                     |
| 70    | - CLR: Undo T2 LSN 60              |
| 80,85 | - CLR: Undo T3 LSN 50, T3 end      |
| X     | CRASH, RESTART                     |
| 90    | - CLR: Undo T2 LSN 20, T2 end      |

- obs. aborting a transaction
  - special case of Undo in which the actions of a single transaction are undone
- obs. system crash during the Analysis pass
  - all the work is lost
  - when the system comes back up, the Analysis phase has the same information as before
- obs. system crash during the Redo pass
  - some of the changes from the Redo pass may have been written to disk prior to the crash
  - the pageLSN will indicate such a situation, so these changes will not be reapplied in the subsequent Redo pass

## References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Le99] LEVENE, M., LOIZOU, G., A Guided Tour of Relational Databases and Beyond, Springer, 1999
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si19] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (7th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2019

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 6

Security

## \* database protection

- security & integrity
- security
  - protecting the data against unauthorized users (who may want to read, modify, destroy the data)
  - i.e., users have the right to do what they are trying to do
- integrity
  - protecting the data against authorized users
  - i.e., the operations that users are trying to execute are correct
  - the consistency of the database must be maintained at all times

\* aspects related to security:

- legal, ethical aspects
  - certain rules are being broken
  - e.g., a person searches for a password or accidentally finds a password and uses it
- physical controls
  - e.g., the computer room is locked (or guarded)
- software controls
  - files are protected (unauthorized access is not allowed)
  - there are no programs intercepting actions of authorized users
- operational problems
  - if a password mechanism is used, how are the passwords kept secret and how often should a user change his / her password?

\* data security and data integrity – similarities:

- the system enforces certain constraints (users cannot violate these constraints)
- security constraints, integrity constraints
- constraints are:
  - specified in a declarative language
  - saved in the system catalog

example: *primary key constraint*, specified in SQL and saved in the system catalog (retrieving info about PK constraints in SQL Server:

```
SELECT *
  FROM sys.objects
 WHERE type = 'PK')
```

- the system monitors users' actions to enforce the specified constraints
- example: INSERT, UPDATE statements cannot violate a PK constraint

- \* the DBMS's authorization subsystem (security subsystem)
  - checks any given access request against the applicable constraints
  - access request:
    - requested object + requested operation + requesting user
- example: *Alice wants to delete 10 rows from table Customers.*
- identifying the applicable constraints for an access request:
  - the system must recognize the source of the request, i.e., the requesting user
  - an authentication mechanism is used for this purpose, e.g.:
    - password scheme
      - users supply their user ID (users say who they are) and their password (users prove they are who they say they are)
      - fingerprint readers, voice verifiers, retinal scanners, etc

\* main approaches to data security in a DBMS:

- discretionary control & mandatory control
- discretionary control
  - users have different access rights (privileges) on different database objects
  - very flexible schemes, e.g.:
    - user U1 sees object O1, but doesn't see object O2
    - user U2 sees object O2, but doesn't see object O1

\* main approaches to data security in a DBMS:

- discretionary control & mandatory control
- mandatory control
  - each object has a classification level
  - each user has a clearance level
  - an object O can be accessed by user U only if U has the right clearance
  - schemes - more rigid, e.g.:
    - user U1 can see object O1, but cannot see object O2
      - i.e., object O2's classification level is higher than O1's classification level
    - so no user U2 can see O2, but not O1

## \* discretionary control

- the operations users are allowed to perform are explicitly specified
- anything not explicitly authorized is implicitly forbidden
  - examples:

*Alice and Bob are both allowed to SELECT from table Customers.*

*Jane is allowed to SELECT, INSERT, DELETE from / into table Orders.*

## \* discretionary control

- possible language to define *authorities*

AUTHORITY CA1

GRANT RETRIEVE  
ON Customers  
TO Alice, Bob

AUTHORITY CA2

GRANT RETRIEVE {CID, LastName, FirstName, DOB}, DELETE  
ON Customers  
TO Jane

- an authority has:
  - a name
  - a set of privileges (GRANT clause)
  - the relation to which it applies (ON clause)
  - a set of users (user IDs) who will be granted the specified privileges on the specified relation (TO clause)
- privileges
  - RETRIEVE [attr\_list]
  - INSERT [attr\_list]
  - DELETE
  - UPDATE [attr\_list]

## \* discretionary control

- SQL support
  - views
    - users are allowed to see only a certain subset of the data
  - authorization subsystem
    - users can grant privileges to / revoke privileges from other users
  - user U created object O => U automatically receives all privileges associated with O
    - e.g., O is a table => U is automatically granted the following privileges: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, REFERENCES, TRIGGER
      - TRIGGER - allows the user to create a trigger on O
      - REFERENCES - allows the user to refer to O in an integrity constraint
    - U can also grant these privileges to other users

- \* discretionary control

- SQL support
  - granting privileges - GRANT statement

GRANT privilege\_list

    ON object

    TO user\_list

[WITH GRANT OPTION]

- WITH GRANT OPTION - users (in user\_list) can grant the specified privileges on the specified object to other users

- \* discretionary control

- SQL support
  - revoking privileges - REVOKE statement

```
REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] privilege_list
```

```
    ON object  
    FROM user_list  
    behavior
```

```
REVOKE SELECT, DELETE, UPDATE {FirstName, LastName}  
    ON Customers  
    FROM Jane RESTRICT
```

```
REVOKE SELECT  
    ON Customers  
    FROM Alice, Bob CASCADE
```

## \* discretionary control

- SQL support
  - revoking privileges - REVOKE statement
    - GRANT OPTION FOR
      - revoke the grant authority
    - behavior - RESTRICT / CASCADE
      - let p be a privilege on object O
      - user U1 grants privilege p to user U2, user U2 grants privilege p to user U3; U1 tries to revoke p from U2 => privilege p of U3 would be *abandoned*
      - RESTRICT / CASCADE - avoid abandoned privileges
        - RESTRICT - operation fails
        - CASCADE - abandoned privileges are also revoked

- \* discretionary control

- SQL support
  - revoking privileges - REVOKE statement
    - behavior - RESTRICT / CASCADE
      - user U1 grants privilege p to user U2, user U2 grants privilege p to user U3
        - U1 tries to revoke p from U2 with RESTRICT => REVOKE fails
        - U1 tries to revoke p from U2 with CASCADE => p is revoked from U2 and U3

## \* mandatory control

- every object has a classification level (e.g., *top secret, secret, etc*)
  - levels – strict ordering (e.g., *top secret > secret*)
- every user has a clearance level (same options as for classification levels)
- Bell and La Padula rules:
  - user  $x$  can retrieve object  $y$  only if the clearance level of  $x$  is  $\geq$  the classification level of  $y$   
example: *Alice's clearance level is top secret, Bob's is secret.*  
*Object O1's classification level is top secret, O2's is secret.*  
*Alice can retrieve both O1 and O2, Bob can only retrieve O2.*
  - user  $x$  can update object  $y$  only if the clearance level of  $x$  is equal to the classification level of  $y$   
example: *Alice can only update O1, Bob can only update O2.*

## \* audit trail

- database administrator should monitor the database and keep track of all operations performed by users via an audit trail
  - if there is any suspicion of wrongdoing, the audit trail can be analyzed
  - an audit trail can contain:
    - executed SQL statement, user name of the user who executed the statement, IP address, date and time, affected object, old values and new values for changed records

## \* SQL injection

- application -> execution of a SQL statement (fixed statement, statement that is generated using input data from the user)
- a statement can be changed (when being generated) due to data supplied by the user
- such a change is attempted when the user is trying to obtain additional access rights
- the user enters code into input variables; the code is concatenated with SQL statements and executed
- the DBMS executes all statements that are syntactically valid
- obs.
  - string separators: single quotes, double quotes
  - statement separator (if a command can include multiple statements): semicolon
  - comments in SQL: statement --comment

## \* SQL injection

### 1. changing a user's authentication statement

- errors when executing the statement => use the error messages in subsequent executions
- authenticating with a username and a password - in many cases, the following statement is executed:

```
SELECT ... WHERE user = "uname" AND password = "upassword"
```

columns in the *users*  
table (can have various  
other names)

could be an email

supplied by the client

- if the statement is successfully executed and returns at least one record, the authentication is successful

## \* SQL injection

### 1. changing a user's authentication statement

- values that change the SQL statement (modify the action intended by the programmer):

| uname       | upassword     | condition in the statement                                                                                                |
|-------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a           | " OR 1 = 1 -- | user="a" AND password="" OR 1=1 -- "                                                                                      |
| admin" --   | ?             | user="admin" --" AND password ...<br>(other values besides <i>admin</i> can be chosen from various lists on the internet) |
| " OR 0=0 -- | ?             | user="" OR 0=0 -- ...                                                                                                     |

SELECT ... WHERE user = "uname" AND password = "upassword"

- for the values in the 1<sup>st</sup> row, the statement becomes:

SELECT ... WHERE user = "a" AND password = "" OR 1 = 1 --"

SELECT ... WHERE user = "a" AND password = "" OR 1 = 1 --" => all rows are retrieved from the DB, successful authentication

## \* SQL injection

provided by the client

### 2. obtaining information from the database

- the client is asked to provide value *v*:
- possible values entered by the user:

- `x" OR 1 = (SELECT COUNT(*) FROM table) --`
  - if an error occurs, the statement can be executed again, with a different table name; a malevolent user can obtain, in this way, the name of a table in the DB (for instance, a table with passwords)
- `x" AND user IS NULL --`
  - if an error occurs, the statement can be executed again, with a different column name (instead of *user* in the example); a malevolent user can obtain the name of a column
- `x" AND user LIKE "%pop%" --`
  - if an error occurs or no data is returned => change the column name or the string in the condition (%pop%); one can obtain the name of a user

## \* SQL injection

### 3. changing data in tables

- the client is asked to provide value *v*:

- possible values entered by the user:

- 0; INSERT INTO users ...

- the SELECT statement is executed, then data about a new user is inserted into the *users* table

- 0 UNION SELECT CONCAT(name, password) FROM users

- retrieving all usernames and passwords while executing the SELECT statement

- 0; DROP TABLE users

- the SELECT statement is executed, then table *users* is dropped

```
SELECT ... WHERE ... v ...
```

supplied by the client

## \* SQL injection

### 4. changing a user's password

- the client is asked to provide value  $v$ :
- possible values entered by the user for  $v$  (the new password):
  - $x" --$ 
    - setting the password for all users to  $x$
  - $x" WHERE user LIKE "%admin%" --$ 
    - setting the password for all usernames matching the specified criterion

```
UPDATE table  
SET password = "v"  
WHERE user = " " ...
```

supplied by the client

- \* SQL injection
- prevention
  - data validation
    - use regular expressions to validate data
    - allow the client to use only certain types of characters in the input data
  - modify problematic characters
    - double single quotes and double quotes; or precede single and double quotes with "\\" (one can use functions for such changes)  
=> single and double quotes in the statement won't modify the statement  
(like in the previous examples)

example: SELECT ... WHERE user = "uname" AND password = "upassword"

user enters: *a* and "*OR 1 = 1 --*" for *uname* and *upassword* (like in a prev. ex.)

double the "

=> statement: SELECT ... WHERE user = "a" AND password = " " " " OR 1 = 1 -- ", which retrieves rows with user *a* and password "*OR 1 = 1 --*"

- \* SQL injection

- prevention

- use parameterized statements

SELECT . . . WHERE user=? AND password=?, where “?” is a parameter

- such a statement has a collection of parameters

## \* data encryption

- protecting the data when the normal security mechanisms in the DBMS are insufficient (e.g., an intruder gets physical access to the server or the data center and steals the drives containing the data, an enemy taps into a communication line, etc)
- storing / transmitting encrypted data => the stolen data is illegible for the intruder
- some DBMSs store data (all data or only a part of the data) in an encrypted form; if the files containing the database can be copied, using the data in these files is impossible (or extremely difficult, as the decryption cost is enormous)

## \* codes and ciphers

- code
  - replace one word or phrase with another word / number / symbol
  - e.g., replace expression *The enemy is moving* with code word *Binary*
- cipher
  - replace each letter with another letter (number / symbol)
  - e.g., replace each letter in the alphabet with the previous one (B with A, C with B, etc); *The enemy is moving* becomes *Sgd dmdlx hr lnuhmf*

## \* steganography and cryptography

- steganography - hide the *existence* of the message
  - e.g., shave messenger's head, write message on scalp, wait for the hair to grow back; use invisible ink; etc
- cryptography - hide the *meaning* of the message – encryption
  - transposition
    - rearrange letters in the message (create anagrams)
    - every letter retains its identity, but changes its position
    - e.g., 6 ways of rearranging 3 letters: *cat, cta, act, atc, tca, tac*
  - substitution
    - pair the letters of the alphabet (randomly, e.g., A's pair could be X)
    - replace each letter in the message with its pair
    - every letter retains its position, but changes its identity

## \* substitution

- *plaintext* - message before encryption
- *ciphertext* - message after encryption
- *plain alphabet* - alphabet used to write the message
- *cipher alphabet* - alphabet used to encrypt the message
- examples:
  - shift the original alphabet:
    - by 1 position (replace *A* with *B*, *B* with *C*, etc)
    - by 2 positions (replace *A* with *C*, *B* with *D*, etc), etc  
=> there are 25 possible ciphers
  - if any rearrangement of the plain alphabet is allowed (don't restrict to shift-based rearrangements) => over  $4 \cdot 10^{26}$  possible rearrangements (i.e., over  $4 \cdot 10^{26}$  ciphers)

## \* substitution

example:

- *plain alphabet:*

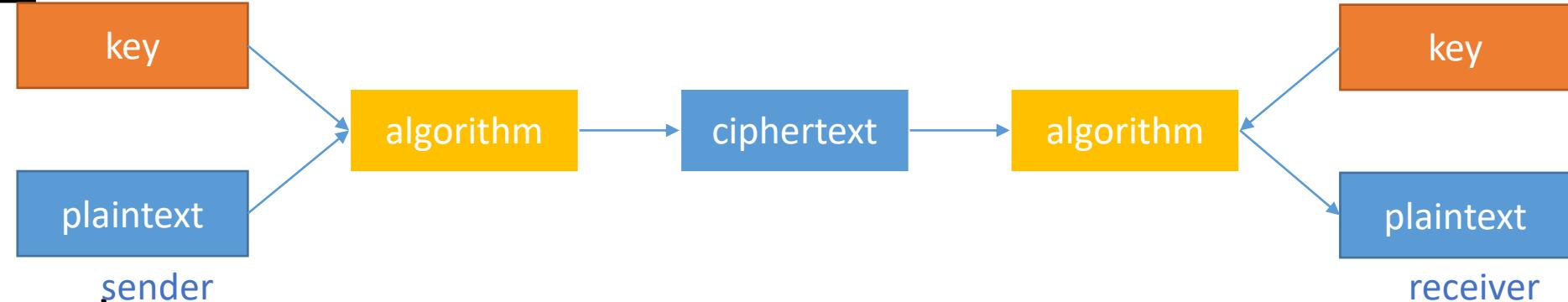
|   |   |   |   |     |
|---|---|---|---|-----|
| a | b | c | d | ... |
|---|---|---|---|-----|
- *cipher alphabet:*

|   |   |   |   |     |
|---|---|---|---|-----|
| B | C | D | E | ... |
|---|---|---|---|-----|

(shift the original alphabet by one position)

- *plaintext: the enemy is moving*
- *ciphertext: UIF FOFNZ JT NPWJOH*

## \* algorithms and keys



- algorithm - not secret
  - general encryption method (e.g., replace each letter in the plain alphabet with a letter from the cipher alphabet; cipher alphabet can be any rearrangement of the plain alphabet)
- key - must be kept secret!
  - details of a particular encryption (e.g., the chosen cipher alphabet)
  - important - large number of keys:
    - suppose the enemy intercepts a ciphertext; if they know a shift cypher has been used, they only need to check 25 keys; but if any rearrangement of the original alphabet is possible, they need to check  $4 \times 10^{26}$  keys!

## \* the key distribution problem - optional

- if two parties want to exchange a message, they must first exchange a secret key:
  - meet in person, use couriers (banks used such couriers back in the '70s to communicate securely with their customers)
    - logistical difficulties, costs way too high
- Whitfield Diffie, Martin Hellman, Ralph Merkle
  - came up with a solution that would enable 2 people to exchange a key without meeting in person and without relying on a 3<sup>rd</sup> party
  - solution based on one-way functions in modular arithmetic
  - one-way functions - easy to do and extremely difficult to undo

| one-way function: $Y^x \pmod{P}$<br>e.g., $7^x \pmod{11}$<br>7, 11 – numbers chosen by Alice & Bob; not secret | Alice                                                                                                             | Bob                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1                                                                                                              | Alice chooses a number A = 3<br><i>A - secret</i>                                                                 | Bob chooses a number B = 6<br><i>B - secret</i>        |
| 2                                                                                                              | Alice computes: $\alpha = 7^A \pmod{11} = 2$                                                                      | Bob computes: $\beta = 7^B \pmod{11} = 4$              |
| 3                                                                                                              | Alice <i>sends</i> $\alpha$ to Bob                                                                                | Bob <i>sends</i> $\beta$ to Alice                      |
| exchange                                                                                                       | An eavesdropper can intercept $\alpha$ and $\beta$ . This poses no problems, since these numbers are not the key! |                                                        |
| 4                                                                                                              | Alice computes: $\beta^A \pmod{11} = 4^3 \pmod{11} = 9$                                                           | Bob computes: $\alpha^B \pmod{11} = 2^6 \pmod{11} = 9$ |
| the key                                                                                                        | Alice and Bob obtained the same number: 9 - the <i>key</i> .                                                      |                                                        |

- Alice and Bob are able to establish a key without meeting beforehand
- Mark (eavesdropper, trying to intercept exchanged messages) only knows the  $7^x \pmod{11}$  function,  $\alpha = 2, \beta = 4$
- Mark doesn't know the key and cannot obtain it, since:
  - he doesn't know A and B (these numbers are kept secret);
  - it's extremely difficult for him to obtain A from  $\alpha$  (or B from  $\beta$ ), since  $7^x \pmod{11}$  is a one-way function; this is especially true if the chosen numbers are very large

## \* encryption algorithm - example

- use a secret encryption key

|  |             |                         |
|--|-------------|-------------------------|
|  | data:       | disciplina baze de date |
|  | secret key: | student                 |

### a. create a table of codes

- every character is associated with a number, for instance:

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|    | a  | b  | c  | d  | e  | f  | g  | h  | i  | j  | k  | l  | m  | n  | o  | p  | q  | r  | s  | t  | u  | v  | w  | x  | y  | z  |
| 00 | 01 | 02 | 03 | 04 | 05 | 06 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 |

## \* encryption algorithm - example

- b. divide the message into blocks of length  $L$ , where  $L$  is the number of characters in the key

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |   |   |  |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|---|--|---|---|--|---|---|---|---|--|
| d | i | s | c | i | p | l | i | n | a |  | b | a | z | e |  | d | e |  | d | a | t | e |  |
| s | t | u | d | e | n | t |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |   |   |  |

- replace every character in the message and every character in the key with their associated codes

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|    | a  | b  | c  | d  | e  | f  | g  | h  | i  | j  | k  | l  | m  | n  | o  | p  | q  | r  | s  | t  | u  | v  | w  | x  | y  | z  |
| 00 | 01 | 02 | 03 | 04 | 05 | 06 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 |

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| s  | t  | u  | d  | e  | n  | t  |
| 19 | 20 | 21 | 04 | 05 | 14 | 20 |

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| d  | i  | s  | c  | i  | p  | l  | i  | n  | a  |    | b  | a  | z  | e  |    | d  | e  |    | d  | a  | t  | e  |
| 04 | 09 | 19 | 03 | 09 | 16 | 12 | 09 | 14 | 01 | 00 | 02 | 01 | 26 | 05 | 00 | 04 | 05 | 00 | 04 | 01 | 20 | 05 |

## \* encryption algorithm - example

b. add every number that corresponds to a character in a block with the number of the corresponding character in the key

- if the obtained value is greater than  $n$  (in the example,  $n = 27$ ), compute the remainder of the division by  $n$

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| d  | i  | s  | c  | i  | p  | l  | i  | n  | a  |    | b  | a  | z  | e  |    | d  | e  |    | d  | a  | t  | e  |
| 04 | 09 | 19 | 03 | 09 | 16 | 12 | 09 | 14 | 01 | 00 | 02 | 01 | 26 | 05 | 00 | 04 | 05 | 00 | 04 | 01 | 20 | 05 |
| 19 | 20 | 21 | 04 | 05 | 14 | 20 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 04 | 05 | 14 | 20 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 04 | 05 | 14 | 20 | 19 | 20 |
| 23 | 02 | 13 | 07 | 14 | 03 | 05 | 01 | 07 | 22 | 04 | 07 | 15 | 19 | 24 | 20 | 25 | 09 | 05 | 18 | 21 | 12 | 25 |

c. replace the obtained numbers with their corresponding characters in the table of codes

=> a string that can be stored / transmitted

- the obtained string in the example: *wbmgnceagvdgosxtyieruly*

## \* encryption algorithm - example

- decryption
  - similar
  - in step b, perform *subtraction (modulo n)* (instead of addition)
- one could also permute the original message and add values (to the characters' codes) for every position; or combine this method with the previous one

## \* RSA algorithm - optional

- Ron Rivest, Adi Shamir, Leonard Adleman

1. randomly choose two large prime numbers  $p$  and  $q$

- compute their product:  $r = p * q$
- value  $r$  can be publicly announced,  $p$  and  $q$  are kept secret
- estimation:  $p, q$  – numbers with 63 decimal digits => determining  $p$  and  $q$  from  $r$  would require  $40 * 10^{15}$  years on a powerful computer

2. choose number  $c$  such that:  $c$  co-prime with  $(p-1)(q-1)$  and  $c > (p-1)(q-1)$

- $c$  is used as a public encryption key

3. determine a secret decryption key  $d$  that verifies:  $d * c \equiv 1 \text{ modulo } (p-1)(q-1)$

4.  $m$  – message (integer)

- encryption: determine code  $v$  using the public key  $c$  and value  $r$

$$v \equiv m^c \text{ modulo } r$$

## \* RSA algorithm - optional

### 5. decryption

$$v^d \text{ modulo } r \Rightarrow \text{value } m$$

#### example

- $p=3; q=5 \Rightarrow r = 15$
- choose  $c = 11 > (p-1)(q-1) = 8$
- determine  $d$  such that:  $d * 11 \equiv 1 \pmod{8}$   
 $\Rightarrow d = 3 \text{ or } d = 11 \text{ or } d = 19 \dots$  (we'll use  $d = 3$ )
- let  $m = 13$  (text to encode)  
 $\Rightarrow v = m^c \pmod{r} = 13^{11} \pmod{15} = 1.792.160.394.037 \pmod{15} = 7$
- decryption:  $v^d \pmod{r} = 7^3 \pmod{15} = 343 \pmod{15} = 13$

## References

- [Ta13] ȚÂMBULEA, L., Curs Baze de date, Facultatea de Matematică și Informatică, UBB, 2013-2014
- DATE, C.J., An Introduction to Database Systems (8th Edition), Addison-Wesley, 2003
- [Si05] SINGH, Simon, Cartea codurilor – istoria secretă a codurilor și a spargerii lor, Humanitas, 2005
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [WWW1] The Open Web Application Security Project,  
[https://www.owasp.org/index.php/SQL\\_Injection](https://www.owasp.org/index.php/SQL_Injection)
- [WWW4] SQL injection, [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sql\\_injection](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sql_injection)

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 7  
Evaluating Relational Operators  
Query Optimization

\* queries – composed of relational operators:

- selection ( $\sigma$ )
  - selects a subset of records from a relation
- projection ( $\pi$ )
  - eliminates certain columns from a relation
- join ( $\otimes$ )
  - combines data from two relations
- cross-product ( $R_1 \times R_2$ )
  - returns every record in  $R_1$  concatenated with every record in  $R_2$
- set-difference ( $R_1 - R_2$ )
  - returns records that belong to  $R_1$  and don't belong to  $R_2$
- union ( $R_1 \cup R_2$ )
  - returns all records in relations  $R_1$  and  $R_2$

\*Review lecture notes on *Relational Algebra (Databases course)*

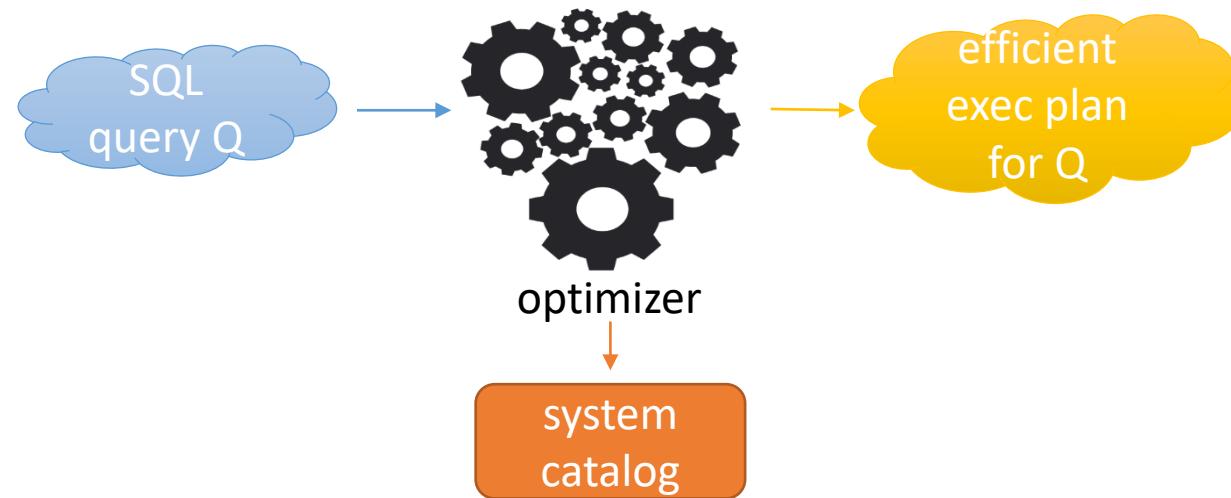
Sabina S. CS

\* queries – composed of relational operators:

- intersection ( $R_1 \cap R_2$ )
  - returns records that belong to both  $R_1$  and  $R_2$
- grouping and aggregate operators (algebra extensions)
- every operation returns a relation => operations can be composed
- an operator can have several implementation algorithms

## \* optimizer

- input: SQL query Q
- output: an efficient execution plan for evaluating Q



\* algorithms for operators - based on 3 techniques:

- iteration:
  - examine iteratively:
    - all tuples in input relations
    - or
    - data entries in indexes, provided they contain all the necessary fields  
(data entries are smaller than data records)
- indexing:
  - used when the query contains a selection condition or a join condition
  - examine only the tuples that meet the condition, using an index
- partitioning:
  - partition the tuples
  - decompose operation into collection of cheaper operations on partitions

\* algorithms for operators - based on 3 techniques:

- partitioning:

- partitioning techniques
  - sorting
  - hashing

## \* access paths

- *access path* = way of retrieving tuples from a relation
  - file scan
- or
- an index  $I$  + a matching selection condition  $C$
- condition  $C$  matches index  $I$  if  $I$  can be used to retrieve just the tuples satisfying  $C$
- if relation  $R$  has an index  $I$  that matches selection condition  $C$ , then there are at least 2 access paths for  $R$  (file scan; index)

\*Review lecture notes on *Indexes (Databases course)*

\* access paths - example:

- relation *Students[SID, Name, City]*
- *I* - tree index on *Students* with search key  $\langle \text{Name} \rangle$

- query Q:

```
SELECT *
```

```
FROM Students
```

```
WHERE Name = 'Ionescu'
```

- condition  $C: \text{Name} = 'Ionescu'$
- $C$  matches  $I$ , i.e., index  $I$  can be used to retrieve only the *Students* tuples satisfying  $C$
- the following condition also matches the index:  $\text{Name} > 'Ionescu'$

\* access paths - example:

- relation *Students*[*SID*, *Name*, *City*]
- *I* - hash index on *Students* with search key <*Name*>

- query Q:

```
SELECT *
```

```
FROM Students
```

```
WHERE Name = 'Ionescu'
```

- condition *C*: *Name* = 'Ionescu'
- *C* matches *I*, i.e., index *I* can be used to retrieve only the *Students* tuples satisfying *C*
- condition *Name* > 'Ionescu' doesn't match *I* (since *I* is a hash index; it cannot be used to retrieve just the tuples satisfying *Name* > 'Ionescu')

## \* access paths

- to sum up:
  - condition  $C$ :  $attr \ op \ value$ ,  $op \in \{<, \leq, =, \geq, >\}$
  - condition  $C$  matches index  $I$  if:
    - the search key of  $I$  is  $attr$  and:
      - $I$  is a tree index or
      - $I$  is a hash index and  $op$  is  $=$

## \* access paths

- index  $I$ , selection condition  $C$
- $I$  - hash index
- condition  $C$  of the form:
  - $\bigwedge_{i=1}^n T_i$
  - term  $T_i$ :  $attr = value$   
(i.e.,  $C$  in CNF - defined on page 15)
- $I$  matches  $C$  if  $C$  has one term for each attribute in the search key of  $I$

| Condition                                      | Hash index with search key $\langle a, b, c \rangle$ |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| $a = 10 \text{ AND } b = 5 \text{ AND } c = 2$ | Yes                                                  |
| $a = 10 \text{ AND } b = 5$                    | No                                                   |
| $b = 5$                                        | No                                                   |
| $b = 5 \text{ AND } c = 2$                     | No                                                   |

## \* access paths

- index  $I$ , selection condition  $C$  (CNF)
- $I$  - tree index
- condition  $C$  of the form:
  - $\bigwedge_{i=1}^n T_i$
  - term  $T_i$ :  $attr \ op \ value; \ op \in \{<, \leq, =, \neq, \geq, >\}$
- $I$  matches  $C$  if  $C$  has one term for each attribute in a prefix of the search key of  $I$
- examples of prefixes for search key  $\langle a, b, c, d \rangle$ :  $\langle a \rangle$ ,  $\langle a, b, c \rangle$ ;  $\langle a, c \rangle$  and  $\langle b, c \rangle$ , on the other hand, are not prefixes for this search key

| Condition                                      | B+ tree index with search key $\langle a, b, c \rangle$ |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| $a = 10 \text{ AND } b = 5 \text{ AND } c = 2$ | Yes                                                     |
| $a = 10 \text{ AND } b = 5$                    | Yes                                                     |
| $b = 5$                                        | No                                                      |
| $b = 5 \text{ AND } c = 2$                     | No                                                      |

## \* access paths

- selectivity of an access path
  - the number of retrieved pages when using the access path to obtain the desired tuples
  - both data pages and index pages are counted
- example:

```
SELECT *
FROM Students
WHERE Name = 'Ionescu'
```

  - there are 2 access paths for *Students*:
    - file scan – selectivity could be 1000
    - matching index I with search key <Name> – selectivity could be 3
  - most selective access path
    - retrieves the fewest pages, i.e., data retrieval cost is minimized

## \* general selection conditions

- in general, a selection condition can contain one or several terms of the form:
  - $attr \ op \ constant$
  - $attr1 \ op \ attr2$ ,combined with  $\wedge$  and  $\vee$

```
SELECT *
FROM Exams
WHERE SID = 7 AND EDate = '04-01-2021'
```

$$\sigma_{SID=7 \wedge EDate='04-01-2021'}(Exams)$$

## \* general selection conditions

- process a selection operation with a general selection condition  $C \rightarrow$  express  $C$  in CNF (conjunctive normal form)
- condition in CNF:
  - collection of conjuncts connected with the  $\wedge$  operator
  - a *conjunction* has one or more terms connected with the  $\vee$  operator
  - *term*:
    - *attr op constant*
    - *attr1 op attr2*

- example:

condition  $(EDate < '4-1-2021' \wedge Grade = 10) \vee CID = 5 \vee SID = 3$

is rewritten in CNF:

$(EDate < '4-1-2021') \vee (CID = 5) \vee (SID = 3) \wedge (Grade = 10 \vee CID = 5 \vee SID = 3)$

## \* general selection conditions matching an index

- relation  $R[a, b, c, d, e]$ , index I with search key  $\langle a, b, c \rangle$

| Condition                                                           | B+ tree index | Hash index |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------|
| $a = 10 \text{ AND } b = 5 \text{ AND } c = 2$                      | Yes           | Yes        |
| $a = 10 \text{ AND } b = 5$                                         | Yes           | No         |
| $b = 5$                                                             | No            | No         |
| $b = 5 \text{ AND } c = 2$                                          | No            | No         |
| $d = 2$                                                             | No            | No         |
| $a = 20 \text{ AND } b = 10 \text{ AND } c = 5 \text{ AND } d = 11$ | Partly        | Partly     |

*Condition – CNF selection condition*

*B+ tree index / Hash index – B+ tree / hash index I matches (Yes) / doesn't match (No) / matches a part of (Partly) the selection condition*

- for the condition in the last row ( $a = 20 \text{ AND } b = 10 \text{ AND } c = 5 \text{ AND } d = 11$ ):
  - use index I to retrieve tuples satisfying  $a = 20 \text{ AND } b = 10 \text{ AND } c = 5$ , then apply  $d = 11$  to each retrieved tuple

## \* general selection conditions matching an index

- relation  $R[a, b, c, d]$
- index  $I_1$  with search key  $\langle a, b \rangle$
- B+ tree index  $I_2$  with search key  $\langle c \rangle$

| Condition                                       | Indexes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $c < 100 \text{ AND } a = 3 \text{ AND } b = 5$ | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- use <math>I_1</math> or <math>I_2</math> to retrieve tuples</li><li>- then check terms in the selection condition that do not match the index for each retrieved tuple</li><li>- e.g., use the B+ tree index to retrieve tuples where <math>c &lt; 100</math>; then apply <math>a = 3</math> AND <math>b = 5</math> to each retrieved tuple</li></ul> |

## \* running example - schema

- Students (SID: integer, SName: string, Age: integer)
- Courses (CID: integer, CName: string, Description: string)
- Exams (SID: integer, CID: integer, EDate: date, Grade: integer, FacultyMember: string)
- Students
  - every record has 50 bytes
  - there are 80 records / page
  - 500 pages of Students tuples
- Courses
  - every record has 50 bytes
  - there are 80 records / page
  - 100 pages of Courses tuples

## \* running example - schema

- Students (SID: integer, SName: string, Age: integer)
- Courses (CID: integer, CName: string, Description: string)
- Exams (SID: integer, CID: integer, EDate: date, Grade: integer, FacultyMember: string)
- Exams
  - every record has 40 bytes
  - there are 100 records / page
  - 1000 pages of Exams tuples

## \* joins

```
SELECT *
FROM Exams E, Students S
WHERE E.SID = S.SID
```

- algebra:  $E \otimes_{E.SID=S.SID} S$ 
  - to be carefully optimized
  - size of  $E \times S$  is large, so computing  $E \times S$  followed by selection is inefficient
- E
  - M pages
  - $p_E$  records / page
- S
  - N pages
  - $p_S$  records / page
- evaluation: number of I/O operations

## \* joins – implementation techniques

- iteration
  - Simple/Page-Oriented Nested Loops Join
  - Block Nested Loops Join
- indexing
  - Index Nested Loops Join
- partitioning
  - Sort-Merge Join
  - Hash Join
- equality join, one join column
  - join condition:  $E_i = S_j$

## Simple Nested Loops Join

```
foreach tuple e ∈ E do
    foreach tuple s ∈ S do
        if ei == sj then add <e, s> to the result
```

- for each record in the outer relation E, scan the entire inner relation S
- cost
  - $M + p_E * M * N = 1000 + 100 * 1000 * 500 \text{ I/Os} = 1000 + (5 * 10^7) \text{ I/Os}$ 
    - M I/Os – cost of scanning E
    - N I/Os – cost of scanning S
    - S is scanned  $p_E * M$  times (there are  $p_E * M$  records in the outer relation E)

\* E - M pages,  $p_E$  records / page \*

\* S - N pages,  $p_S$  records / page \*

\* 1000 pages \* \* 100 records / page \*

\* 500 pages \* \* 80 records / page \*

## Page-Oriented Nested Loops Join

```
foreach page pe ∈ E do
    foreach page ps ∈ S do
        if  $e_i == s_j$  then add  $\langle e, s \rangle$  to the result
```

- for each page in E read each page in S
- pairs of records  $\langle e, s \rangle$  that meet the join condition are added to the result (where record  $e$  is on page  $pe$ , and record  $s$  – on page  $ps$ )
- refinement of Simple Nested Loops Join

## Page-Oriented Nested Loops Join

```
foreach page pe ∈ E do
    foreach page ps ∈ S do
        if ei == sj then add <e, s> to the result
```

- cost
  - $M + M * N = 1000 + 1000 * 500 \text{ I/Os} = 501.000 \text{ I/Os}$ 
    - M I/Os – cost of scanning E; N I/Os – cost of scanning S
    - S is scanned M times
    - significantly lower than the cost of Simple Nested Loops Join (improvement - factor of  $p_E$ )
  - if the smaller table (S) is chosen as outer table:  
 $\Rightarrow \text{cost} = 500 + 500 * 1000 \text{ I/Os} = 500.500 \text{ I/Os}$

\* E - M pages,  $p_E$  records / page \*      \* 1000 pages \* \* 100 records / page \*

\* S - N pages,  $p_S$  records / page \*      \* 500 pages \* \* 80 records / page \*

## Block Nested Loops Join

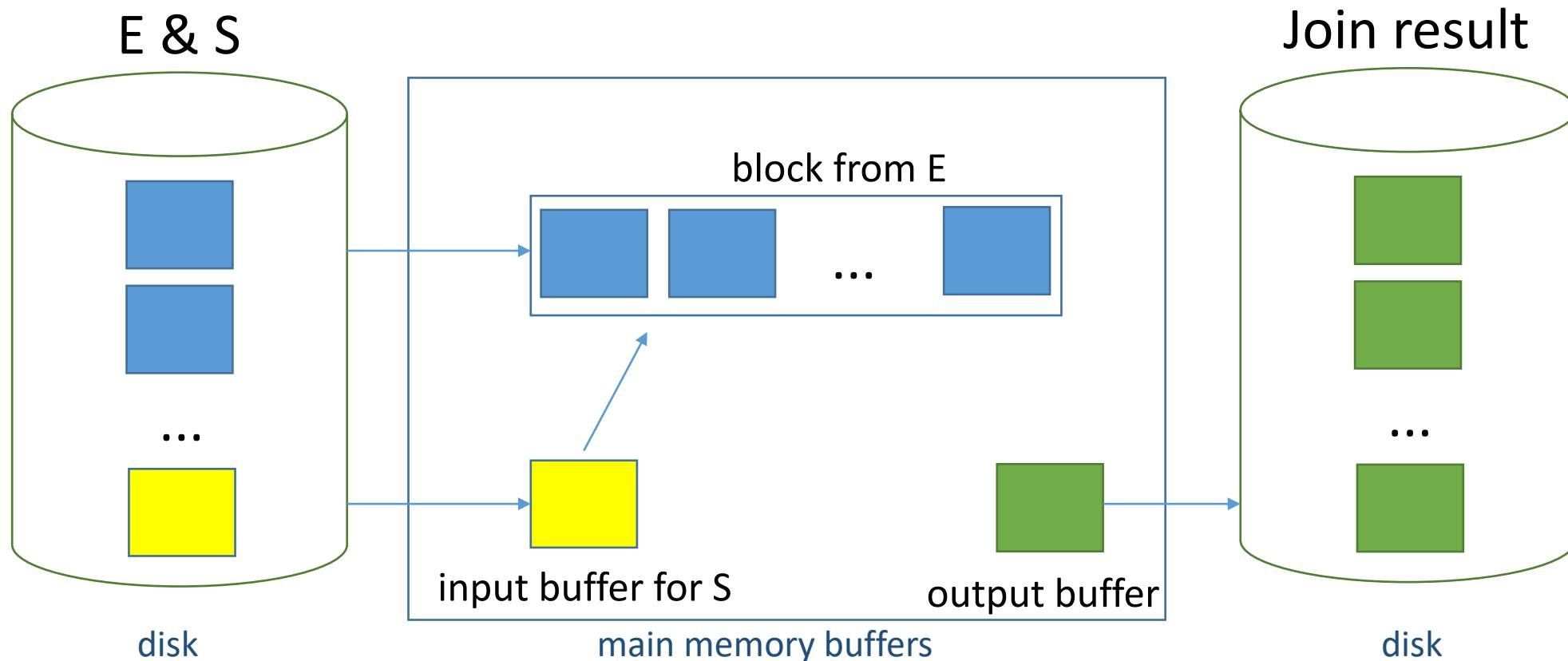
- previously presented join algorithms do not use buffer pages effectively
  - join relations R1 and R2; R1 – the smaller relation
  - assumption – the smaller relation fits in main memory
  - improvement:
    - store smaller relation R1 in memory
    - keep at least 2 extra buffer pages B1 and B2
    - use B1 to read the larger relation R2 (one page at a time)
    - use B2 as the output buffer (i.e., for tuples in the result of the join)
    - for each tuple in R2, search R1 for matching tuples
- => optimal cost: *number of pages in R1 + number of pages in R2*, since R1 is scanned only once, R2 is also scanned only once

## Block Nested Loops Join

- refinement
  - don't store the smaller relation in main memory as is, build an in-memory hash table for it instead
  - the I/O cost remains unchanged, but the CPU cost is usually much lower (since for each tuple in the larger relation, the smaller relation is examined to find matching tuples)

## Block Nested Loops Join

- if there isn't enough main memory to hold one of the input relations:
  - use one buffer page to scan the inner table (e.g., S)
  - use one page for the result
  - use all remaining pages to read a *block* from the outer table (e.g., E)
    - block – set of pages from E that fit in main memory

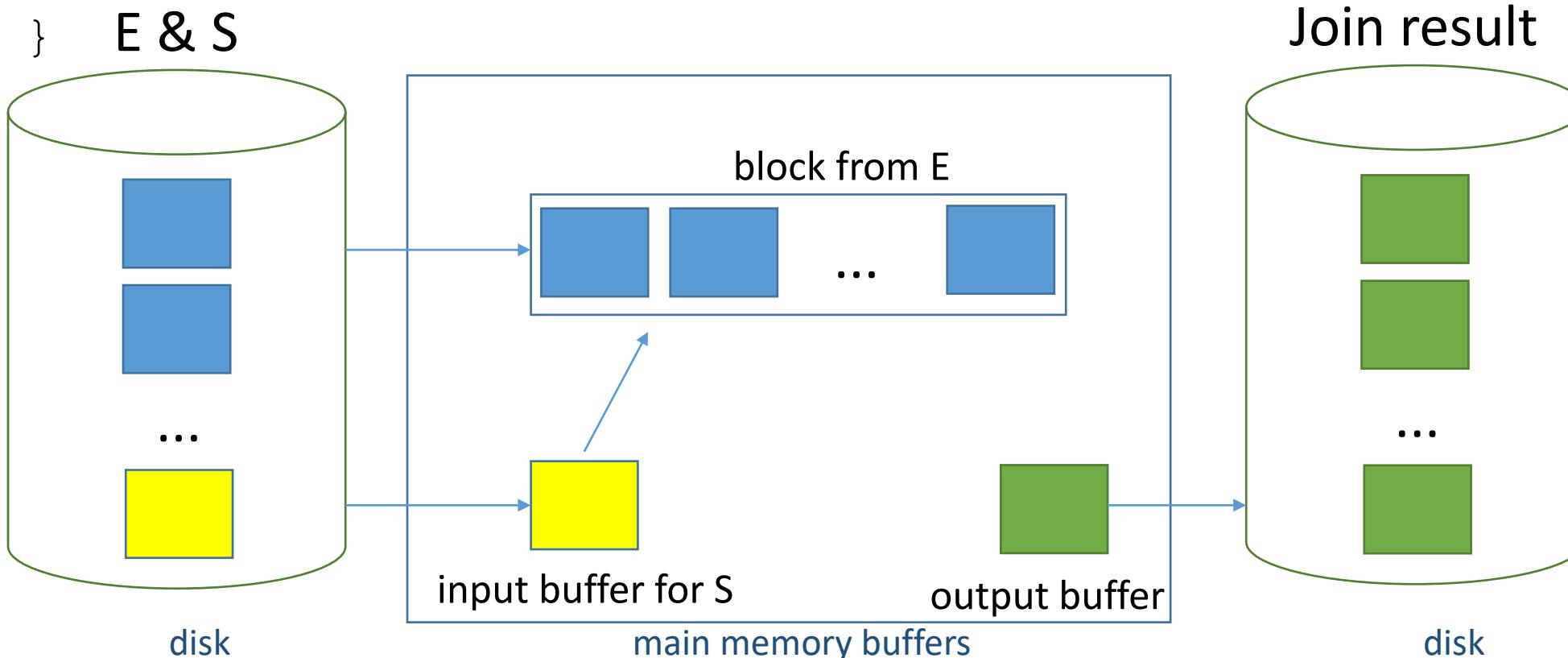


## Block Nested Loops Join

```
foreach block be ∈ E do  
  foreach page ps ∈ S do  
  {
```

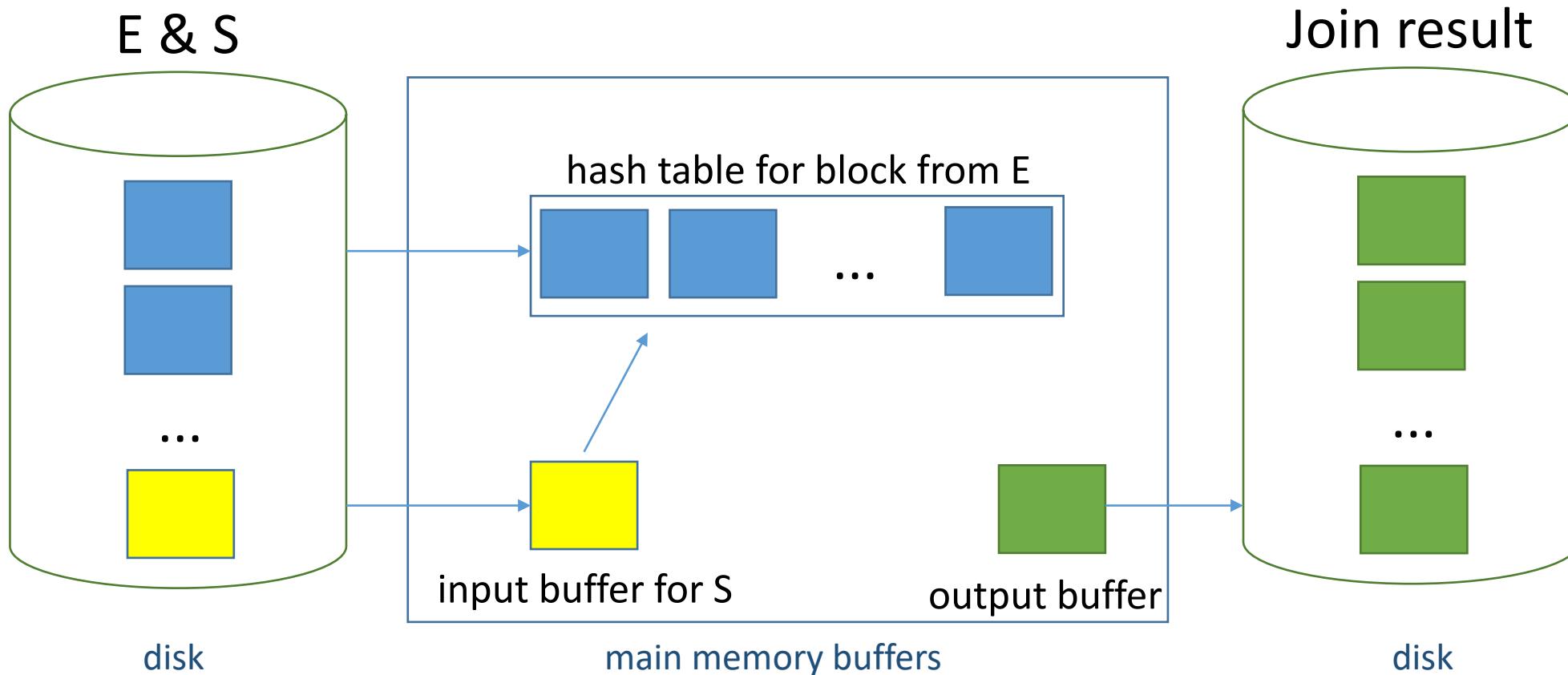
- inner relation S is scanned once for each block in outer relation E
- outer relation E is scanned once

for all pairs of tuples  $\langle e, s \rangle$  that meet the join condition, where  $e \in be$  and  $s \in ps$ ,  
add  $\langle e, s \rangle$  to the result



## Block Nested Loops Join

- refinement to efficiently find matching tuples
  - build main-memory hash table for the block of E
  - trade-off: reduce size of E block



## Block Nested Loops Join

- cost
    - scan of outer table + number of blocks in outer table \* scan of inner table
    - number of outer blocks =  $\left\lceil \frac{\text{number of pages in outer table}}{\text{size of block}} \right\rceil$
    - outer table: Exams (E), a block can hold 100 pages
      - scan cost for E: 1000 I/Os
      - number of blocks:  $\left\lceil \frac{1000}{100} \right\rceil = 10$
      - foreach block in E, scan Students (S):  $10 * 500$  I/Os
- => total cost =  $1000 + 10 * 500 = \mathbf{6000 \text{ I/Os}}$

$$\begin{array}{ll} * E - M \text{ pages}, p_E \text{ records / page} * & * 1000 \text{ pages} * * 100 \text{ records / page} * \\ * S - N \text{ pages}, p_S \text{ records / page} * & * 500 \text{ pages} * * 80 \text{ records / page} * \end{array}$$

## Block Nested Loops Join

- cost
    - scan of outer table + number of blocks in outer table \* scan of inner table
    - number of outer blocks =  $\left\lceil \frac{\text{number of pages in outer table}}{\text{size of block}} \right\rceil$
    - outer table: Exams (E)
      - suppose the buffer has 90 pages available for E, i.e., block of 90 pages  
=> number of blocks:  $\left\lceil \frac{1000}{90} \right\rceil = 12$
      - => S is scanned 12 times
        - scan cost for E: 1000 I/Os
        - foreach block in E, scan Students (S):  $12 * 500$  I/Os
- => total cost =  $1000 + 12 * 500 = \mathbf{7000 \text{ I/Os}}$

\* E - M pages,  $p_E$  records / page \*      \* 1000 pages \* \* 100 records / page \*

\* S - N pages,  $p_S$  records / page \*      \* 500 pages \* \* 80 records / page \*

## Block Nested Loops Join

- cost
    - scan of outer table + number of blocks in outer table \* scan of inner table
    - number of outer blocks =  $\left\lceil \frac{\text{number of pages in outer table}}{\text{size of block}} \right\rceil$
    - outer table: Students (S), block of 100 pages
      - scan cost for S: 500 I/Os
      - number of blocks:  $\left\lceil \frac{500}{100} \right\rceil = 5$
      - for each block in S, scan E:  $5 * 1000 \text{ I/Os}$
- => total cost =  $500 + 5 * 1000 = \mathbf{5500 \text{ I/Os}}$

$$\begin{array}{ll} * E - M \text{ pages}, p_E \text{ records / page} * & * 1000 \text{ pages} * * 100 \text{ records / page} * \\ * S - N \text{ pages}, p_S \text{ records / page} * & * 500 \text{ pages} * * 80 \text{ records / page} * \end{array}$$

## Index Nested Loops Join

```
foreach tuple e in E do
    foreach tuple s in S where ei == sj
        add <e, s> to the result
```

- if there is an index on the join column of S, S can be considered as inner table and the index can be used
- cost
  - $M + (M * p_E) * \text{cost of finding corresponding records in } S)$

\* E - M pages,  $p_E$  records / page \*

\* S - N pages,  $p_S$  records / page \*

\* 1000 pages \* \* 100 records / page \*

\* 500 pages \* \* 80 records / page \*

## Index Nested Loops Join

- for a record  $e$  in  $E$ :
  - the cost of examining the index on  $S$  is:
    - approx. 1.2 for a hash index (typical cost for hash indexes)
    - typically 2-4 for a B+-tree index
  - the cost of reading corresponding records in  $S$ :
    - for a clustered index:
      - plus one I/O for each outer tuple in  $E$  (typically)
    - for an unclustered index:
      - up to one I/O for each corresponding record in  $S$  (worst case – there are  $n$  matching records in  $S$  located on  $n$  different pages!)

## Index Nested Loops Join

- hash index on SID in Students (Students – inner table)
- scan Exams:
  - cost = 1000 I/Os, with a total of  $100 * 1000$  records
- for each record in Exams:
  - (on average) 1.2 I/Os to obtain the page in the hash index (i.e., the page containing the rid of the matching Students tuple)  
and
  - 1 I/O to retrieve the page in Students that contains the matching tuple (exactly one! – since SID is a key in Students, i.e., there is one matching Students tuple for an exam)

=> cost to retrieve matching Students tuples:  $1000 * 100 * (1.2 + 1) = 220.000$

- total cost:  $1000 + 220.000 = 221.000$  I/Os

\* E - M pages,  $p_E$  records / page \*      \* 1000 pages \* \* 100 records / page \*

\* S - N pages,  $p_S$  records / page \*      \* 500 pages \* \* 80 records / page \*

## References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Da03] DATE, C.J., An Introduction to Database Systems (8<sup>th</sup> Edition), Addison-Wesley, 2003
- [Ga09] GARCIA-MOLINA, H., ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., Database Systems: The Complete Book (2nd Edition), Pearson, 2009
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si19] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (7th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2019
- [Ul11] ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., A First Course in Database Systems,  
<http://infolab.stanford.edu/~ullman/fcdb.html>

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 8  
Evaluating Relational Operators  
Query Optimization

- running example - schema
  - Students (SID: integer, SName: string, Age: integer)
  - Courses (CID: integer, CName: string, Description: string)
  - Exams (SID: integer, CID: integer, EDate: date, Grade: integer, FacultyMember: string)
- Students
  - every record has 50 bytes
  - there are 80 records / page
  - 500 pages of Students tuples
- Courses
  - every record has 50 bytes
  - there are 80 records / page
  - 100 pages of Courses tuples

- running example - schema
  - Students (SID: integer, SName: string, Age: integer)
  - Courses (CID: integer, CName: string, Description: string)
  - Exams (SID: integer, CID: integer, EDate: date, Grade: integer, FacultyMember: string)
- Exams
  - every record has 40 bytes
  - there are 100 records / page
  - 1000 pages of Exams tuples

## \* sorting

- can be explicitly required (SELECT ... ORDER BY list), used to eliminate duplicates (SELECT DISTINCT), used by operators like:
  - join
  - union
  - intersection
  - set-difference
  - grouping

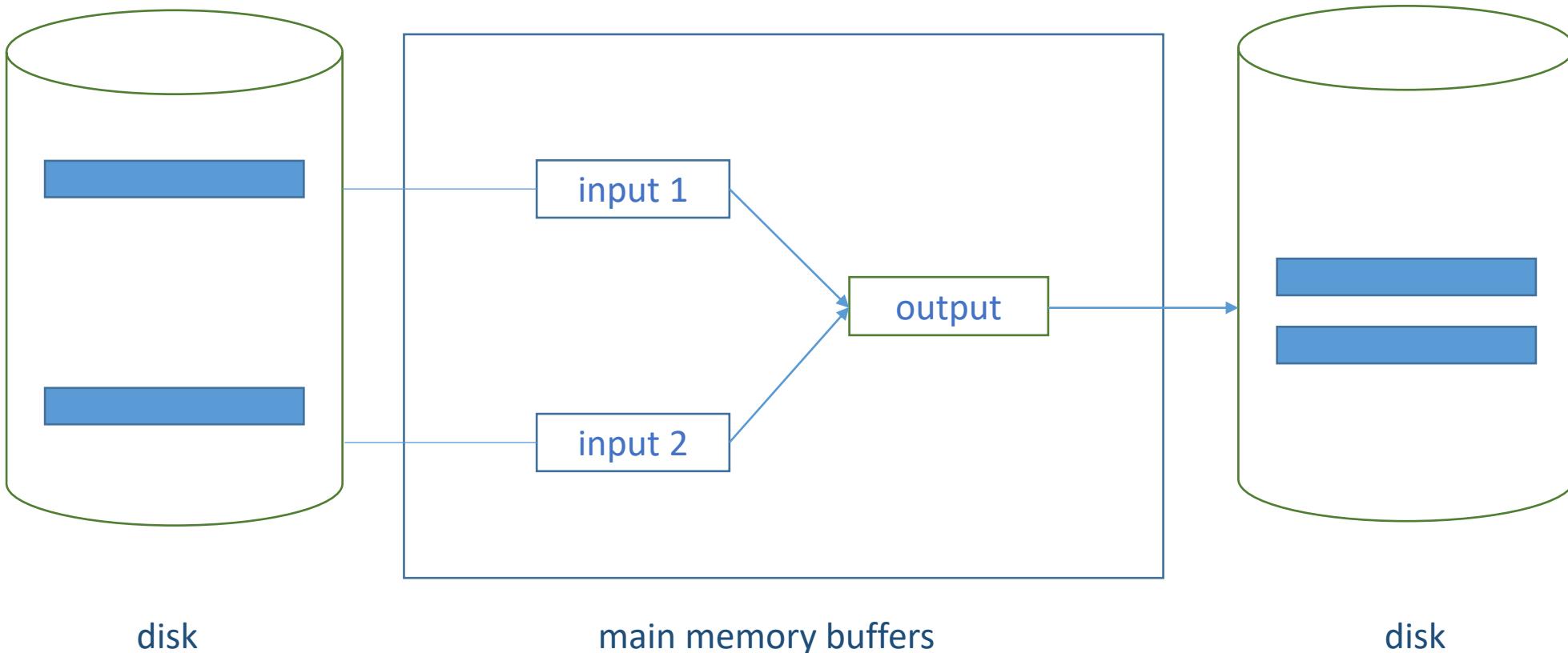
## \* sorting

e.g., the user wants to sort the collection of Courses records by name

- if the data to be sorted fits into available main memory:
  - use an internal sorting algorithm (Quick Sort or any other in-memory sorting algorithm can be used to sort a collection of records that fits into main memory)
- if the data to be sorted doesn't fit into available main memory:
  - use an external sorting algorithm
    - minimizes the cost of accessing the disk
    - breaks the data collection into subcollections of records
    - sorts the subcollections; a sorted subcollection of records is called a *run*
    - writes runs to disk
    - merges runs

## Simple Two-Way Merge Sort

- uses 3 buffer pages
- passes over the data multiple times
- can sort large data collections using a small amount of main memory

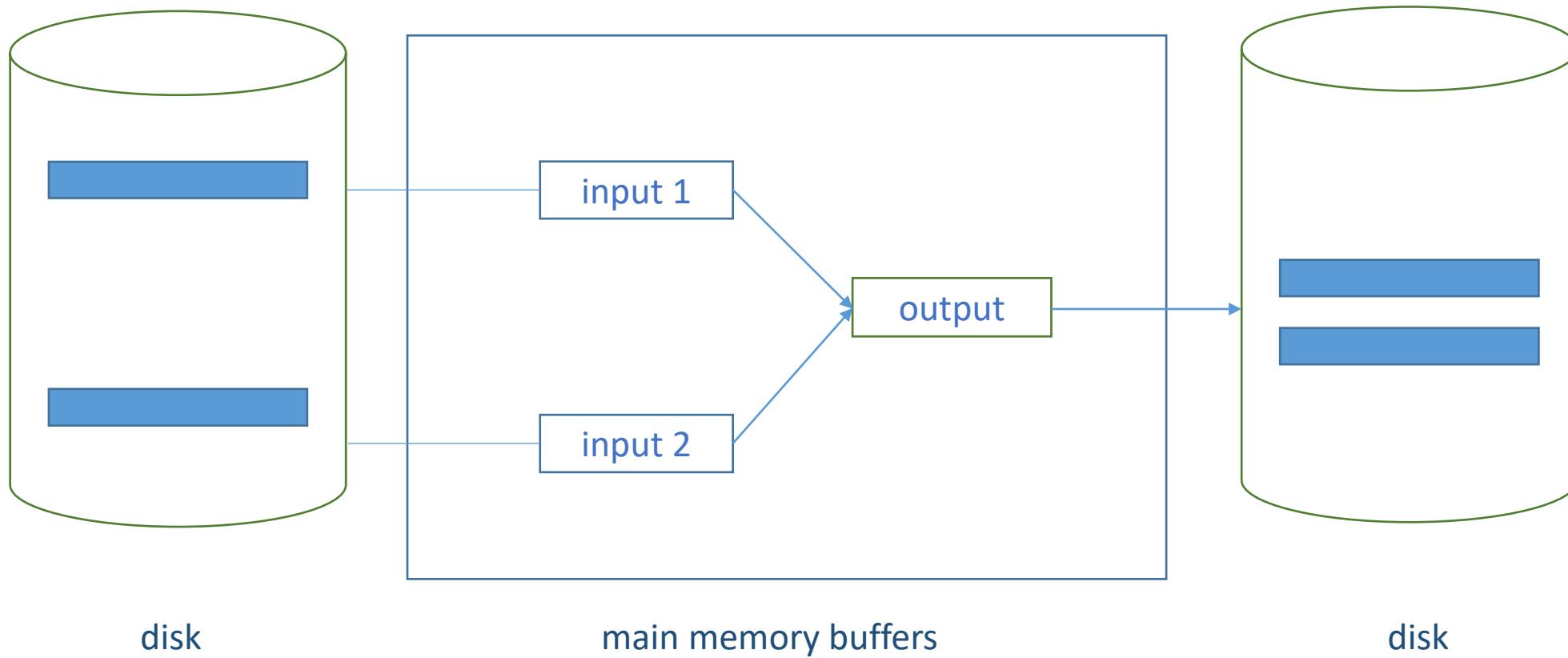


## Simple Two-Way Merge Sort

- pass 0:
  - for each page P in the data collection:
    - read in page P -> sort page P -> save page P to disk  
=> 1-page runs (runs that are 1 page long)  
example: - read in the 1<sup>st</sup> page from Courses, sort the 80 records on it by course name, write out the sorted page to disk (i.e., a *run* that is one page long);  
- read in the 2<sup>nd</sup> page from Courses, sort the 80 records on it by course name, write out sorted page to disk;  
...  
- read in the 100<sup>th</sup> page from Courses, sort the 80 records on it by course name, write out sorted page to disk  
=> 100 1-page runs saved on disk

## Simple Two-Way Merge Sort

- pass 1, 2, ... etc:
  - use 3 buffer pages
  - read and merge pairs of runs from the previous pass
  - produce runs that are twice as long

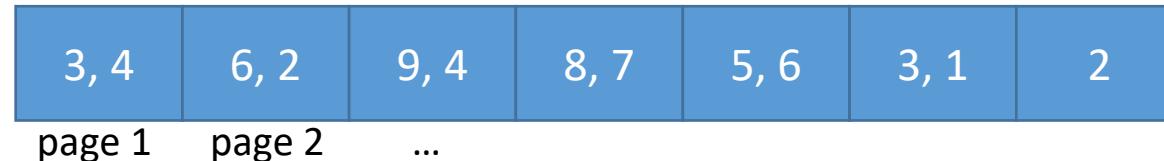


## Simple Two-Way Merge Sort

- e.g., pass 1 (pass 0 produced 100 1-page runs):
  - read in 2 runs from pass 0 (i.e., two pages holding Courses records, each of them sorted in pass 0), using 2 buffer pages
    - merge these runs writing to the 3<sup>rd</sup> available buffer page (the *output* buffer); when the output buffer fills up, write it out to disk (i.e., write a page of 80 sorted records to disk)  
=> a run that is 2 pages long (it contains 160 Courses records, sorted by name)
  - read in and merge the next 2 runs from pass 0 ... => another run that is 2 pages long
  - continue while there are runs to be processed (read in and merged) from pass 0
  - at the end of pass 1 there are 50 2-page runs (each run consists of 2 pages holding 160 records sorted by course name)

## Simple Two-Way Merge Sort

- another example – sort data collection (file of records) with 7 pages:



- only the value of the key is displayed (the key on which the user wants to sort the collection, an integer number in the example)
  - simplifying assumption that allows us to focus on the idea of the algorithm: a page can hold 2 records
  - pass 0
    - read in the collection one page at a time
    - sort each page that is read in
    - write out each sorted page to disk
- => 7 sorted runs that are 1 page long:



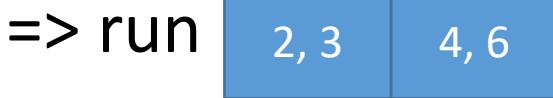
## Simple Two-Way Merge Sort

- runs at the end of pass 0:



- pass 1

- read in & merge pairs of runs from pass 0
- produce runs that are twice as long
- read in runs 3, 4 and 2, 6 :
  - merge the runs and write to the output buffer
  - write the output buffer to disk one page at a time

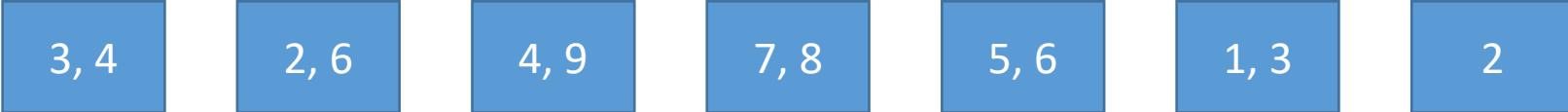


- read in runs 4, 9 and 7, 8 :
  - merge the runs and write to the output buffer
  - write the output buffer to disk one page at a time



## Simple Two-Way Merge Sort

- runs at the end of pass 0:



- pass 1

- read in runs  and  ...



- read in run  (the last run from pass 0) ...

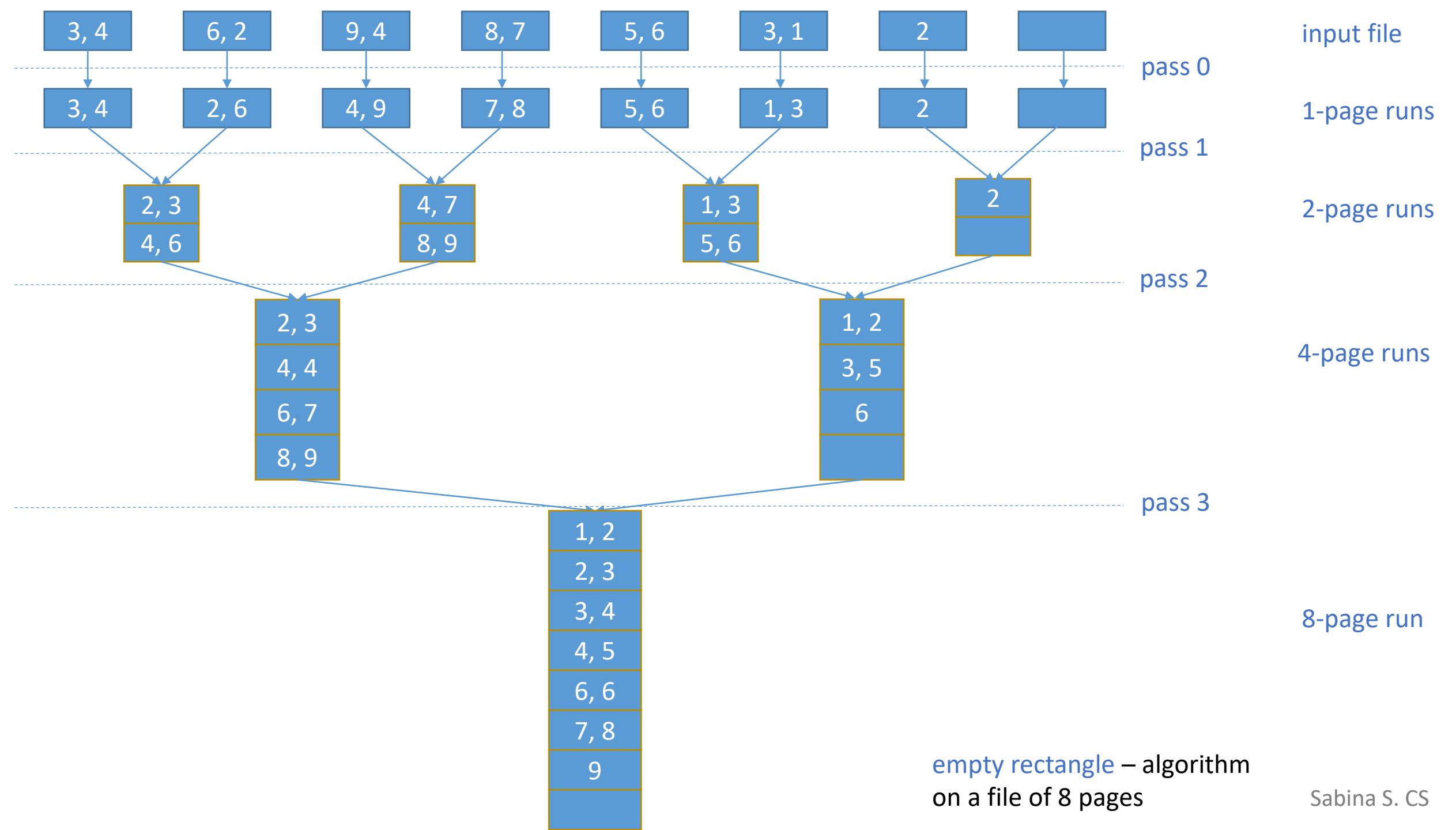


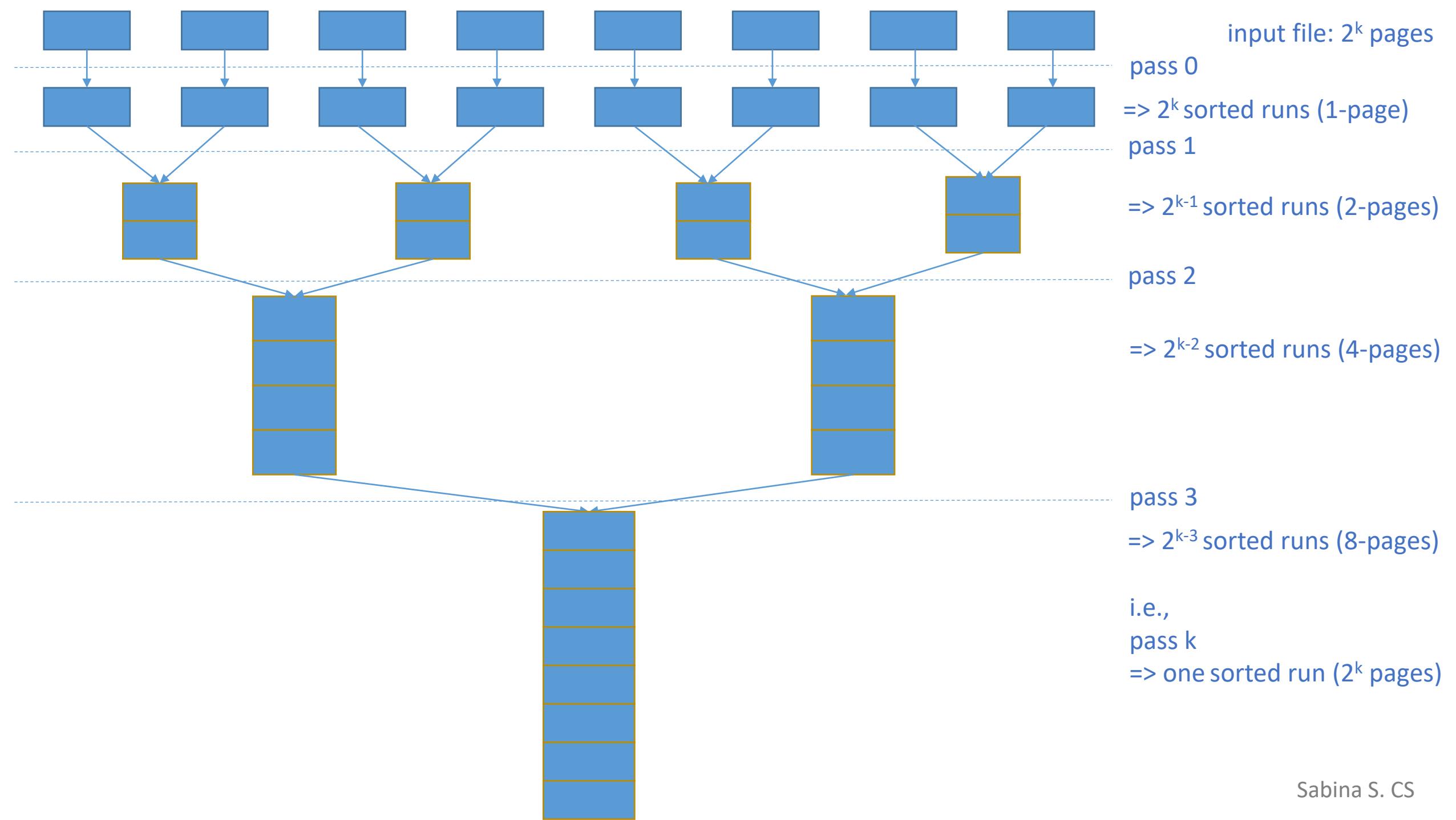
=> 4 sorted runs that are 2 pages long (except for the last run):



## Simple Two-Way Merge Sort

- pass 2
  - read in & merge pairs of runs from pass 1
  - produce runs that are twice as long
- ...
- complete example, with all passes of the algorithm, on the next page      ->





## Simple Two-Way Merge Sort

- in each pass, each page in the input file is: read in, processed, and written out; there are 2 I/O operations per page, per pass

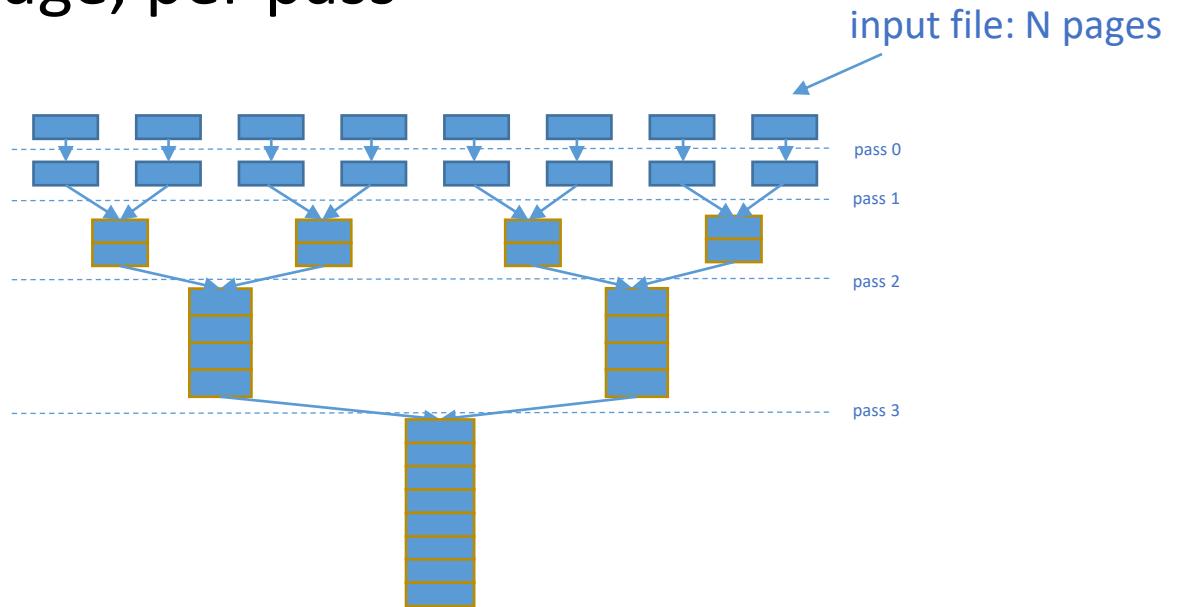
- number of passes:

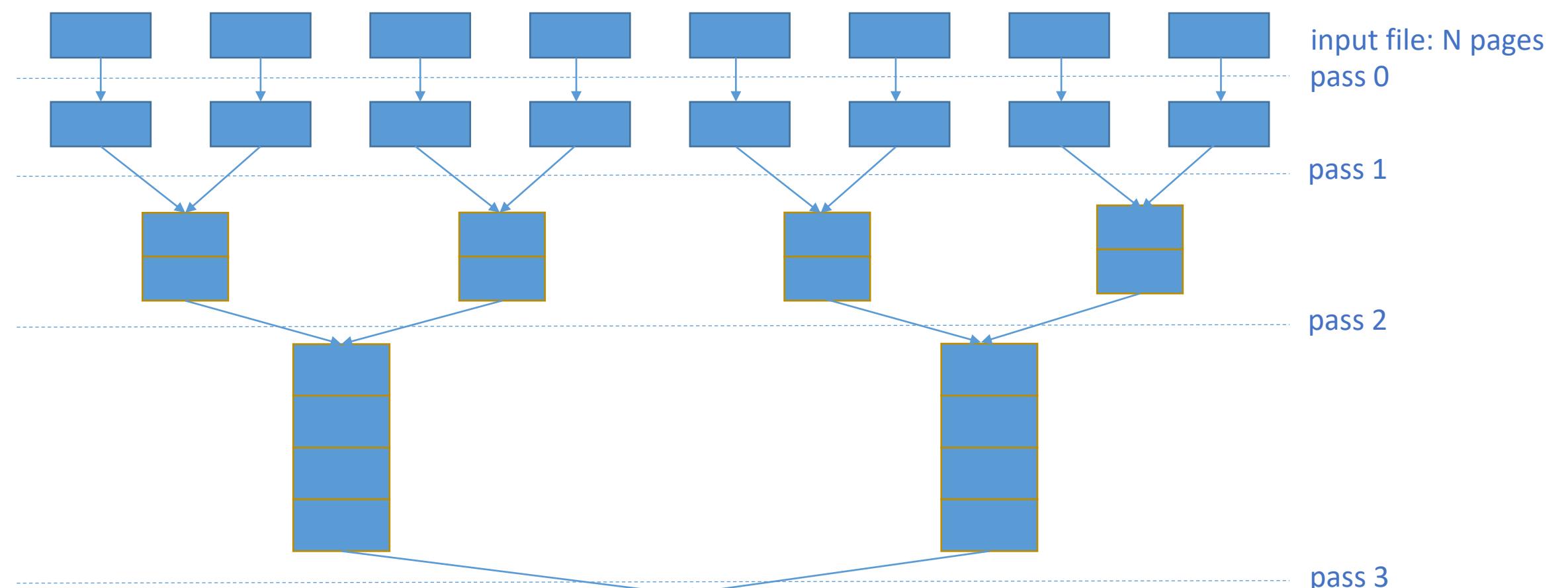
- $\lceil \log_2 N \rceil + 1$

where  $N$  is the number of pages in the file to be sorted

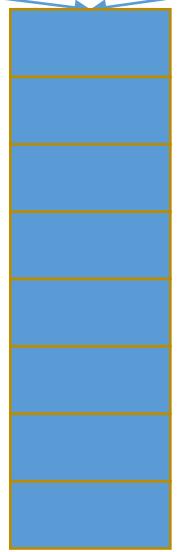
- total cost:

- $2 * \text{number of pages} * \text{number of passes}$
- $2 * N * (\lceil \log_2 N \rceil + 1) \text{ I/Os}$





- in each pass: read / process / write each page in the file
- number of passes:
  - $\lceil \log_2 N \rceil + 1$
- total cost:
  - $2 * N * (\lceil \log_2 N \rceil + 1)$  I/Os



- there are  $N = 8$  pages, 4 passes  
 $\Rightarrow 2 * 8 * 4 = 64$  I/Os
  - $2 * 8 * (\lceil \log_2 8 \rceil + 1) = 2 * 8 * 4 = 64$  I/Os
- $N = 7$  pages, 4 passes  
 $\Rightarrow 2 * 7 * 4 = 56$  I/Os
  - $2 * 7 * (\lceil \log_2 7 \rceil + 1) = 56$  I/Os

## External Merge Sort

- Simple Two-Way Merge Sort: buffer pages are not used effectively
  - for instance, if 200 buffer pages are available, this algorithm still uses only 2 input buffers for passes 1, 2, ...
- generalize the Two-Way Merge Sort algorithm to effectively use the available main memory and minimize the number of passes

->

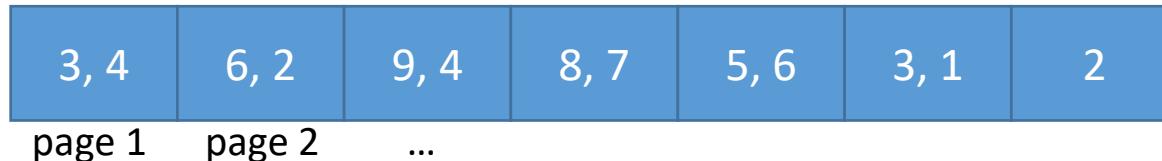
## External Merge Sort

- input file to be sorted: N pages
- B buffer pages are available
- pass 0:
  - use B buffer pages
  - read in B pages at a time and sort them in memory  
=>  $\left\lceil \frac{N}{B} \right\rceil$  runs of B pages each (except for the last one, which may be smaller)

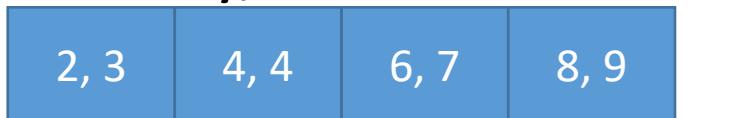
->

## External Merge Sort

- consider again the input file in the previous example:



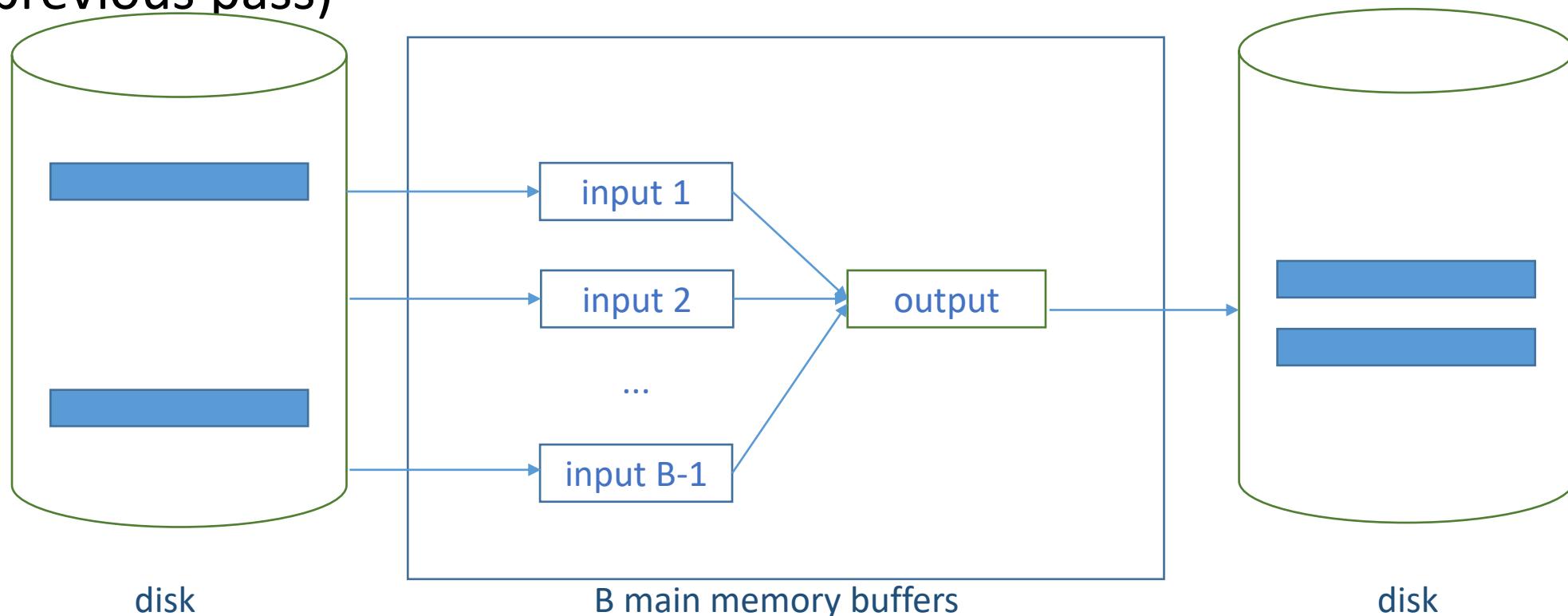
- $N = 7$  (number of pages in the file)
- $B = 4$  (there are 4 available buffer pages)
- pass 0 produces  $\left\lceil \frac{N}{B} \right\rceil = \left\lceil \frac{7}{4} \right\rceil = 2$  runs:
  - use all 4 buffer pages
  - read in 4 pages: The four blue boxes from the top row are shown again, each containing one of the four numbers: 3, 4, 6, 2, 9, 4, 8, 7.
  - sort the pages in memory, write to disk a run that is 4 pages long:



- read in remaining 3 pages: The three blue boxes from the top row are shown again, each containing one of the three numbers: 5, 6, 3, 1, 2.
- sort pages in memory, write to disk run of 3 pages: The three blue boxes from the bottom row are shown again, each containing one of the three numbers: 1, 2, 3, 5, 6.

## External Merge Sort

- input file to be sorted:  $N$  pages
- $B$  buffer pages are available
- pass 1, 2 ...:
  - use  $B-1$  pages for input, and one page for output
  - perform a  $(B-1)$ -way merge in each pass (i.e., merge  $B-1$  runs from the previous pass)



## External Merge Sort

- runs at the end of pass 0:



- pass 1

- read in & merge the first  $B - 1 = 4 - 1 = 3$  runs from pass 0
  - pass 0 produced only 2 runs in this example; read in and merge these 2 runs:

=> run



## External Merge Sort

- another example:
  - 5 buffer pages  $B = 5$
  - sort file with 108 pages  $N = 108$
- pass 0
  - use all 5 buffer pages
  - read in the first 5 pages of the file, sort them in memory, write the resulting run to disk (5 pages long)
  - read in the next 5 pages of the file, sort them in memory, write the resulting run to disk (5 pages long)
  - ...
  - read in the remaining 3 pages of the file, sort them in memory, write the resulting run to disk (3 pages long)
  - 21 runs are 5 pages long; 1 run is 3 pages long

## External Merge Sort

- another example:  $B = 5$ ,  $N = 108$
- pass 0
  - at the end of pass 0 there are  $\left\lceil \frac{N}{B} \right\rceil = \left\lceil \frac{108}{5} \right\rceil = 22$  runs
- pass 1
  - use  $B-1 = 5-1 = 4$  pages for input, and one page for output
  - do a 4-way merge: read in and merge 4 runs from the previous pass
  - read in the first 4 runs from pass 0 (each run into an input buffer)
    - merge the runs and write to the output buffer
    - write the output buffer to disk one page at a time
      - => a run that is 20 pages long (4 runs from pass 0 times 5 pages per run)
  - read in the next 4 runs from pass 0; merge the runs and write to the output buffer; write the output buffer to disk one page at a time
    - => another run (20 pages long)

...

## External Merge Sort

- another example:  $B = 5, N = 108$
- pass 0
  - at the end of pass 0 there are 22 runs
- pass 1
  - read in the last 2 runs from pass 0 (one has 5 pages, the other one has 3 pages)
    - merge the runs and write to the output buffer; write the output buffer to disk one page at a time  
=> the last run (8 pages long)
  - at the end of pass 1 there are  $\left\lceil \frac{22}{4} \right\rceil = 6$  runs
  - 5 runs are 20 pages long; 1 run is 8 pages long

## External Merge Sort

- another example:  $B = 5, N = 108$
- pass 1
  - at the end of pass 1 there are 6 runs
- pass 2
  - 4-way merge
  - read in the first 4 runs from pass 1
    - merge the runs and write to the output buffer; write the output buffer to disk one page at a time  
=> a run that is 80 pages long (4 runs from pass 1 times 20 pages per run)
  - read in the remaining 2 runs from pass 1 (20 and 8 pages, respectively)  
=> a run that is 28 pages long
  - at the end of pass 2 there are  $\left\lceil \frac{6}{4} \right\rceil = 2$  runs

## External Merge Sort

- another example:  $B = 5, N = 108$
- pass 2
  - at the end of pass 2 there are 2 runs
- pass 3
  - read in the 2 runs from pass 2 and merge them  
=> a run that is 108 pages long, representing the sorted file

## External Merge Sort

- cost
  - $N$  – number of pages in the input file,  $B$  – number of available pages in the buffer
  - in each pass: read / process / write each page
  - number of passes:  $\lceil \log_{B-1} [N/B] \rceil + 1$
  - total cost:  $2 * N * \left( \left\lceil \log_{B-1} \left[ \frac{N}{B} \right] \right\rceil + 1 \right)$  I/Os
- previous example:  $B = 5$  and  $N = 108$ , with 4 passes over the data
  - cost:  
$$2 * 108 * 4 = 864 \text{ I/Os}$$
  - $$2 * 108 * \left( \left\lceil \log_{5-1} \left[ \frac{108}{5} \right] \right\rceil + 1 \right) = 216 * (\lceil \log_4 22 \rceil + 1) = 216 * 4 = 864 \text{ I/Os}$$

- $B$  buffer pages
- sort file with  $N$  pages

### Simple Two-Way Merge Sort

pass 0 =>  $N$  runs

$$\text{number of passes} = \lceil \log_2 N \rceil + 1$$

### External Merge Sort

pass 0 =>  $\left\lceil \frac{N}{B} \right\rceil$  runs

$$\text{number of passes} = \left\lceil \log_{B-1} \left\lceil \frac{N}{B} \right\rceil \right\rceil + 1$$

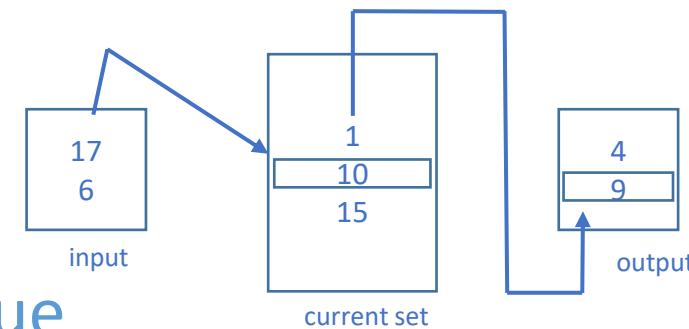
- External Merge Sort – reduced number of:
  - runs produced by the 1<sup>st</sup> pass
  - passes over the data
- $B$  is usually large => significant performance gains

## External Merge Sort – number of passes for different values of N and B

| N             | B = 3 | B = 5 | B = 9 | B = 17 | B = 129 | B = 257 |
|---------------|-------|-------|-------|--------|---------|---------|
| 100           | 7     | 4     | 3     | 2      | 1       | 1       |
| 1,000         | 10    | 5     | 4     | 3      | 2       | 2       |
| 10,000        | 13    | 7     | 5     | 4      | 2       | 2       |
| 100,000       | 17    | 9     | 6     | 5      | 3       | 3       |
| 1,000,000     | 20    | 10    | 7     | 5      | 3       | 3       |
| 10,000,000    | 23    | 12    | 8     | 6      | 4       | 3       |
| 100,000,000   | 26    | 14    | 9     | 7      | 4       | 4       |
| 1,000,000,000 | 30    | 15    | 10    | 8      | 5       | 4       |

- \* minimize the number of runs - optional

- external merge sort
  - N pages in the file, B buffer pages =>  $\lceil N/B \rceil$  runs of B pages each
- improvement
  - algorithm known to produce runs of approximately  $2*B$  pages (on average)
  - use 1 page as an input buffer, 1 page as an output buffer
  - the remaining buffer pages are collectively referred to as the *current set*
- example - sort file in ascending order on some key  $k$ :
  - repeatedly pick record  $r$  in the current set and append it to the output buffer
  - keep output buffer sorted:  $r$ 's  $k$  value  $\geq$  largest  $k$  value in the output buffer
  - multiple such records in current set - choose the smallest one



- \* minimize the number of runs - optional

- example - sort file in ascending order on some key  $k$ :
  - use the extra space in the current set to bring in the next tuple from the input buffer
  - process all tuples in the input buffer, then read in the next page of the file
  - when the output buffer fills up, write it to disk (add its content to the run that is currently being built)
  - the current run is completed when every  $k$  value in the current set is < the largest  $k$  value in the output buffer; when this happens, the output buffer is written out (its content becomes the last page in the current run), and a new run is started

## Sort-Merge Join

- equality join, one join column:  $E \otimes_{i=j} S$  ( $i^{\text{th}}$  column's value in  $E = j^{\text{th}}$  column's value in  $S$ )
- sort  $E$  and  $S$  on the join column (if not already sorted):
  - for instance, by using External Merge Sort  
=> *partitions* = groups of tuples with the same value in the join column
- merge  $E$  and  $S$ ; look for tuples  $e$  in  $E$ ,  $s$  in  $S$  such that  $e_i = s_j$ :
  - while *current*  $e_i < \text{current } s_j$ 
    - advance the scan of  $E$
  - while *current*  $e_i > \text{current } s_j$ 
    - advance the scan of  $S$
  - if *current*  $e_i = \text{current } s_j$ 
    - output joined tuples  $\langle e, s \rangle$ , where  $e$  and  $s$  are in the current partition (i.e., they have the same value in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  and  $j^{\text{th}}$  column, respectively)
    - there could be multiple tuples in  $E$  with the same value in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  column as the current tuple  $e$  (same is true for  $S$ )

## Sort-Merge Join

- partitions are illustrated on tables Students and Exams below (join column SID in both tables):

| SID | SName  | Age |
|-----|--------|-----|
| 20  | Ana    | 20  |
| 30  | Dana   | 20  |
| 40  | Dan    | 20  |
| 45  | Daniel | 20  |
| 50  | Ina    | 20  |

| SID | CID | EDate     | Grade | FacultyMember |
|-----|-----|-----------|-------|---------------|
| 30  | 2   | 20/1/2018 | 10    | Ionescu       |
| 30  | 1   | 21/1/2018 | 9.99  | Pop           |
| 45  | 2   | 20/1/2018 | 9.98  | Ionescu       |
| 45  | 1   | 21/1/2018 | 9.98  | Pop           |
| 45  | 3   | 22/1/2018 | 10    | Stan          |
| 50  | 2   | 20/1/2018 | 10    | Ionescu       |

## Sort-Merge Join

- during the merging phase, E is scanned once; every partition in S is scanned as many times as there are matching tuples in the corresponding partition in E

|   | ...<br>i <sup>th</sup> column | ... |
|---|-------------------------------|-----|
| E | 1                             |     |
|   | 3                             |     |
|   | 3                             |     |
|   | 3                             |     |
|   | 8                             |     |
|   | ...                           |     |

|   | j <sup>th</sup> column | ...         |
|---|------------------------|-------------|
| S | 2                      |             |
|   | 3                      |             |
|   | 3                      | partition P |
|   | 4                      |             |
|   | ...                    |             |
|   | ...                    |             |

- for instance, partition P in the above table S is scanned 3 times, once per matching tuple in the corresponding partition in E
- there are 6 output joined tuples  $\langle e, s \rangle$  for partition P
- this algorithm avoids the enumeration of the cross-product: tuples in a partition in E are compared only with the S tuples in the same partition!

## Sort-Merge Join

- cost:
  - sorting E
    - cost:  $O(M \log M)$
  - sorting S
    - cost:  $O(N \log N)$
  - cost of merging:  $M + N$  I/Os, assuming partitions in S are scanned only once
    - worst-case scenario:  $M * N$  I/Os (when all records in E and S have the same value in the join column)

\* E - M pages; S - N pages\*

## Sort-Merge Join ( $\text{Exams} \otimes_{\text{Exams.SID}=\text{Students.SID}} \text{Students}$ )

- 100 buffer pages
  - sort Exams
    - 2 passes => cost:  $2 * 2 * 1000 = 4000$  I/Os
  - sort Students
    - 2 passes => cost:  $2 * 2 * 500 = 2000$  I/Os
  - merging phase
    - cost:  $1000 + 500 = 1500$  I/Os
  - total cost:  $4000 + 2000 + 1500 = 7500$  I/Os
    - similar to the cost of Block Nested Loops Join

$$\begin{array}{ll} * E - M \text{ pages}, p_E \text{ records / page} * & * 1000 \text{ pages} * * 100 \text{ records / page} * \\ * S - N \text{ pages}, p_S \text{ records / page} * & * 500 \text{ pages} * * 80 \text{ records / page} * \end{array}$$

## Sort-Merge Join ( $\text{Exams} \otimes_{\text{Exams.SID}=\text{Students.SID}} \text{Students}$ )

- 35 buffer pages
  - sort Exams
    - 2 passes => cost:  $2 * 2 * 1000 = 4000$  I/Os
  - sort Students
    - 2 passes => cost:  $2 * 2 * 500 = 2000$  I/Os
  - merging phase
    - cost:  $1000 + 500 = 1500$  I/Os
  - total cost:  $4000 + 2000 + 1500 = 7500$  I/Os
    - ex: compute cost of BNLJ and compare

$$\begin{array}{lll} * E - M \text{ pages}, p_E \text{ records / page} * & * 1000 \text{ pages} * & * 100 \text{ records / page} * \\ * S - N \text{ pages}, p_S \text{ records / page} * & * 500 \text{ pages} * & * 80 \text{ records / page} * \end{array}$$

## Sort-Merge Join ( $\text{Exams} \otimes_{\text{Exams.SID}=\text{Students.SID}} \text{Students}$ )

- 300 buffer pages
  - sort Exams
    - 2 passes => cost:  $2 * 2 * 1000 = 4000$  I/Os
  - sort Students
    - 2 passes => cost:  $2 * 2 * 500 = 2000$  I/Os
  - merging phase
    - cost:  $1000 + 500 = 1500$  I/Os
  - total cost:  $4000 + 2000 + 1500 = 7500$  I/Os
    - ex: compute cost of BNLJ and compare

$$\begin{array}{lll} * E - M \text{ pages}, p_E \text{ records / page} * & * 1000 \text{ pages} * & * 100 \text{ records / page} * \\ * S - N \text{ pages}, p_S \text{ records / page} * & * 500 \text{ pages} * & * 80 \text{ records / page} * \end{array}$$

## References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Da03] DATE, C.J., An Introduction to Database Systems (8<sup>th</sup> Edition), Addison-Wesley, 2003
- [Ga09] GARCIA-MOLINA, H., ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., Database Systems: The Complete Book (2nd Edition), Pearson, 2009
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si19] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (7th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2019
- [Ul11] ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., A First Course in Database Systems,  
<http://infolab.stanford.edu/~ullman/fcdb.html>

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 9

Evaluating Relational Operators

Query Optimization

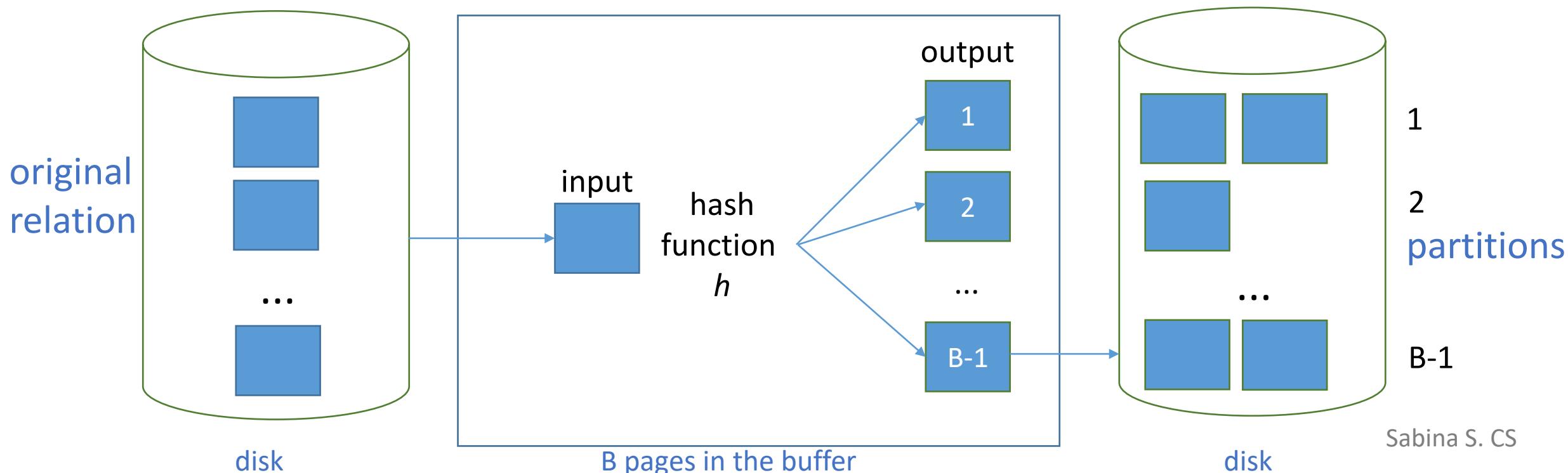
- running example - schema
  - Students (SID: integer, SName: string, Age: integer)
  - Courses (CID: integer, CName: string, Description: string)
  - Exams (SID: integer, CID: integer, EDate: date, Grade: integer, FacultyMember: string)
- Students
  - every record has 50 bytes
  - there are 80 records / page
  - 500 pages of Students tuples
- Exams
  - every record has 40 bytes
  - there are 100 records / page
  - 1000 pages of Exams tuples
- Courses
  - every record has 50 bytes
  - there are 80 records / page
  - 100 pages of Courses tuples

## Hash Join - equality join, one join column: $E \otimes_{i=j} S$

- phases: partitioning (building phase) & probing (matching phase)
- partitioning phase:
  - there are  $B$  pages available in the buffer:
    - use one page as the input buffer page
    - and the remaining  $B-1$  pages as output buffer pages
  - choose a hash function  $h$  that distributes tuples uniformly to one of  $B-1$  partitions
  - hash  $E$  and  $S$  on the join column (the  $i^{\text{th}}$  column of  $E$ , the  $j^{\text{th}}$  column of  $S$ ) with the same hash function  $h$

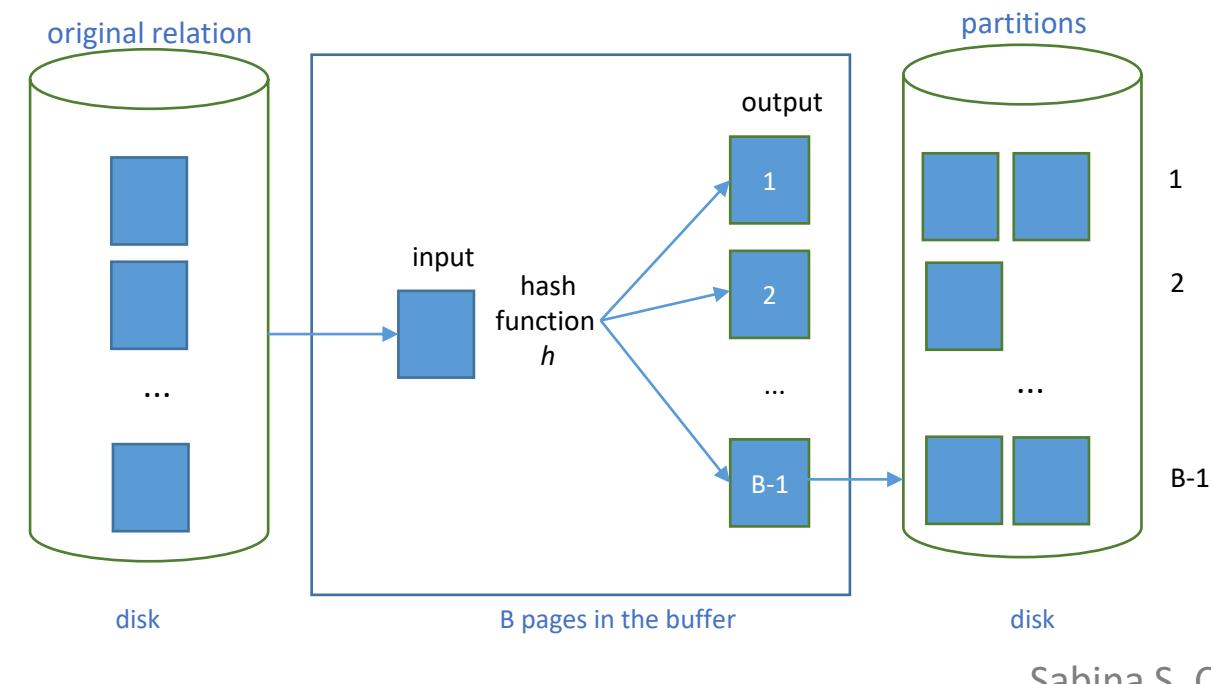
## Hash Join

- hash E on the join column with hash function  $h$  (similarly for S):
  - for each tuple  $e$  in E, compute  $h(e_i)$  ( $e_i$ : the value of the  $i^{\text{th}}$  column in tuple  $e$ )
  - add tuple  $e$  to the output buffer page that it is hashed to by  $h$  (buffer page  $h(e_i)$ )
  - when an output buffer page fills up, flush the page to disk



## Hash Join

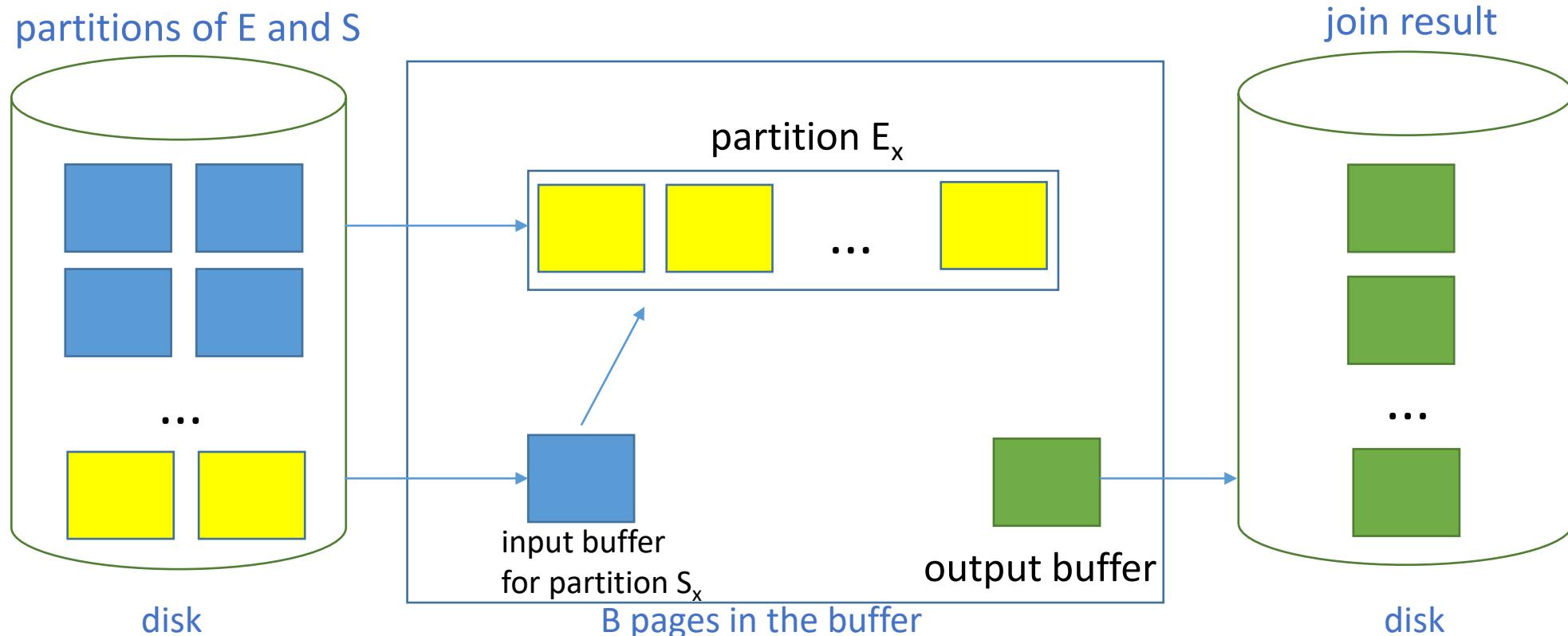
- partitioning phase => *partitions* of E ( $E_1, E_2, \text{etc}$ ) and S ( $S_1, S_2, \text{etc}$ ) on disk
- partition = collection of tuples that have the same hash value
- tuples in partition  $E_1$  can only join with tuples in partition  $S_1$  (they cannot join with tuples in partitions  $S_2$  or  $S_3$ , for instance, since these tuples have a different hash value)
- so to compute the join, we need to scan E and S only once (provided any partition of E fits in main memory)
- when reading in a partition  $E_k$  of E, we must scan only the corresponding partition  $S_k$  of S to find matching tuples (compare tuples  $e$  in  $E_k$  with tuples  $s$  in  $S_k$  to test the join condition *value of  $i^{th}$  column in E = value of  $j^{th}$  column in S*)



## Hash Join

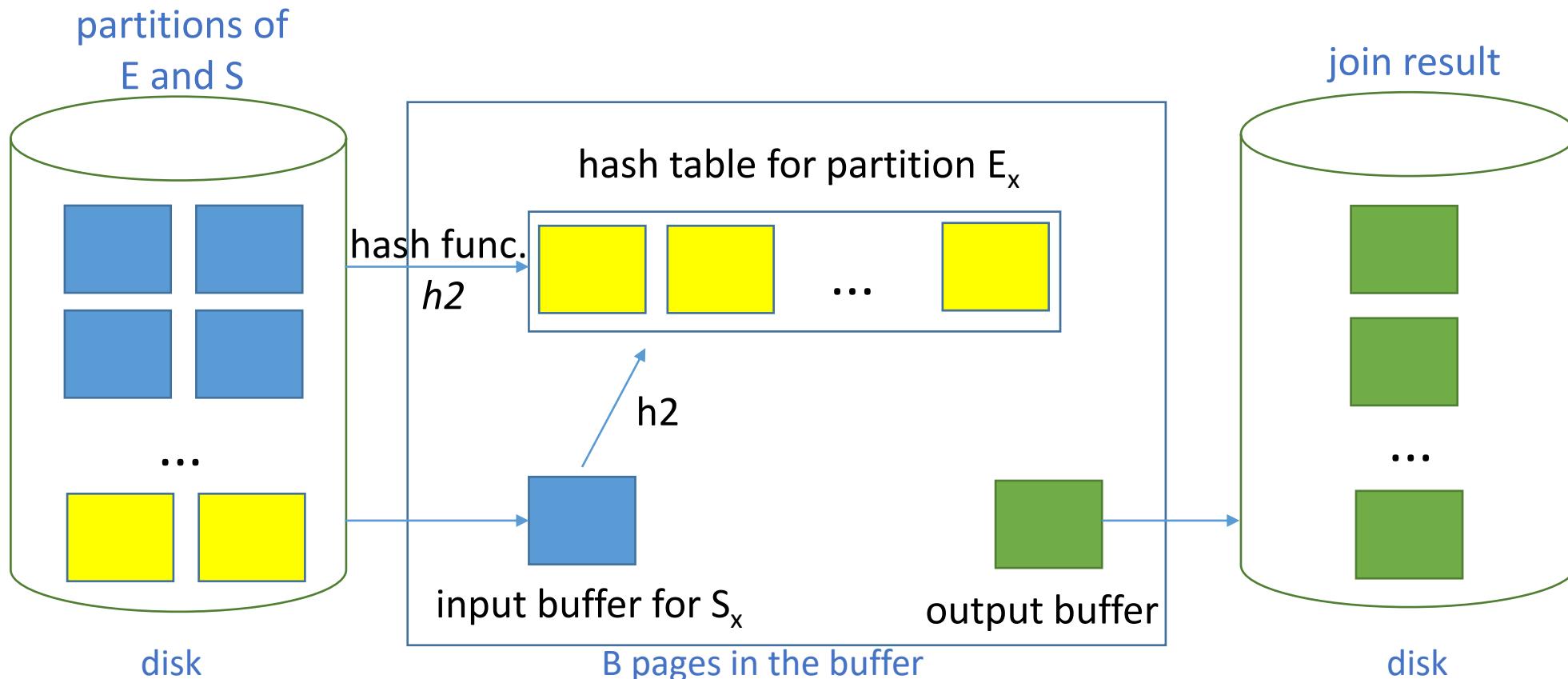
- probing phase:

- read in a partition of the smaller relation (e.g., E) and scan the corresponding partition of S for matching tuples
- use one page as the input buffer for S, one page as the output buffer, and the remaining pages to read in partitions of E



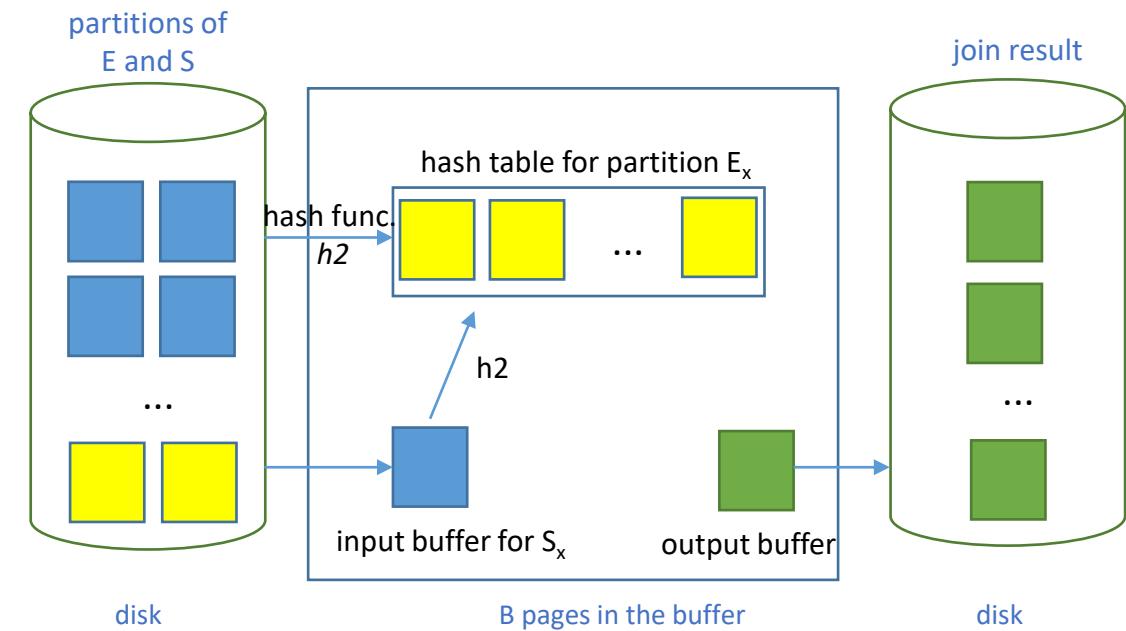
## Hash Join

- probing phase:
  - in practice, to reduce CPU costs, an in-memory hash table is built, using a different function  $h2$ , for the E partition



## Hash Join

- probing phase:
  - in practice, to reduce CPU costs, an in-memory hash table is built, using a different function  $h2$ , for the E partition
- consider a partition  $E_x$  of E
- build in-memory hash table for  $E_x$  using hash function  $h2$  (the function is applied to the join column of E)
- for each tuple  $s$  in partition  $S_x$ , find matching tuples in the hash table using the hash value  $h2(s_j)$
- result tuples  $\langle e, s \rangle$  are written to output buffer
- once partitions  $E_x$  and  $S_x$  are processed, the hash table is emptied (to prepare for the next partition)



## Hash Join

- cost:
    - partitioning:
      - both E and S are read and written once => cost:  $2*(M+N)$  I/Os
    - probing:
      - scan each partition once => cost:  $M+N$  I/Os
- => total cost:  $3*(M+N)$  I/Os
- assumption: each partition fits into memory during probing
  - $3*(1000 + 500) = 4500$  I/Os

\* E - M pages,  $p_E$  records / page \*

\* S - N pages,  $p_S$  records / page \*

\* 1000 pages \* \* 100 records / page \*

\* 500 pages \* \* 80 records / page \*

## Hash Join

- *partition overflow* – an E partition does not fit in memory during probing:  
apply hash join technique recursively:
  - divide E, S into subpartitions
  - join subpartitions pairwise
  - if subpartitions don't fit in memory, apply hash join technique recursively

## Hash Join

- memory requirements - objective: partition in E fits into main memory (S - similarly)
  - B buffer pages; need one input buffer => maximum number of partitions:  $B-1$
  - size of largest partition:  $B - 2$  (need one input buffer for S, one output buffer)
  - assume uniformly sized partitions => size of each E partition:  $M/(B-1)$   
 $\Rightarrow M/(B-1) < B-2 \Rightarrow$  we need approximately  $B > \sqrt{M}$
- if an in-memory hash table is used to speed up tuple matching => need a little more memory (because the hash table for a collection of tuples will be a little larger than the collection itself)

\* E - M pages,  $p_E$  records / page \*

\* 1000 pages \* \* 100 records / page\*

## general join conditions

- equalities over several attributes
  - $E.SID = S.SID \text{ AND } E.attrE = S.attrS$ 
    - index nested loops join
      - Exams – inner relation:
        - build index on Exams with search key  $\langle SID, attrE \rangle$  (if not already created)
        - can also use index on SID or index on attrE
      - Students – inner relation (similar)
    - sort-merge join
      - sort Exams on  $\langle SID, attrE \rangle$ , sort Students on  $\langle SID, attrS \rangle$
    - hash join
      - partition Exams on  $\langle SID, attrE \rangle$ , partition Students on  $\langle SID, attrS \rangle$
    - other join algorithms
      - essentially unaffected

## general join conditions

- inequality comparison
  - $E.\text{attrE} < S.\text{attrS}$ 
    - index nested loops join
      - B+ tree index required
    - sort-merge join
      - not applied
    - hash join
      - not applied
    - other join algorithms
      - essentially unaffected

- \* no join algorithm is uniformly superior to others
- choice of a good algorithm depends on:
  - size(s) of:
    - joined relations
    - buffer pool
  - available access methods

## Selection

Q:

```
SELECT *  
FROM Exams E  
WHERE E.FacultyMember = 'Ionescu'
```

- use information in the selection condition to reduce the number of retrieved tuples
- e.g.,  $|Q| = 4$  (result set has 4 tuples), there's a B+ tree index on FacultyMember
  - it's expensive to scan E (1000 I/Os) to evaluate the query
  - should use the index instead
- selection algorithms based on the following techniques:
  - iteration, indexing

\*  $E - M$  pages,  $p_E$  records / page \*

\* 1000 pages \* \* 100 records / page\*

Sabina S. cs

## Selection

- simple selections
  - $\sigma_{E.attr \ op \ val}(E)$
- no index on *attr*, data not sorted on *attr*
  - must scan E and test the condition for each tuple
  - access path: file scan

=> cost: M I/Os = 1000 I/Os
- no index, sorted data (E physically sorted on *attr*)
  - binary search to locate 1<sup>st</sup> tuple that satisfies condition and
  - scan E starting at this position until condition is no longer satisfied
  - access method: sorted file scan

Review lecture notes on *Relational Algebra, Indexes, DB – Physical Structure* (*Databases* course)

## Selection

- simple selections
  - $\sigma_{E.attr \ op \ val}(E)$
- no index, sorted data (E physically sorted on *attr*)  
=> cost:
  - binary search:  $O(\log_2 M)$
  - scan cost: varies from 0 to M
  - binary search on E
    - $\log_2 1000 \approx 10$  I/Os

## Selection

- simple selections
  - $\sigma_{E.attr \ op \ val}(E)$
- B+ tree index on *attr*
  - \* search tree to find 1<sup>st</sup> index entry pointing to a qualifying E tuple
    - cost: typically 2, 3 I/Os
  - \* scan leaf pages to retrieve all qualifying entries
    - cost: depends on the number of qualifying entries
  - \* for each qualifying entry - retrieve corresponding tuple in E
    - cost: depends on the number of tuples and the nature of the index (clustered / unclustered)

## Selection

- simple selections
  - $\sigma_{E.attr \ op \ val}(E)$
- B+ tree index on *attr*
  - assumption
    - indexes use a2 or a3
    - a1-based index => data entry contains the data record => the cost of retrieving records = the cost of retrieving the data entries!
  - access path: B+ tree index
    - clustered index:
      - best access path when *op* is not *equality*
      - good access path when *op* is *equality*

## Selection

- simple selections:  $\sigma_{E.attr \ op \ val}(E)$
- B+ tree index on *attr*

Q

```
SELECT *
FROM Exams E
WHERE E.FacultyMember < 'C%
```

- names uniformly distributed with respect to 1<sup>st</sup> letter  
=>  $|Q| \approx 10,000$  tuples = 100 pages
- clustered B+ tree index on FacultyMember  
=> cost of retrieving tuples:  $\approx 100$  I/Os (a few I/Os to get from root to leaf)
- non-clustered B+ tree index on FacultyMember  
=> cost of retrieving tuples: up to 1 I/O per tuple (worst case) => up to 10,000 I/Os

\* E - M pages,  $p_E$  records / page \*      \* 1000 pages \* \* 100 records / page \*

## Selection

- simple selections:  $\sigma_{E.attr \ op \ val}(E)$

- B+ tree index on *attr*

```
SELECT *
```

```
FROM Exams E
```

```
WHERE E.FacultyMemger < 'C%'
```

- non-clustered B+ tree index on FacultyMember

- refinement - sort rids in qualifying data entries by page-id

=> a page containing qualifying tuples is retrieved only once

- cost of retrieving tuples: number of pages containing qualifying tuples (but such tuples are probably stored on more than 100 pages)

- range selections

- non-clustered indexes can be expensive

- could be less costly to scan the relation (in our example: 1000 I/Os)

## Selection

- general selections
  - selections without disjunctions
- C - CNF condition without disjunctions
  - evaluation options:
    1. use the most selective access path
      - if it's an index I:
        - apply conjuncts in C that match I
        - apply rest of conjuncts to retrieved tuples
      - example
        - $c < 100 \text{ AND } a = 3 \text{ AND } b = 5$ 
          - can use a B+ tree index on  $c$  and check  $a = 3 \text{ AND } b = 5$  for each retrieved tuple
          - can use a hash index on  $a$  and  $b$  and check  $c < 100$  for each retrieved tuple

## Selection

- general selections - selections without disjunctions
  - evaluation options:
    2. use several indexes - when several conjuncts match indexes using a2 / a3
      - compute sets of rids of candidate tuples using indexes
      - intersect sets of rids, retrieve corresponding tuples
      - apply remaining conjuncts (if any)
      - example:  $c < 100 \text{ AND } a = 3 \text{ AND } b = 5$ 
        - use a B+ tree index on  $c$  to obtain rids of records that meet condition  $c < 100$  ( $R_1$ )
        - use a hash index on  $a$  to retrieve rids of records that meet condition  $a = 3$  ( $R_2$ )
        - compute  $R_1 \cap R_2 = R_{int}$
        - retrieve records with rids in  $R_{int}$  ( $R$ )
        - check  $b = 5$  for each record in  $R$

## Selection

- general selections
  - selections with disjunctions
- C - CNF condition with disjunctions, i.e., some conjunct  $J$  is a disjunction of terms
  - if some term  $T$  in  $J$  requires a file scan, testing  $J$  by itself requires a file scan
    - example:  $a < 100 \vee b = 5$ 
      - hash index on  $b$ , hash index on  $c$
  - => check both terms using a file scan (i.e., best access path: file scan)
- compare with the example below:
  - $(a < 100 \vee b = 5) \wedge c = 7$
  - hash index on  $b$ , hash index on  $c$
- => use index on  $c$ , apply  $a < 100 \vee b = 5$  to each retrieved tuple (i.e., most selective access path: index)

## Selection

- general selections
  - selections with disjunctions
- C - CNF condition with disjunctions
  - every term  $T$  in a disjunction matches an index  
=> retrieve tuples using indexes, compute union
  - example
    - $a < 100 \vee b = 5$
    - B+ tree indexes on  $a$  and  $b$
    - use index on  $a$  to retrieve records that meet condition  $a < 100$  ( $R_1$ )
    - use index on  $b$  to retrieve records that meet condition  $b = 5$  ( $R_2$ )
    - compute  $R_1 \cup R_2 = R$
    - if all matching indexes use a2 or a3 => take union of rids, retrieve corresponding tuples

## Projection

- $\Pi_{\text{SID}, \text{CID}}(\text{Exams})$

```
SELECT DISTINCT E.SID, E.CID  
FROM Exams E
```

- to implement projection:
  - eliminate:
    - unwanted columns
    - duplicates
  - projection algorithms - *partitioning* technique:
    - sorting
    - hashing

## Projection Based on Sorting

- step 1
  - scan  $E \Rightarrow$  set of tuples containing only desired attributes ( $E'$ )
  - cost:
    - scan  $E$ :  $M$  I/Os
    - write temporary relation  $E'$ :  $T$  I/Os
      - $T$  depends on: number of columns and their sizes,  $T$  is  $O(M)$
- step 2
  - sort tuples in  $E'$
  - sort key: all columns
  - cost:  $O(T \log T)$  (also  $O(M \log M)$ )
- step 3
  - scan sorted  $E'$ , compare adjacent tuples, eliminate duplicates
  - cost:  $T$
- total cost:  $O(M \log M)$

## Projection Based on Sorting

\* example

```
SELECT DISTINCT E.SID, E.CID  
FROM Exams E
```

- scan Exams: 1000 I/Os
- size of tuple in E': 10 bytes

=> cost of writing temporary relation E': 250 I/Os

- available buffer pages: 20
  - E' can be sorted in 2 passes
  - sorting cost:  $2 * 2 * 250 = 1000$  I/Os
- final scan of E' - cost: 250 I/Os

=> total cost:  $1000 + 250 + 1000 + 250 = 2500$  I/Os

\* E – record size = 40 bytes \*

\* 1000 pages \*

\* 100 records / page\*

## Projection Based on Sorting

\* example

```
SELECT DISTINCT E.SID, E.CID  
FROM Exams E
```

- scan Exams: 1000 I/Os
- size of tuple in E': 10 bytes

=> cost of writing temporary relation E': 250 I/Os

- available buffer pages: 257
  - E' can be sorted in 1 pass
  - sorting cost:  $2 * 1 * 250 = 500$  I/Os
- final scan of E' - cost: 250 I/Os

=> total cost:  $1000 + 250 + 500 + 250 = 2000$  I/Os

\* E – record size = 40 bytes \*

\* 1000 pages \*

\* 100 records / page\*

## Projection Based on Sorting

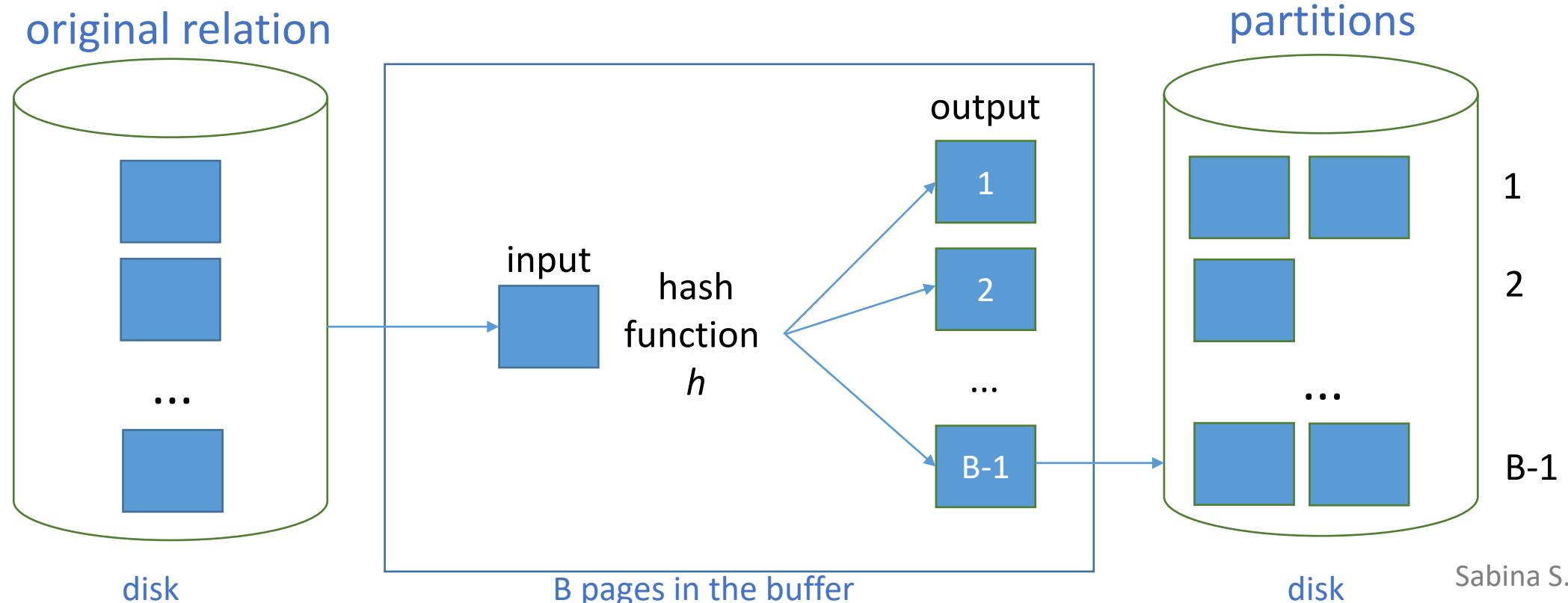
- improvement
  - adapt the sorting algorithm to do projection with duplicate elimination
    - modify pass 0 of External Merge Sort: eliminate unwanted columns
      - read in  $B$  pages from  $E$
      - write out  $(T/M) * B$  internally sorted pages of  $E'$ 
        - refinement: write out  $2*B$  internally sorted pages of  $E'$  (on average)
        - tuples in runs - smaller than input tuples
      - modify merging passes: eliminate duplicates
        - number of result tuples is smaller than number of input tuples

## Projection Based on Sorting

- improvement
  - \* example
    - pass 0:
      - scan Exams: 1000 I/Os
      - write out 250 pages:
        - 20 available buffer pages
        - 250 pages => 7 sorted runs about 40 pages long (except the last one, which is about 10 pages long)
    - pass 1:
      - read in all runs – cost: 250 I/Os
      - merge runs
    - total cost :  $1000 + 250 + 250 = 1500$  I/Os

## Projection Based on Hashing

- phases: partitioning & duplicate elimination
- partitioning phase:
  - 1 input buffer page – read in the relation one page at a time
  - hash function  $h$  – distribute tuples uniformly to one of  $B-1$  partitions
  - $B-1$  output buffer pages – one output page / partition



## Projection Based on Hashing

- partitioning phase:
  - read the relation using the input buffer page
  - for each tuple  $t$ :
    - discard unwanted fields => tuple  $t'$
    - apply hash function  $h$  to  $t'$
    - write  $t'$  to the output buffer page that it is hashed to by  $h$
- =>  $B-1$  partitions
- partition:
  - collection of tuples with:
    - common hash value
    - no unwanted fields
  - tuples in different partitions are guaranteed to be distinct

## Projection Based on Hashing

- duplicate elimination phase:
  - process all partitions:
    - read in partition P, one page at a time
    - build in-memory hash table with hash function  $h_2$  ( $\neq h$ ) on all fields:
      - if a new tuple hashes to the same value as an existing tuple, compare them to check if they are distinct
      - eliminate duplicates
    - write duplicate-free hash table to result file
    - clear in-memory hash table
- partition overflow
  - apply hash-based projection technique recursively (subpartitions)

## Projection Based on Hashing

- cost
  - partitioning:
    - read E: M I/Os
    - write E': T I/Os
  - duplicate elimination:
    - read in partitions: T I/Os
- => total cost:  $M + 2*T$  I/Os
- Exams:
  - $1000 + 2*250 = 1500$  I/Os

## Set Operations

- intersection, cross-product
  - special cases of join (join condition for intersection - equality on all fields, no join condition for cross-product)
- union, set-difference
  - similar
- union:  $R \cup S$ 
  - sorting
    - sort R and S on all attributes
    - scan the sorted relations in parallel; merge them, eliminating duplicates
  - refinement
    - produce sorted runs of R and S, merge runs in parallel

## Set Operations

- union:  $R \cup S$ 
  - hashing
    - partition  $R$  and  $S$  with the same hash function  $h$
    - for each  $S$ -partition
      - build in-memory hash table (using  $h2$ ) for the  $S$ -partition
      - scan corresponding  $R$ -partition, add tuples to hash table, discard duplicates
      - write out hash table
      - clear hash table

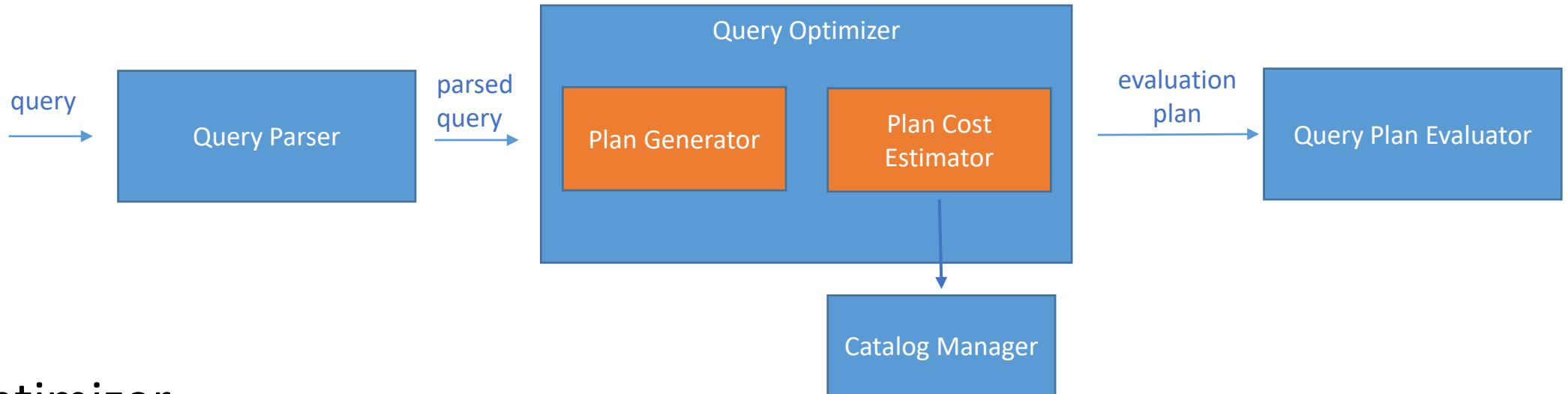
## Aggregate Operations

- without grouping
  - scan relation
  - maintain *running information* about scanned tuples
    - COUNT - count of values retrieved
    - SUM - *total* of values retrieved
    - AVG - <*total, count*> of values retrieved
    - MIN, MAX - smallest / largest value retrieved
- with grouping
  - sort relation on the grouping attributes
  - scan relation to compute aggregate operations for each group
  - improvement: combine sorting with aggregation computation
  - alternative approach based on hashing

## Aggregate Operations

- using existing indexes
  - index with a search key that includes all the attributes required by the query
    - work with the data entries in the index (instead of the data records)
  - attribute list in the GROUP BY clause is a prefix of the index search key (tree index)
  - get data entries (and records, if necessary) in the required order (i.e., avoid sorting)

# Query Optimization



- optimizer
  - objective
    - given a query  $Q$ , find a good evaluation plan for  $Q$
    - generates alternative plans for  $Q$ , estimates their costs, and chooses the one with the least estimated cost
    - uses information from the system catalogs

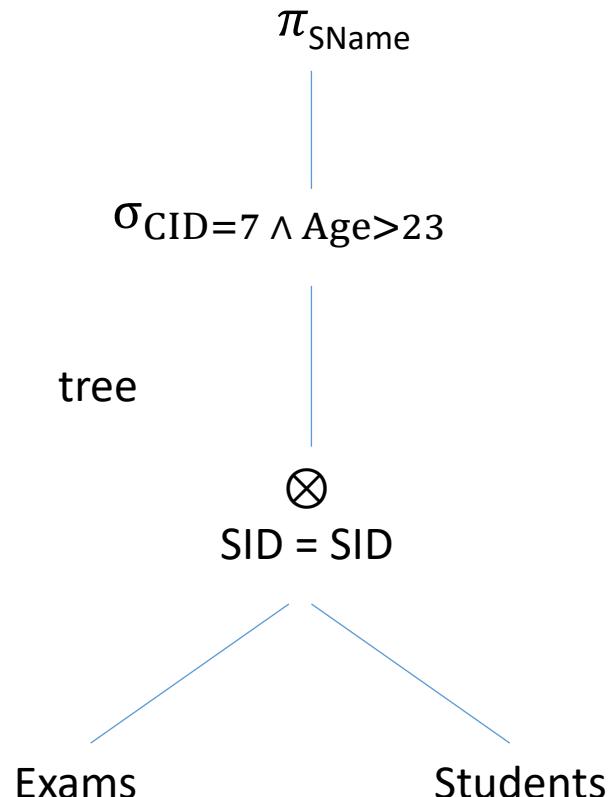
- running example - schema
  - Students (SID: integer, SName: string, Age: integer)
  - Courses (CID: integer, CName: string, Description: string)
  - Exams (SID: integer, CID: integer, EDate: date, Grade: integer)
- Students
  - every record has 50 bytes
  - there are 80 records / page
  - 500 pages
- Courses
  - every record has 40 bytes
  - there are 100 records / page
  - 1 page
- Exams
  - every record has 40 bytes
  - there are 100 records / page
  - 1000 pages

# Query Evaluation Plans

```
SELECT S.SName  
      query  
FROM Exams E, Students S  
WHERE E.SID = S.SID AND E.CID = 7  
      AND S.Age > 23
```

$$\pi_{SName}(\sigma_{CID=7 \wedge Age>23}(Exams \otimes_{SID=SID} Students))$$

relational algebra expression



# Query Evaluation Plans

```
SELECT S.SName  
FROM Exams E, Students S  
WHERE E.SID = S.SID AND E.CID = 7  
      AND S.Age > 23
```

$$\pi_{SName}(\sigma_{CID=7 \wedge Age>23}(Exams \otimes_{SID=SID} Students))$$

- query evaluation plan
  - extended relational algebra tree
  - node – annotations
    - relation
      - access method
    - relational operator
      - implementation method

$$\pi_{SName} \text{ (on-the-fly)}$$
$$\sigma_{CID=7 \wedge Age>23} \text{ (on-the-fly)}$$

fully specified evaluation plan

$$\otimes$$
  
$$SID = SID \text{ (Page-Oriented Nested Loops)}$$

(file scan) Exams

Students (file scan)

# Query Evaluation Plans

```
SELECT S.SName  
FROM Exams E, Students S  
WHERE E.SID = S.SID AND E.CID = 7  
      AND S.Age > 23
```

$$\pi_{SName}(\sigma_{CID=7 \wedge Age>23}(Exams \otimes_{SID=SID} Students))$$

- page-oriented Simpled Nested Loops Join
  - Exams – outer relation
  - selection, projection applied on-the-fly to each tuple in the join result, i.e., the result of the join (before applying selection and projection) is not stored

$$\pi_{SName} \text{ (on-the-fly)}$$
$$\sigma_{CID=7 \wedge Age>23} \text{ (on-the-fly)}$$

fully specified evaluation plan

$$\otimes$$
  
$$SID = SID \text{ (Page-Oriented Nested Loops)}$$

(file scan) Exams

Students (file scan)

## Pipelined Evaluation

```
SELECT *
FROM Exams
WHERE EDate > '1-1-2020' AND Grade > 8
      T1           T2
```

$$\sigma_{Grade>8}(\sigma_{EDate>'1-1-2020'}(Exams))$$

- index / matches  $T1$
- v1 - *materialization*
  - evaluate  $T1$
  - write out result tuples to temporary relation  $R$ , i.e., tuples are *materialized*
  - apply the 2<sup>nd</sup> selection to  $R$
  - cost: read and write  $R$

## Pipelined Evaluation

```
SELECT *  
FROM Exams  
WHERE EDate > '1-1-2020' AND Grade > 8  
      T1           T2
```

- v2 – *pipelined evaluation*
  - apply the 2<sup>nd</sup> selection to each tuple in the result of the 1<sup>st</sup> selection as it is produced
  - i.e., 2<sup>nd</sup> selection operator is applied *on-the-fly*
  - saves the cost of writing out / reading in the temporary relation  $R$

## Query Blocks – Units of Optimization

- parse Q => collection of query *blocks* -> passed on to the optimizer
- optimizer:
  - optimize one block at a time
- query *block* - SQL query:
  - without nesting
  - with exactly: one SELECT clause, one FROM clause
  - with at most: one WHERE clause, one GROUP BY clause, one HAVING clause
    - WHERE condition - CNF

# Query Blocks – Units of Optimization

- query Q:

```
SELECT S.SID, MIN(E.EDate)
FROM Students S, Exams E, Courses C
WHERE S.SID = E.SID AND E.CID = C.CID AND C.Description = 'Elective' AND
      S.Age = (SELECT MAX(S2.Age)
                FROM Students S2)
GROUP BY S.SID
HAVING COUNT(*) > 2
```

nested block

- decompose query into a collection of blocks without nesting

```
SELECT S.SID, MIN(E.EDate)
FROM Students S, Exams E, Courses C
WHERE S.SID = E.SID AND E.CID = C.CID AND C.Description = 'Elective' AND
      S.Age = Reference to nested block
GROUP BY S.SID
HAVING COUNT(*) > 2
```

# Query Blocks – Units of Optimization

## \* block optimization

- express query block as a relational algebra expression

```
SELECT S.SID, MIN(E.EDate)
FROM Students S, Exams E, Courses C
WHERE S.SID = E.SID AND E.CID = C.CID AND C.Description = 'Elective' AND
      S.Age = Reference to nested block
GROUP BY S.SID
HAVING COUNT(*) > 2
```

$\pi_{S.SID, \text{MIN}(E.EDate)}$ (

$\text{HAVING}_{\text{COUNT}(* > 2)}$ (

$\text{GROUP BY}_{S.SID}$ (

$\sigma_{S.SID = E.SID \wedge E.CID = C.CID \wedge C.Description = 'Elective' \wedge S.Age = \text{value\_from\_nested\_block}}$ (

*Students × Exams × Courses ))))*

- GROUP BY, HAVING – operators in the extended algebra used for plans
- argument list of projection can include aggregate operations

## Query Blocks – Units of Optimization

- query Q treated as a  $\sigma \pi \times$  algebra expression
- the remaining operations in Q are performed on the result of the  $\sigma \pi \times$  expression

```
SELECT S.SID, MIN(E.EDate)
FROM Students S, Exams E, Courses C
WHERE S.SID = E.SID AND E.CID = C.CID AND C.Description = 'Elective' AND
      S.Age = Reference to nested block
GROUP BY S.SID
HAVING COUNT(*) > 2
```

$\pi_{S.SID, E.EDate}($   
 $\sigma_{S.SID = E.SID \wedge E.CID = C.CID \wedge C.Description = 'Elective' \wedge S.Age = value\_from\_nested\_block}($   
    *Students × Exams × Courses*))

- attributes in GROUP BY, HAVING are added to the argument list of projection
- aggregate expressions in the argument list of projection are replaced by their argument attributes

## Query Blocks – Units of Optimization

### \* block optimization

- find best plan P for the  $\sigma \pi \times$  expression
- evaluate P => result set RS
- sort/hash RS => groups
- apply HAVING to eliminate some groups
- compute aggregate expressions in SELECT for each remaining group

$$\begin{aligned} & \pi_{S.SID, \text{MIN}(E.EDate)}( \\ & \quad \text{HAVING } \text{COUNT(*)} > 2( \\ & \quad \text{GROUP BY } S.SID( \\ & \quad \pi_{S.SID, E.EDate}( \\ & \quad \sigma_{S.SID = E.SID \wedge E.CID = C.CID \wedge C.Description = 'Elective' \wedge S.Age = \text{value\_from\_nested\_block}}( \\ & \quad \quad \textit{Students} \times \textit{Exams} \times \textit{Courses} ))))) \end{aligned}$$

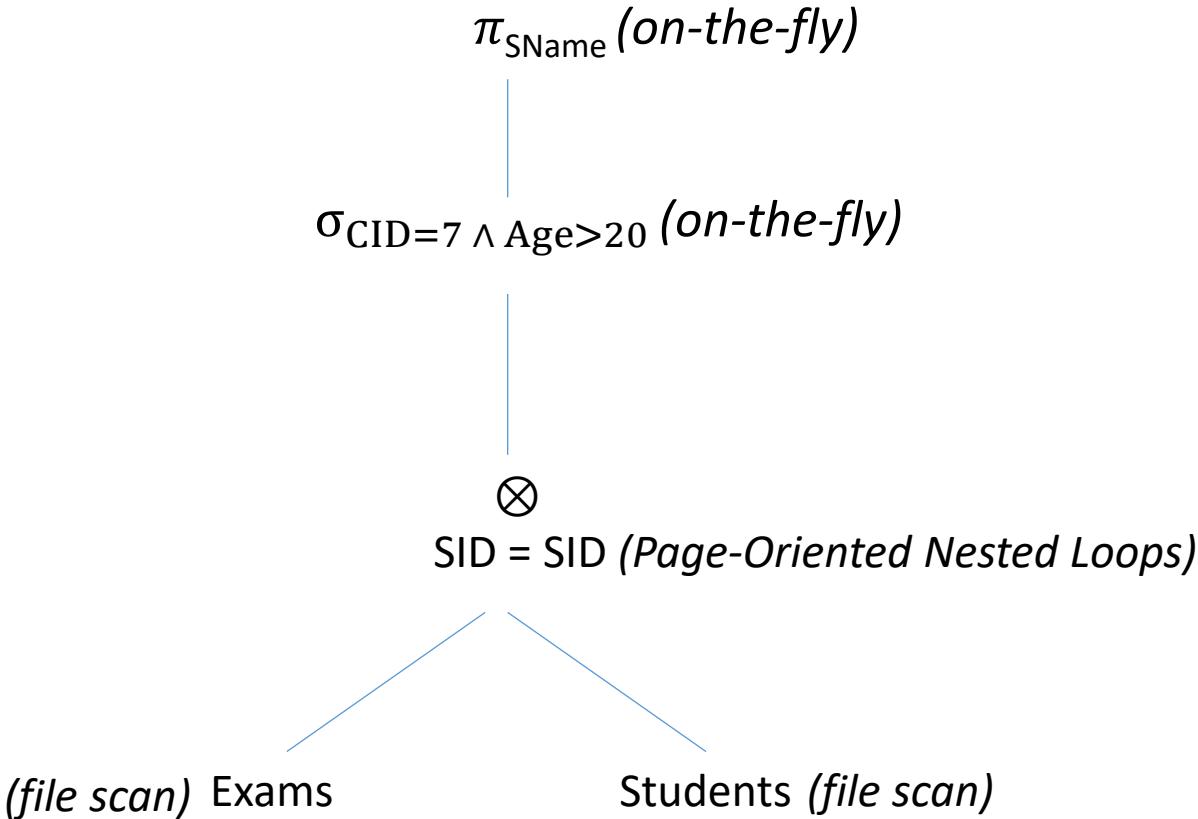
## Motivating Example

\* E - 1000 pages \*

\* S - 500 pages \*

```
SELECT S.SName  
FROM Exams E, Students S  
WHERE E.SID = S.SID AND E.CID = 7  
      AND S.Age > 20
```

- $\sigma, \pi$  – on-the-fly
- cost of plan – very high:
  - $1000 + 1000 * 500 = 501,000$  I/Os



# Motivating Example

## \* optimizations

- reduce sizes of the relations to be joined

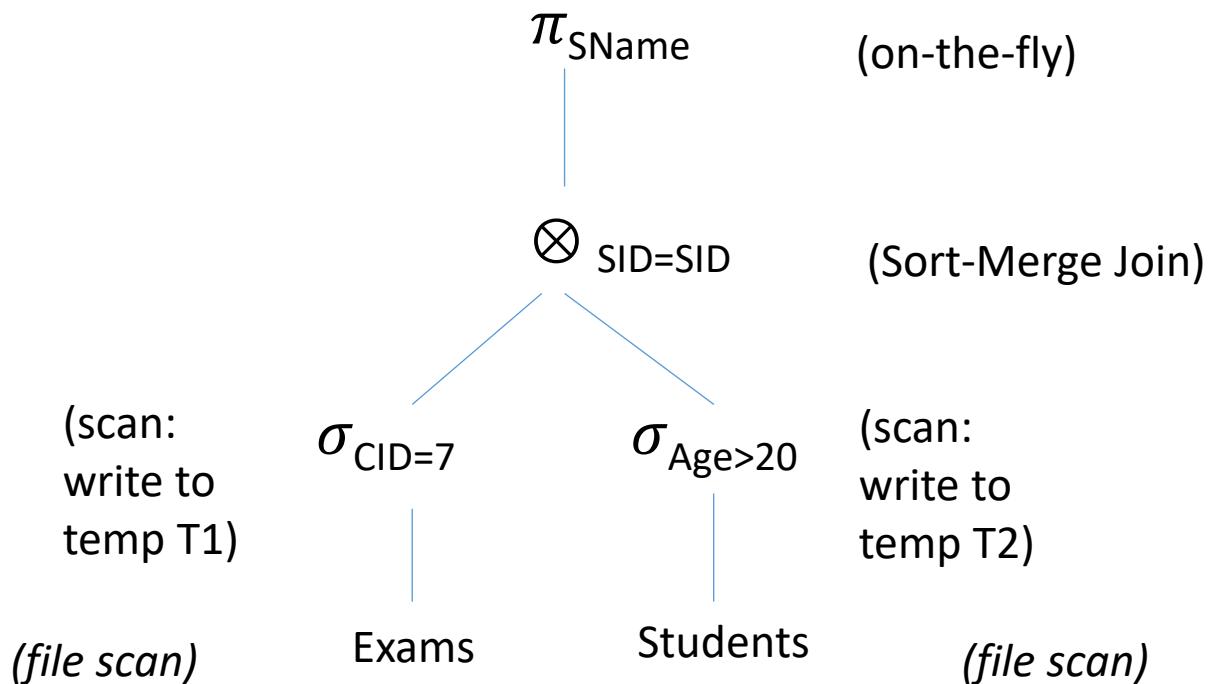
- push selections, projections ahead of the join

- alternative plans

- push selections ahead of joins

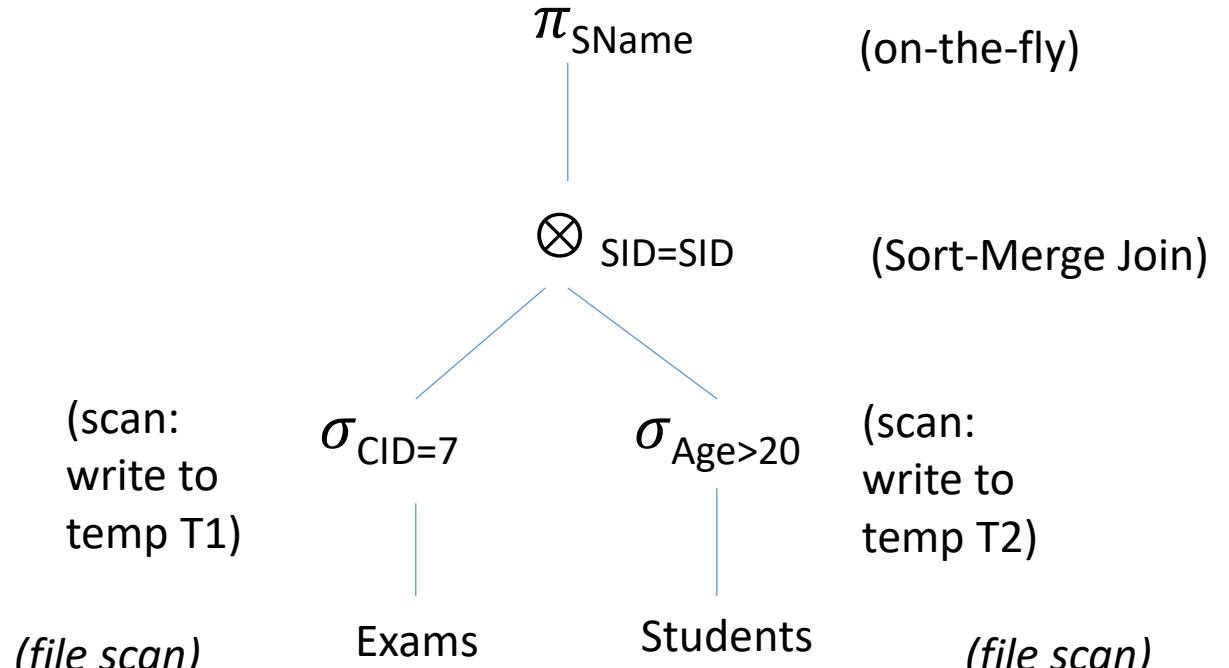
- selection

- file scan
  - write the result to a temporary relation on disk
  - join the temporary relations using Sort-Merge Join



## Motivating Example

- 5 available buffer pages
- cost
  - $\sigma_{CID=7}$ 
    - scan Exams: 1000 I/Os
    - write T1
      - assume exams are uniformly distributed across all courses, i.e., T1 has 10 pages (there are 100 courses)
  - $\sigma_{Age>20}$ 
    - scan Students: 500 I/Os
    - write T2
      - assume ages are uniformly distributed over the range 19 to 22, i.e., T2 has 250 pages



## Motivating Example

- 5 available buffer pages

- cost

- Sort-Merge Join

- T1 - 10 pages

- sort T1:  $2 * 2 * 10 = 40$  I/Os

- T2 - 250 pages

- sort T2:  $2 * 4 * 250 = 2000$  I/Os

- merge sorted T1 and T2

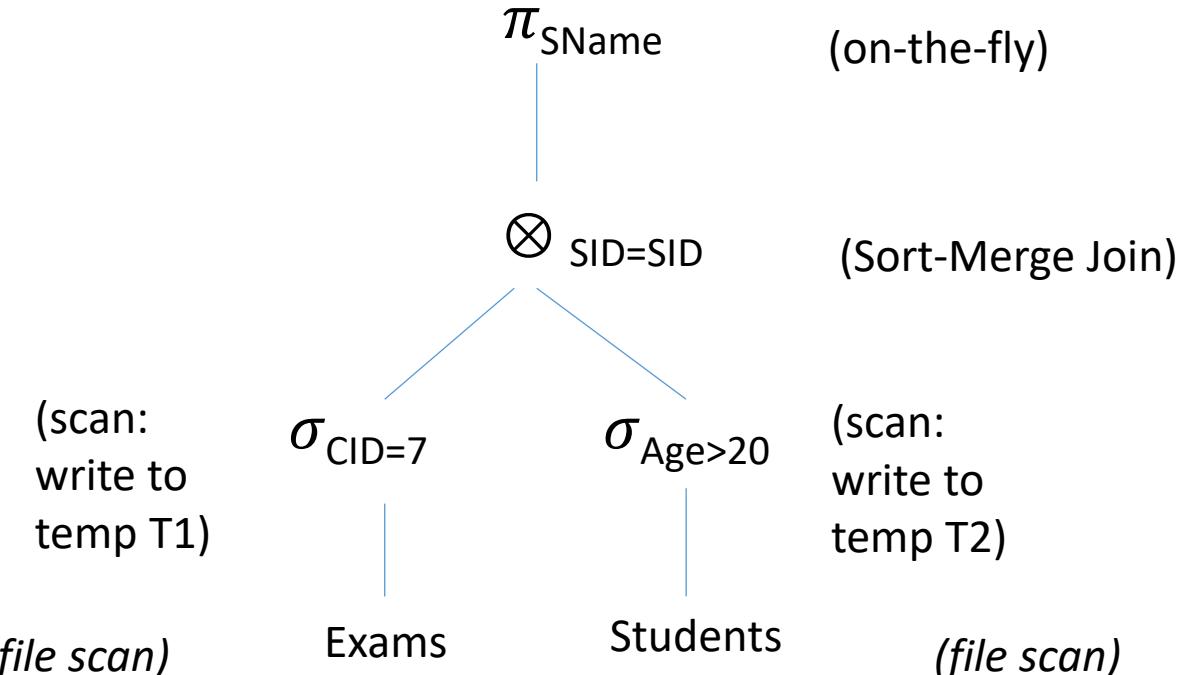
- $10 + 250 = 260$  I/Os

- $\pi$  - on the fly

=> **total cost:**  $1000 + 10 + 500 + 250 + 40 + 2000 + 260 = 4060$  I/Os

selection

join



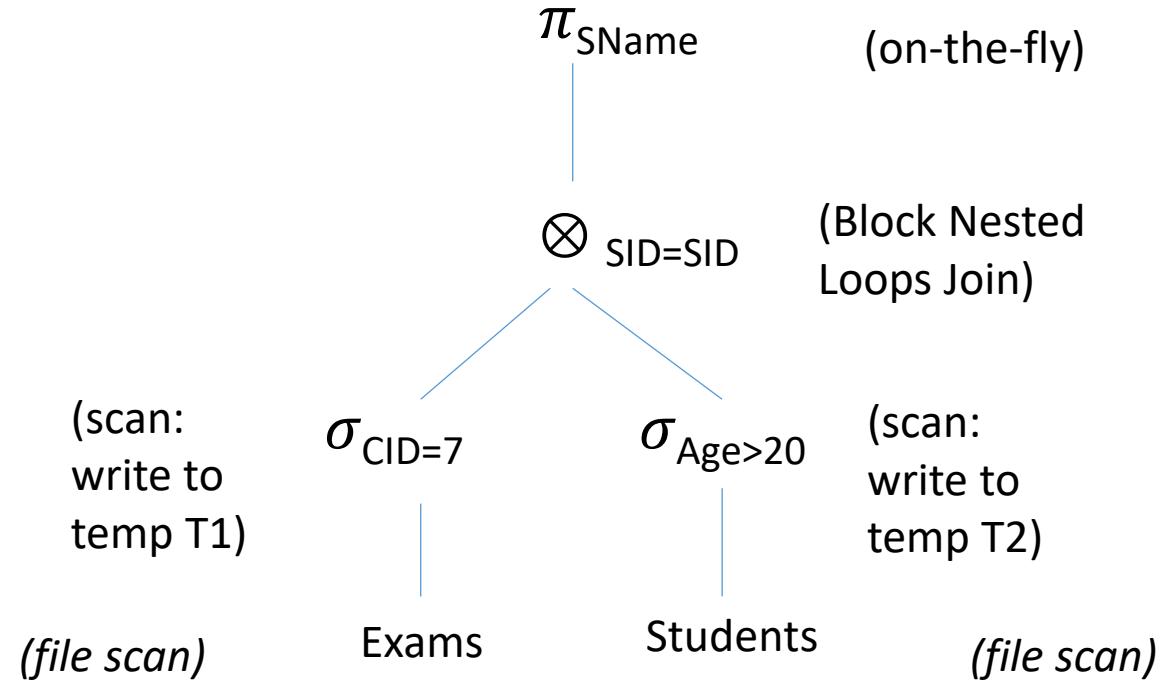
## Motivating Example

- 5 available buffer pages
- cost
  - Block Nested Loops Join
    - T1 - 10 pages, T2 - 250 pages
    - T1 - outer relation
      - => scan T1: 10 I/Os
      - $[10/3] = 4$  T1 blocks
      - => T2 scanned 4 times:  $4 * 250 = 1000$  I/Os
      - BNLJ cost:  $10 + 1000 = 1010$  I/Os
    - $\pi$  - on the fly

=> total cost: 1000 + 10 + 500 + 250 + 10 + 1000 = **2770 I/Os**

selection

join



## Motivating Example

- push projections ahead of joins
  - drop unwanted columns while scanning Exams and Students to evaluate selections => T1[SID], T2[SID, SName]
- T1 fits within 3 buffer pages  
=> T2 scanned only once  
=> **total cost:** about 2000 I/Os

## References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Da03] DATE, C.J., An Introduction to Database Systems (8<sup>th</sup> Edition), Addison-Wesley, 2003
- [Ga09] GARCIA-MOLINA, H., ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., Database Systems: The Complete Book (2nd Edition), Pearson, 2009
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si19] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (7th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2019
- [Ul11] ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., A First Course in Database Systems,  
<http://infolab.stanford.edu/~ullman/fcdb.html>

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 10  
Evaluating Relational Operators  
Query Optimization

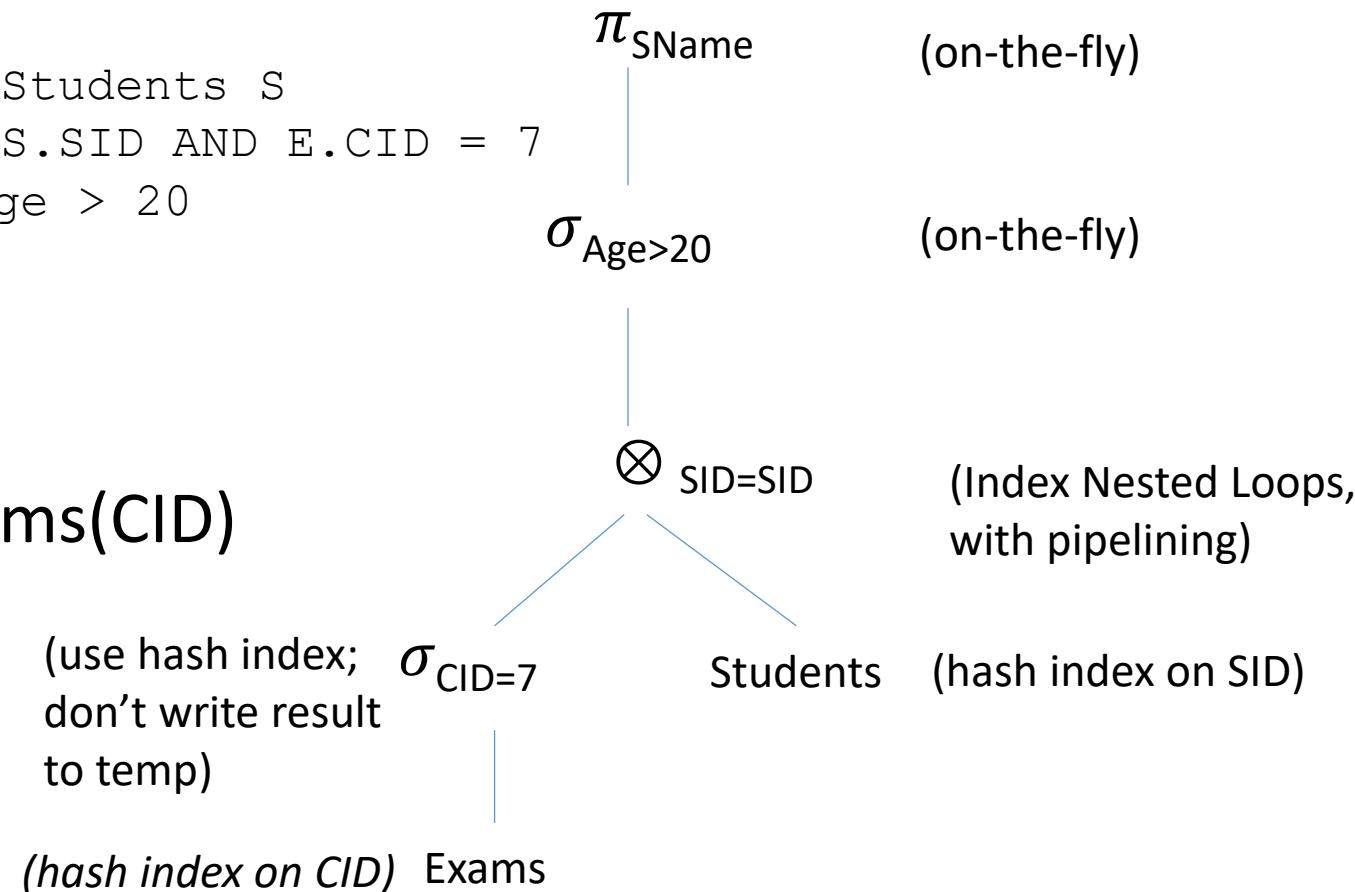
- running example - schema
  - Students (SID: integer, SName: string, Age: integer, RoundedGPA: integer)
  - Courses (CID: integer, CName: string, Description: string)
  - Exams (SID: integer, CID: integer, EDate: date, Grade: integer)
- Students
  - every record has 50 bytes
  - there are 80 records / page
  - 500 pages
- Exams
  - every record has 40 bytes
  - there are 100 records / page
  - 1000 pages
- Courses
  - every record has 40 bytes
  - there are 100 records / page
  - 1 page

## Motivating Example

### \* optimizations

- investigate the use of indexes
- clustered static hash index on Exams(CID)
- hash index on Students(SID)
- cost
  - $\sigma_{CID=7}$ 
    - assume exams are uniformly distributed across all courses => 100,000 exams / 100 courses => 1,000 exams / course
    - clustered index on CID => 1,000 tuples for course with CID=7 appear consecutively within the same bucket => cost: 10 I/Os
    - the result of the selection is not materialized, the join is pipelined

```
SELECT S.SName  
FROM Exams E, Students S  
WHERE E.SID = S.SID AND E.CID = 7  
      AND S.Age > 20
```



## Motivating Example

- cost
    - Index Nested Loops
      - find matching Students tuple for each selected exam
      - use hash index on SID
        - assume the index uses a1 => cost of 1.2 I/Os (on avg.) per exam
    - $\sigma, \pi$  – performed on-the-fly on each tuple in the result of the join
- => total cost = 10 + 1000 \* 1.2 = **1210** I/Os
- $\pi_{SName}$  (on-the-fly)  
 $\sigma_{Age > 20}$  (on-the-fly)  
 $\otimes$  SID=SID (Index Nested Loops, with pipelining)  
 Students (hash index on SID)  
 Exams  
 (use hash index; don't write result to temp)  
 (hash index on CID)
- 

\* can we push the selection  $Age > 20$  ahead of the join?

## IBM's System R Optimizer

- tremendous influence on subsequent relational optimizers
- design choices:
  - use statistics to estimate the costs of query evaluation plans
  - consider only plans with binary joins in which the inner relation is a base relation
  - focus optimization on SQL queries without nesting
  - don't eliminate duplicates when performing projections (unless DISTINCT is used)

## Estimating the Cost of a Plan

- estimating the cost of an evaluation plan for a query block
  - for each node N in the tree:
    - estimate the cost of the corresponding operation (pipelining versus temporary relations)
    - estimate the size of N's result and whether it is sorted
      - N's result is the input of N's parent node
      - these estimates affect the estimation of cost, size, and sort order for N's parent

## Estimating the Cost of a Plan

- estimating costs
    - use data about the input relations (such statistics are stored in the DBMS's system catalogs)
    - number of pages, existing indexes, etc.
  - obtained estimates are at best approximations to actual sizes and costs
- => one shouldn't expect the optimizer to find the best possible plan
- optimizer - goals:
    - avoid the worst plans
    - find a good plan

## Statistics Maintained by the DBMS

- updated periodically, not every time the data is changed
  - relation R
    - cardinality -  $NTuples(R)$ 
      - the number of tuples in R
    - size -  $NPages(R)$ 
      - the number of pages in R
  - index I
    - cardinality -  $NKeys(I)$ 
      - the number of distinct key values for I
    - size -  $INPages(I)$ 
      - the number of pages for I
      - B+ tree index
        - number of leaf pages

## Statistics Maintained by the DBMS

- index  $I$ 
  - height -  $IHeight(I)$ 
    - maintained for tree indexes
    - the number of nonleaf levels in  $I$
  - range -  $ILow(I), IHight(I)$ 
    - the minimum / maximum key value in  $I$

## Estimating Result Sizes

- query Q

SELECT attribute list

FROM relation list

WHERE  $\text{term}_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \text{term}_k$

- the maximum number of tuples in Q's result:

- $\prod |R_i|$

where  $R_i \in$  relation list

- each  $\text{term}_j$  in the WHERE clause eliminates some candidate tuples

- associate a reduction factor  $RF_j$  with each term  $\text{term}_j$

- $RF_j$  models the impact  $\text{term}_j$  has on the result size

- estimate the actual size of the result:

- $\prod |R_i| * \prod RF_j$

- i.e., the maximum result size times the product of the reduction factors for the terms in the WHERE clause

# Estimating Result Sizes

- query Q
  - SELECT attribute list
  - FROM relation list
  - WHERE  $\text{term}_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \text{term}_k$
- assumption
  - the conditions tested by the terms in the WHERE clause are statistically independent

## Estimating Result Sizes

- compute reduction factors for terms in the WHERE clause
- assumptions:
  - uniform distribution of values
  - independent distribution of values in different columns

SELECT attribute list

FROM relation list

WHERE term<sub>1</sub> AND ... AND term<sub>k</sub>

- *column = value*
  - index I on *column*  
=> RF approximated by  $1/N\text{Keys}(I)$
  - no index on *column*  
=> RF:  $1/10$ 
    - maintain statistics on *column* (e.g., number of distinct values in *column*) to obtain a better value

## Estimating Result Sizes

- $column1 = column2$ 
  - indexes  $I1$  on  $column1$ ,  $I2$  on  $column2$   
 $\Rightarrow RF: 1/\text{MAX}(N\text{Keys}(I1), N\text{Keys}(I2))$
  - only one index  $I$  (on one of the 2 columns)  
 $\Rightarrow RF: 1/N\text{Keys}(I)$
  - no indexes  
 $\Rightarrow RF: 1/10$
- $column > value$ 
  - index  $I$  on  $column$   
 $\Rightarrow RF: (\text{IH}(\mathbf{I}) - value) / (\text{IH}(\mathbf{I}) - \text{IL}(\mathbf{I}))$
  - no index on  $column$  or  $column$  not of an arithmetic type  
 $\Rightarrow$  a value less than 0.5 is arbitrarily chosen
  - similar formulas can be obtained for other range selections

## Estimating Result Sizes

- *column IN (list of values)*  
=> RF: (RF for *column = value*) \* number of items in list (but at most 0.5)
- *NOT condition*  
=> RF: 1 - RF for *condition*
- obtain better estimates
  - use more detailed statistics (e.g., histograms of the values in a column)

## Relational Algebra Equivalences

- central role in generating alternative plans
- different join orders can be considered
- selections, projections can be pushed ahead of joins
- cross-products can be converted to joins
- selections
  - *cascading selections*
    - $\sigma_{c1 \wedge \dots \wedge cn}(R) \equiv \sigma_{c1}(\sigma_{c2}(\dots(\sigma_{cn}(R))\dots))$
    - *commutativity*
      - $\sigma_{c1}(\sigma_{c2}(R)) \equiv \sigma_{c2}(\sigma_{c1}(R))$
  - projections
    - *cascading projections*
      - $\pi_{a1}(R) \equiv \pi_{a1}(\pi_{a2}(\dots(\pi_{an}(R))\dots))$
      - $a_i$  – set of attributes in R
      - $a_i \subseteq a_{i+1}$ , for  $i = 1..n-1$

## Relational Algebra Equivalences

- joins and cross-products
  - assumption
    - fields are identified by their name, not by their position
  - *associativity*
    - $R \times (S \times T) \equiv (R \times S) \times T$
    - $R * (S * T) \equiv (R * S) * T$
  - *commutativity*
    - $R \times S \equiv S \times R$
    - $R * S \equiv S * R$
    - can choose the inner / outer relation in a join

## Relational Algebra Equivalences

- joins and cross-products
  - e.g., check that  $R * (S * T) \equiv (T * R) * S$ 
    - commutativity
      - $R * (S * T) \equiv R * (T * S)$
    - associativity
      - $R * (T * S) \equiv (R * T) * S$
    - commutativity
      - $(R * T) * S \equiv (T * R) * S$

## Relational Algebra Equivalences

- can commute  $\sigma$  with  $\pi$  if  $\sigma$  uses only attributes retained by  $\pi$ 
  - $\pi_a(\sigma_c(R)) \equiv \sigma_c(\pi_a(R))$
- can combine  $\sigma$  with  $\times$  to form a join
  - $R \otimes_c S \equiv \sigma_c(R \times S)$
- can commute  $\sigma$  with  $\times$  or a join when the selection condition includes only fields of one of the arguments (to the cross-product or join)
  - for instance:
    - $\sigma_c(R * S) \equiv \sigma_c(R) * S$
    - $\sigma_c(R \times S) \equiv \sigma_c(R) \times S$ 
      - condition c must include only fields from R
- in general:  $\sigma_c(R \times S) \equiv \sigma_{c1}(\sigma_{c2}(R) \times \sigma_{c3}(S))$ 
  - c1 – attributes of both R and S
  - c2 – only attributes of R
  - c3 – only attributes of S

## Relational Algebra Equivalences

- can commute  $\pi$  with  $\times$ 
  - $\pi_a(R \times S) \equiv \pi_{a1}(R) \times \pi_{a2}(S)$
  - $a1$  – attributes in  $a$  that appear in  $R$
  - $a2$  – attributes in  $a$  that appear in  $S$
- can commute  $\pi$  with join
  - $\pi_a(R \otimes_c S) \equiv \pi_{a1}(R) \otimes_c \pi_{a2}(S)$ 
    - every attribute in  $c$  must appear in  $a$
    - $a1$  – attributes in  $a$  that appear in  $R$
    - $a2$  – attributes in  $a$  that appear in  $S$
  - $a$  doesn't contain all the attributes in  $c$  – generalization
    - eliminate unwanted fields, compute join, eliminate fields not in  $a$ 
      - $\pi_a(R \otimes_c S) \equiv \pi_a(\pi_{a1}(R) \otimes_c \pi_{a2}(S))$
      - $a1$  – attributes of  $R$  that appear in either  $a$  or  $c$
      - $a2$  – attributes of  $S$  that appear in either  $a$  or  $c$

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

- query Q
  - consider a certain set of plans
  - choose the plan with the least estimated cost
    - algebraic equivalences
    - implementation techniques for Q's operators
- not all algebraically equivalent plans are enumerated (optimization costs would be too high)
- two main cases:
  - queries with one relation in the FROM clause
  - queries with two or more relations in the FROM clause

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

- queries with one relation in the FROM clause
  - i.e., no joins; only  $\sigma$ ,  $\pi$ , grouping, aggregate operations
  - if there is only one  $\sigma$  or  $\pi$  or aggregate operation: consider implementation techniques and cost estimates discussed in previous lectures
  - if there is a combination of operations:
    - plans with / without indexes
    - example query:

```
SELECT S.RoundedGPA, COUNT(*)
FROM Students S
WHERE S.RoundedGPA > 5 AND S.Age = 20
GROUP BY S.RoundedGPA
HAVING COUNT(DISTINCT S.SName) > 5
```

$\pi_{S.RoundedGPA, COUNT(*)}($   
 $HAVING_{COUNT DISTINCT(S.SName) > 5}($   
 $GROUP BY_{S.RoundedGPA}($   
 $\pi_{S.RoundedGPA, S.SName}($   
 $\sigma_{S.RoundedGPA > 5 \wedge S.Age = 20}($   
*Students))))))*

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

\* plans without indexes:

- apply  $\sigma, \pi$  while scanning Students

- file scan

- $NPages(\text{Students})$

- 500 I/Os

- write out tuples to a temporary relation T:

- $NPages(\text{Students}) * RF(\text{RoundedGPA} > 5) * RF(\text{Age} = 20) * (\text{size of a pair } <\text{RoundedGPA}, \text{SName}> / \text{size of a Students tuple})$

- RF for *RoundedGPA*  $> 5$

- 0.5

- RF for *Age*  $= 20$

- 0.1

- size of  $<\text{RoundedGPA}, \text{SName}>$

- about  $0.8 * \text{size of a Students tuple}$

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

\* plans without indexes:

- apply  $\sigma, \pi$  while scanning Students
  - write out tuples to a temporary relation T:  
 $=> 500 * 0.5 * 0.1 * 0.8 = 20 \text{ I/Os (temporary relation T)}$
- GROUP BY:
  - sort T in 2 passes
    - $4 * 20 = 80 \text{ I/Os}$
- HAVING, aggregations
  - no additional I/O
- **total cost**
  - $500 + 20 + 80 = 600 \text{ I/Os}$

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

\* plans that use an index:

- available indexes on Students - a2
  - hash index on  $\langle \text{Age} \rangle$
  - B+ tree index on  $\langle \text{RoundedGPA} \rangle$
  - B+ tree index on  $\langle \text{RoundedGPA}, \text{SName}, \text{Age} \rangle$
- single-index access path:
  - choose the index that provides the most selective access path
  - apply  $\pi$ , nonprimary selection terms (i.e., that don't match the index)
  - compute grouping and aggregation operations
  - example:
    - use the hash index on Age to retrieve Students with Age = 20
      - cost: retrieve index entries and corresponding Students tuples
      - apply condition  $\text{RoundedGPA} > 5$  to each retrieved tuple
      - retain RoundedGPA and SName

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

\* plans that use an index:

- single-index access path – example:
  - write out tuples to a temporary relation
  - sort the temporary relation by RoundedGPA to identify groups
  - apply the HAVING condition (to eliminate some groups)
- multiple-index access path - \*section uploaded in advance\*
  - several indexes using a2 / a3 match the selection condition, e.g., I1, I2
  - retrieve Rids<sub>I1</sub>, Rids<sub>I2</sub> using I1, I2
  - get tuples with rids in Rids<sub>I1</sub> ∩ Rids<sub>I2</sub> (tuples satisfying the primary selection terms of I1 and I2)
  - apply  $\pi$ , nonprimary selection terms
  - compute grouping and aggregation operations
  - example:
    - use the index on Age => rids of tuples with Age = 20 (R1)

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

\* plans that use an index:

- multiple-index access path – example:
  - index on RoundedGPA => rids of tuples with RoundedGPA > 5 (R2)
  - retrieve tuples with rids in  $R1 \cap R2$
  - keep only RoundedGPA and SName
  - write out tuples to a temporary relation
  - sort the temporary relation by RoundedGPA to identify groups
  - apply the HAVING condition (to eliminate some groups)
- sorted index access path:
  - works well when the index is clustered
  - B+ tree index I with search key K
  - GROUP BY attributes – prefix of K
  - use the index to retrieve tuples in the order required by the GROUP BY clause

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

\* plans that use an index:

- apply  $\sigma$ ,  $\pi$
  - compute aggregation operations
  - sorted index access path – example:
    - use the B+ tree index on RoundedGPA to retrieve Students tuples with RoundedGPA > 5, ordered by RoundedGPA
    - aggregations in HAVING, SELECT - computed on-the-fly
  - index-only access path:
    - index I with search key K
    - all the attributes in the query are included in K

=> index-only scan, don't need to retrieve tuples from the relation

    - data entries: apply  $\sigma$ , perform  $\pi$ , sort the result (to identify groups), compute aggregate operations
- \* obs. index I doesn't have to match the selections in the WHERE clause

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

\* plans that use an index:

- index-only access path

\* obs. I – tree index, GROUP BY attributes – prefix of K

=> can avoid sorting

- example:

- use the B+ tree index on <RoundedGPA, SName, Age> to retrieve entries with RoundedGPA > 5, ordered by RoundedGPA
- select entries with Age = 20
- aggregation operations in the HAVING and SELECT clauses - computed on-the-fly

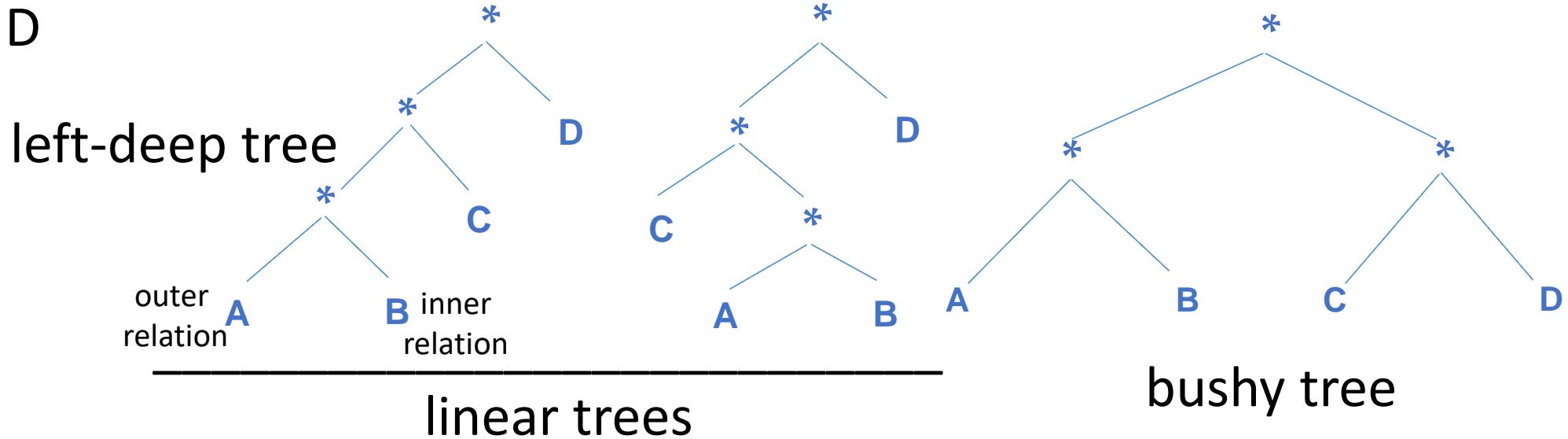
## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

- queries with several relations in the FROM clause:
  - joins, cross-products => queries can be quite expensive
  - different join orders => intermediate relations of widely varying sizes => plans with very different costs
- class of plans considered by the optimizer
- plan enumeration

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

- queries with several relations in the FROM clause

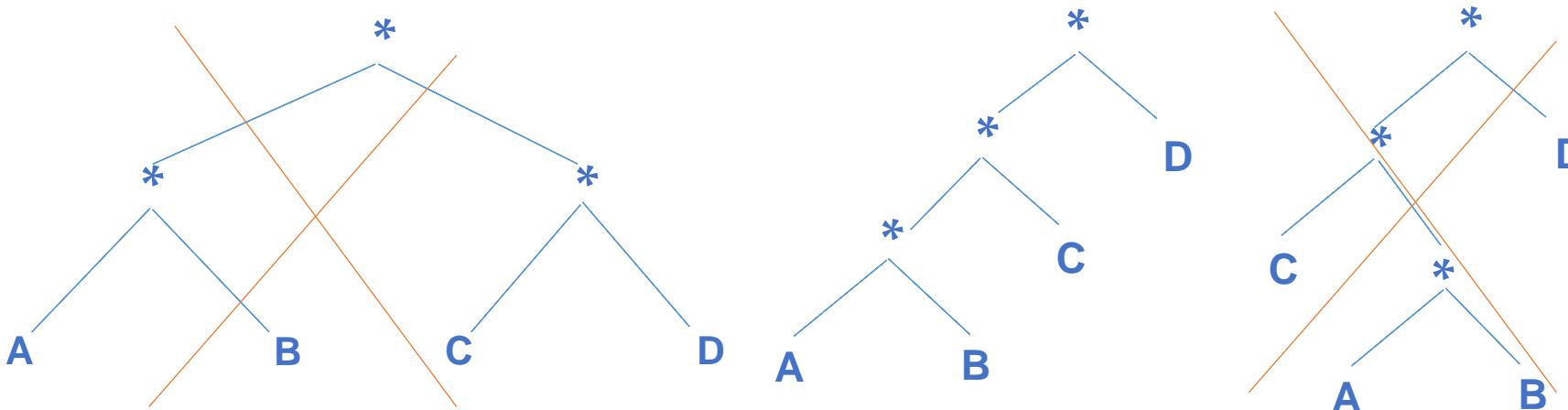
$A * B * C * D$



- linear trees:
  - at least one child of a join node is a base relation
- left-deep trees:
  - the right child of each join node is a base relation
- bushy tree: not linear

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

- queries with several relations in the FROM clause
- fundamental decision in System R:
  - only *left-deep trees* are considered



- motivation:
  - number of joins increases => number of alternative plans increases quickly => must prune the search space
  - left-deep trees generate all fully pipelined plans (all joins are evaluated using pipelining)

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

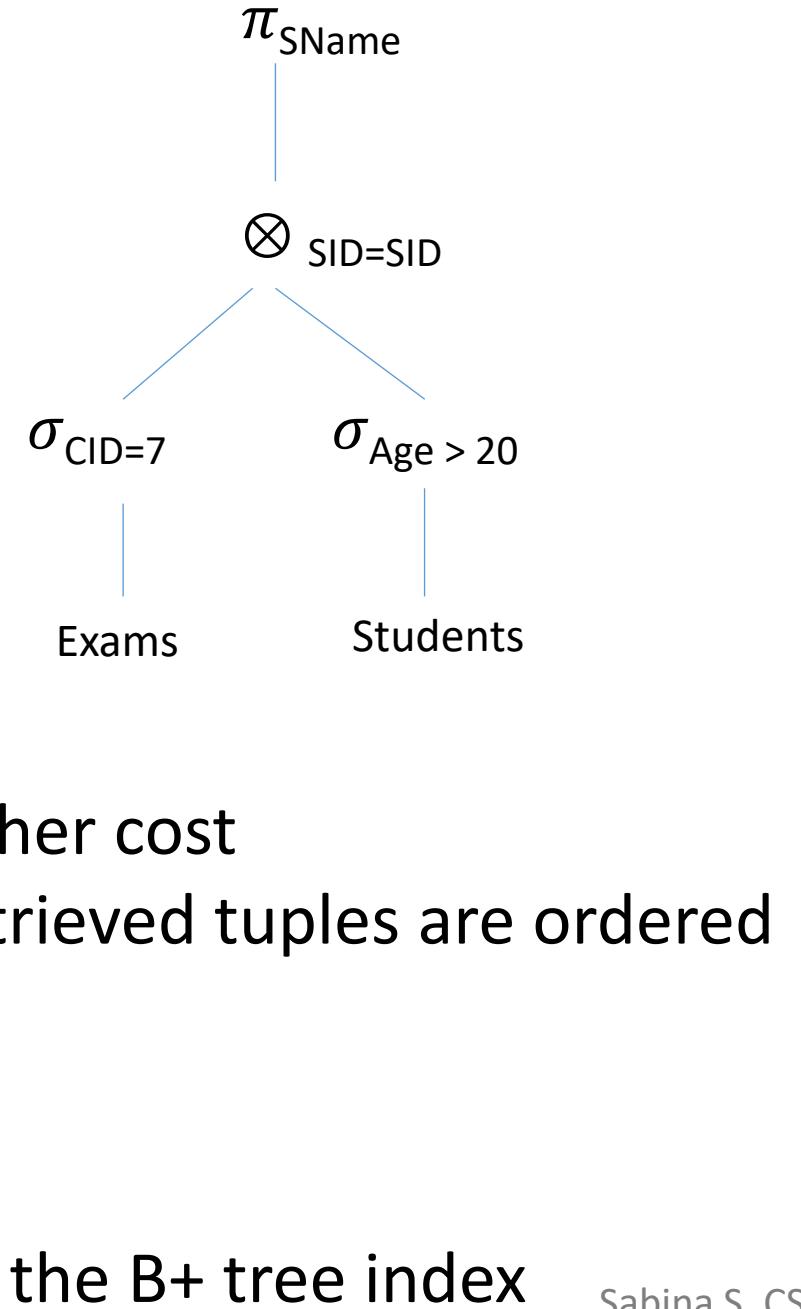
- queries with several relations in the FROM clause
- multiple passes:
  - pass 1:
    - find best 1-relation plan for each relation
  - pass 2:
    - find best way to join the result of each 1-relation plan (as the outer argument) with another relation (all 2-relation plans)
  - ...
  - repeat until the obtained plans contain all the relations in the query
- for each subset of relations, retain: the cheapest overall plan & the cheapest plan for each interesting ordering of tuples

## Enumeration of Alternative Plans

- queries with several relations in the FROM clause
  - GROUP BY, aggregates are handled as a final step:
    - use a plan with an interesting ordering of tuples
    - use an additional sorting operator
- obs. avoid cross-products if possible

## Example

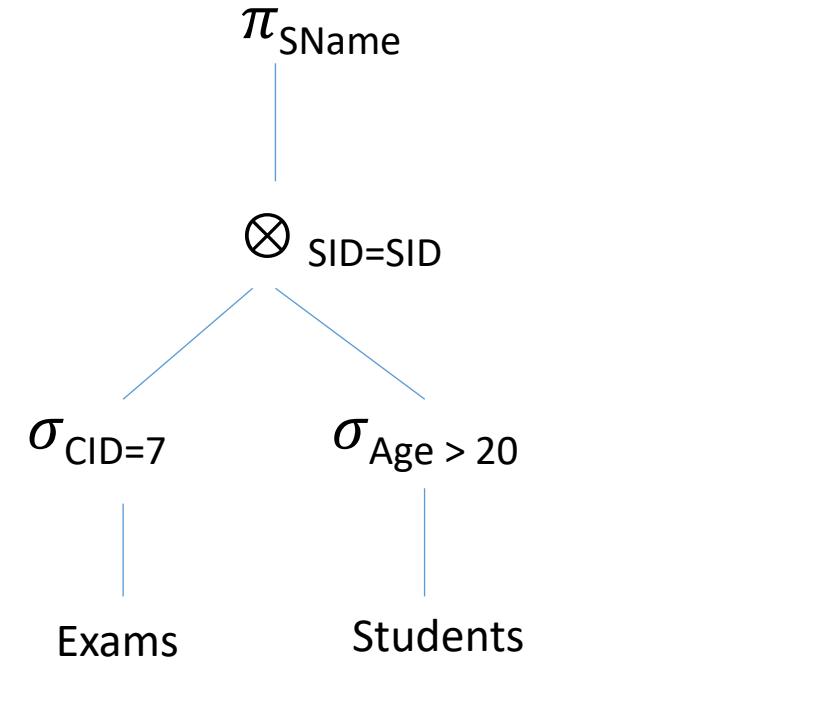
- unclustered indexes using a2
- Students: B+ tree index on Age, hash index on SID
- Exams: B+ tree index on CID
- pass 1:
  - Students – 3 possible access paths:  
B+ tree index, hash index, file scan
    - *Age > 20* matches the B+ tree index  
on Age
    - hash index / file scan => probably much higher cost
    - keep the plan using the B+ tree index => retrieved tuples are ordered by Age
  - Exams – 2 possible access paths
    - *CID = 7* matches the B+ tree index on CID
    - better than file scan => keep the plan using the B+ tree index



## Example

- Students: B+ tree index on Age, hash index on SID
- Exams: B+ tree index on CID
- pass 2:

- consider (the result of) each plan from pass 1 as the outer argument and analyze how to join it with the other relation
- e.g., Exams – outer argument
  - examine alternative access methods / join methods
  - access methods:
    - need Students tuples s.t. SID = *value* from outer tuple and Age > 20
    - hash index => Students tuples s.t. SID = *value* from outer tuple
    - B+ tree index => Students tuples s.t. Age > 20
  - join methods:
    - consider all available methods



## Example

- Students: B+ tree index on Age, hash index on SID
- Exams: B+ tree index on CID
- pass 2:
  - consider (the result of) each plan from pass 1 as the outer argument and analyze how to join it with the other relation
  - e.g., Students – outer argument
    - access / join methods
    - access methods:
      - need Exams tuples s.t. SID = *value* from outer tuple and CID = 7
    - join methods:
      - consider all available methods
  - retain cheapest plan overall!

## Nested Queries

- usually handled using some form of nested loops evaluation
- correlated query - typical evaluation strategy:
  - the inner block is evaluated for each tuple of the outer block
- some strategies are not considered
  - e.g., index on SID in Students
  - best plan could be INLJ with Exams as the outer argument, and Students as the inner one; such a plan is never considered by the optimizer
- the unnested version of the query is typically optimized better

```
SELECT S.SName  
FROM Students S  
WHERE EXISTS  
(SELECT *  
FROM Exams E  
WHERE E.CID=7  
AND E.SID=S.SID)
```

Equivalent unnested query:  
SELECT S.SName  
FROM Students S, Exams E  
WHERE E.SID=S.SID AND E.CID = 7

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 11  
Distributed Databases

- \* centralized DB systems

- all data at a single site
- assumed each transaction is processed sequentially
- centralized lock management
- processor fails => entire system fails

- \* distributed systems

- the data is stored at several sites
- each site is managed by a DBMS that can run independently; these autonomous components can also be heterogeneous

=> impact on: query processing, query optimization, concurrency control, recovery

# Distributed Database Systems

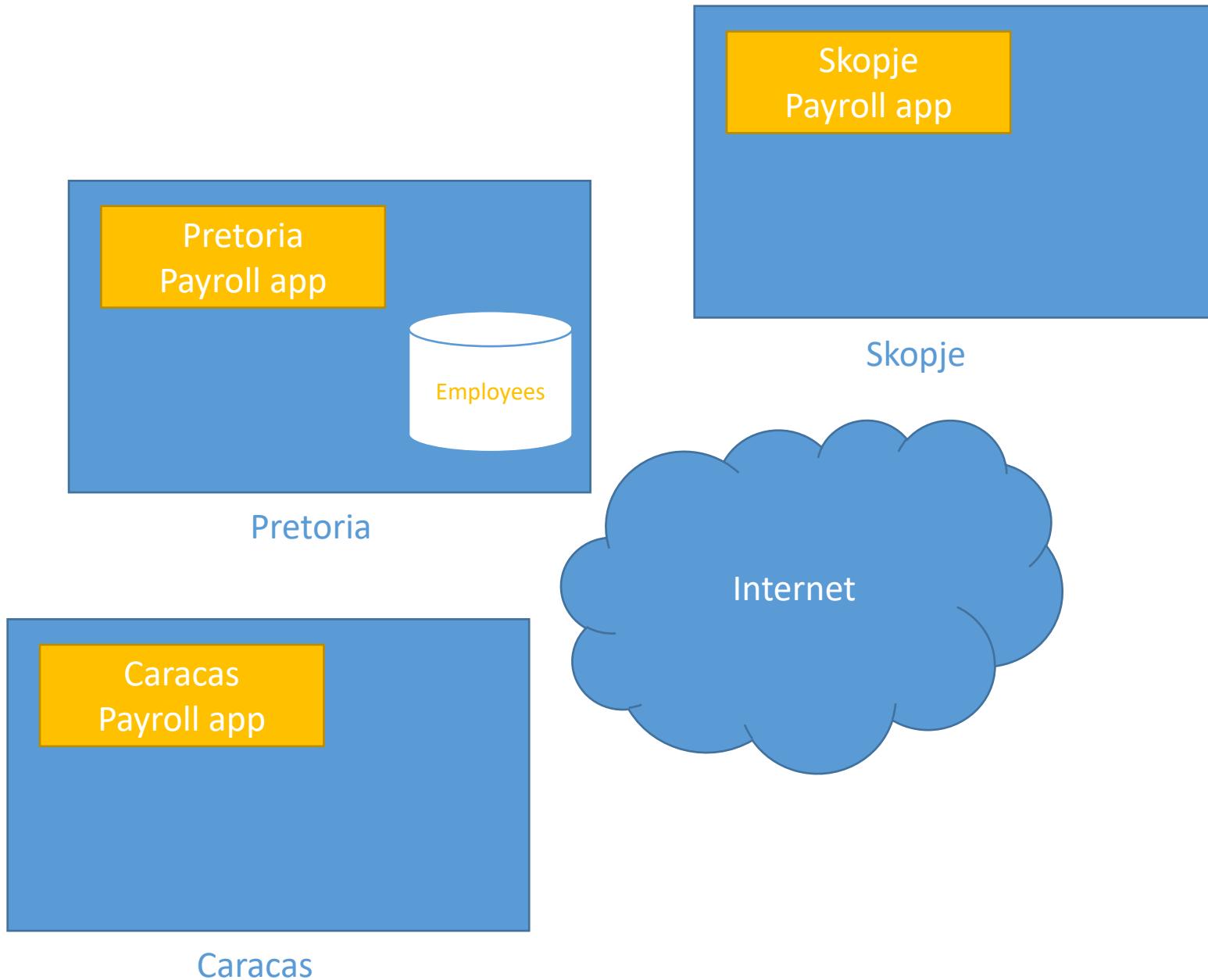
\* properties:

- distributed data independence (extension of the physical and logical data independence principles):
  - users can write queries without knowing / specifying the actual location of the data
  - cost-based query optimization that takes into account communication costs & differences in computation costs across sites
- distributed transaction atomicity
  - users can write transactions accessing multiple sites just as they would write local transactions
  - transactions are still atomic (if the transaction commits, all its changes persist; if it aborts, none of its changes persist)

## Distributed Databases - Motivating Example

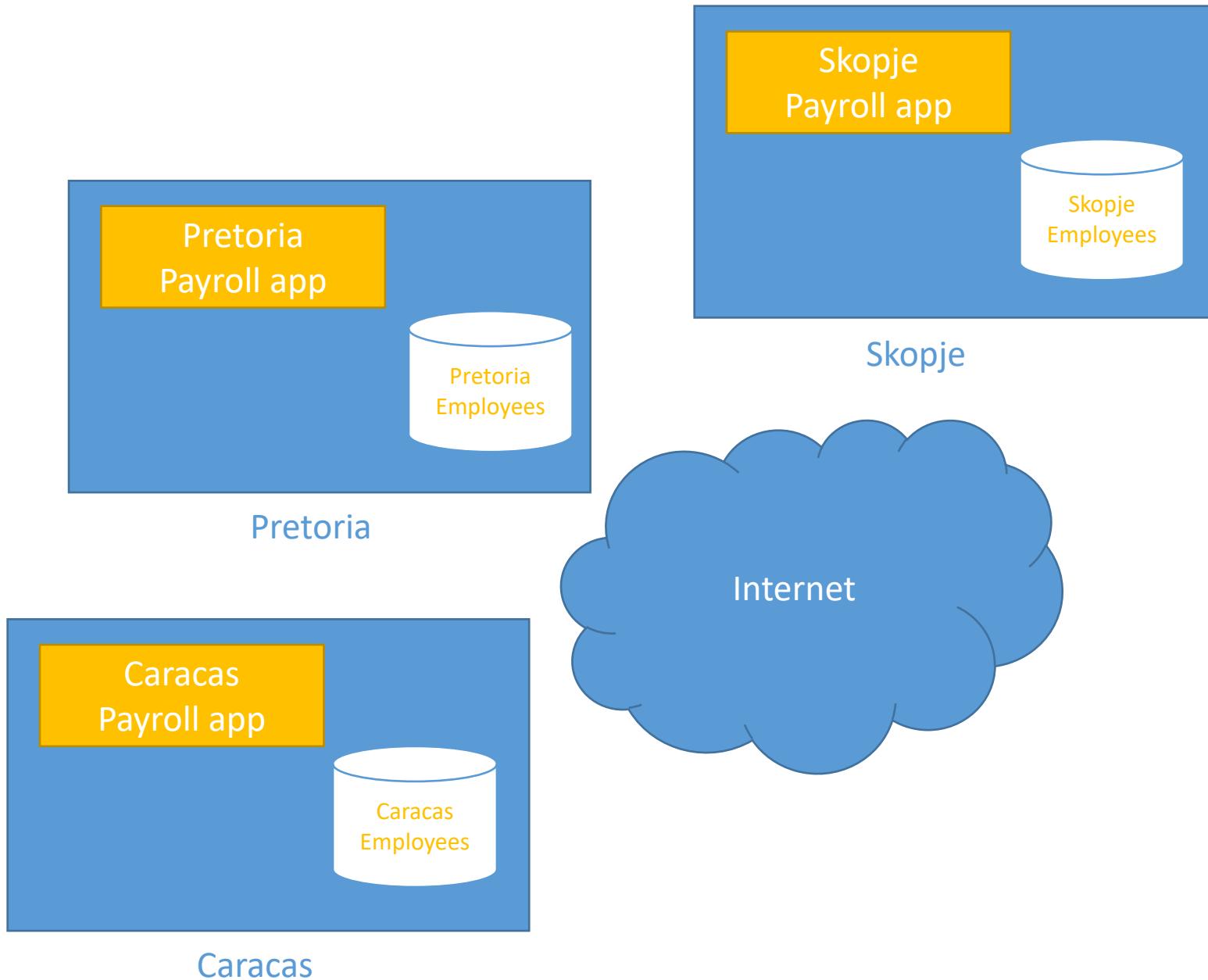
- company with offices in Pretoria, Skopje, Caracas
- in general, an employee's data is managed from the office where the employee works (payroll, benefits, hiring data, etc)
  - for instance, data about Skopje employees is managed from the Skopje office
- periodically, the company needs access to all employees' data, e.g.:
  - compute the total payroll expenses
  - compute the annual bonus, which depends on the global net profit
- where should we store employee data?

# Distributed Databases - Motivating Example



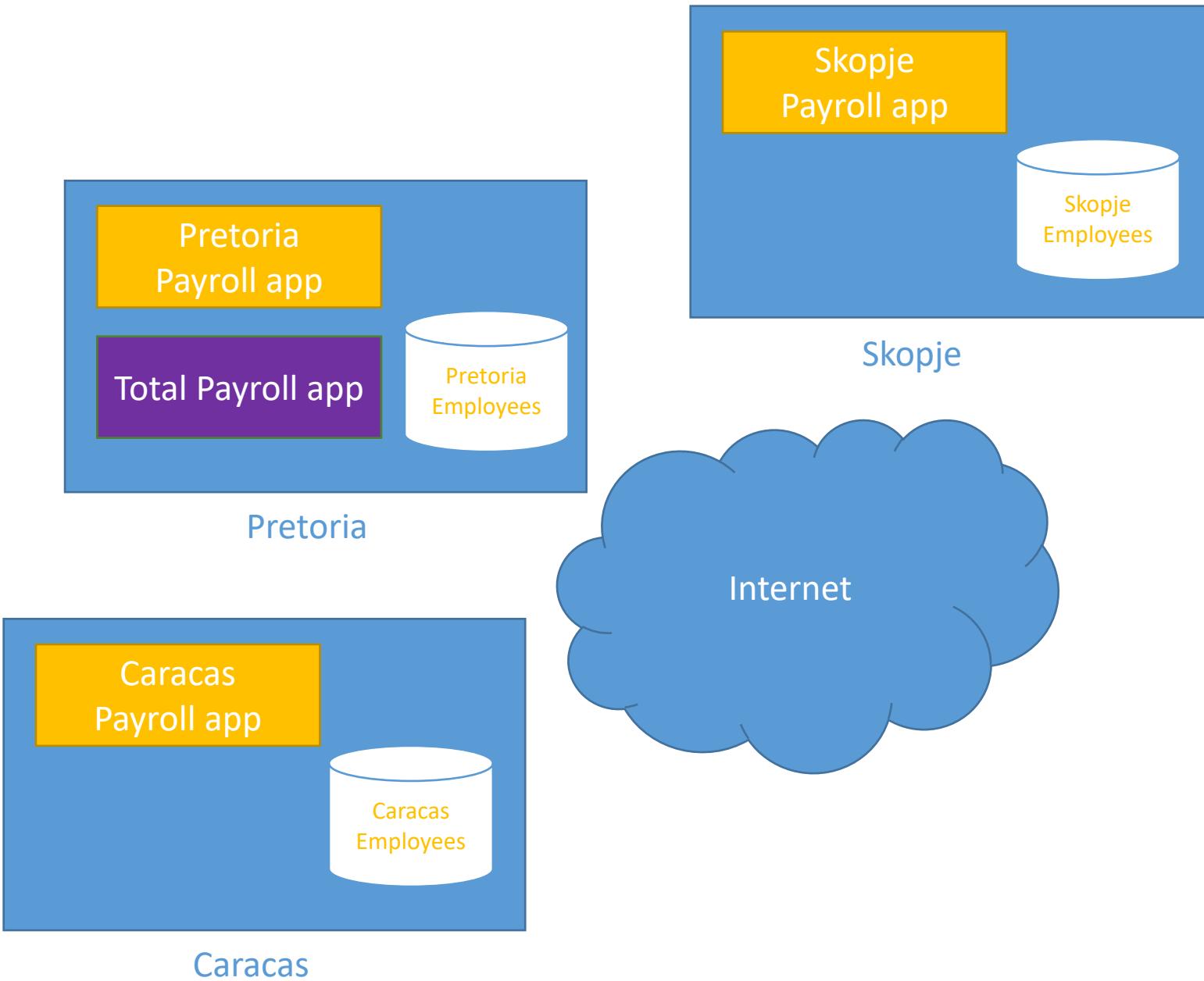
- *SiteX* payroll app – computing payrolls for *SiteX* employees
- suppose the DB is stored at the company's headquarters in Pretoria  
=> slow-running payroll apps in Caracas and Skopje
- moreover, if the Pretoria site becomes unavailable, payroll apps in Caracas and Skopje cannot access the required data

# Distributed Databases - Motivating Example



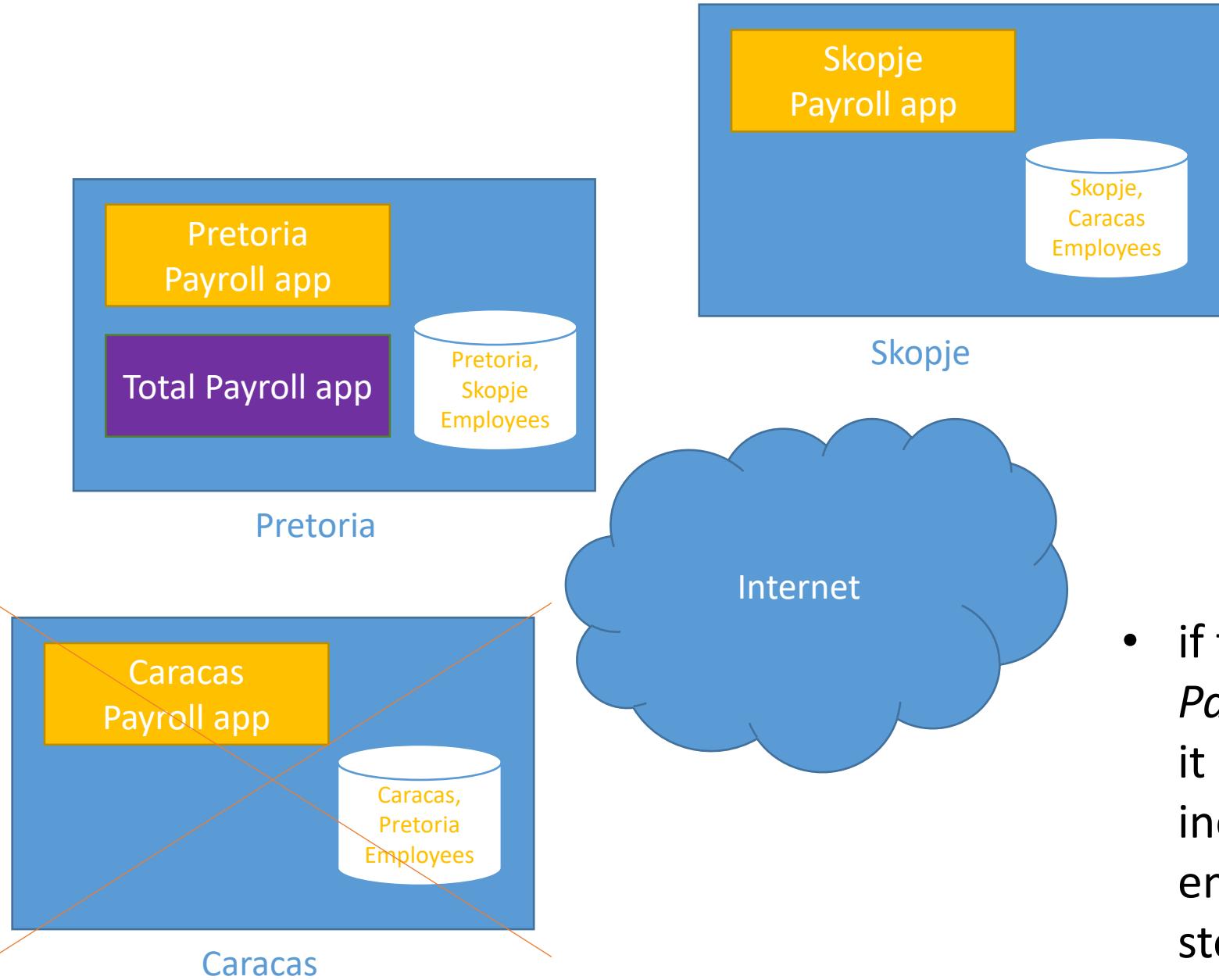
- store data about Pretoria employees in Pretoria, about Skopje employees in Skopje, etc  
=> improved performance for payroll apps in Caracas and Skopje
- if the Pretoria site becomes unavailable, payroll apps in Caracas and Skopje are still operational (as these apps only need data about Caracas employees and about Skopje employees, respectively)

# Distributed Databases - Motivating Example



- *Total Payroll app* (at the company's headquarters in Pretoria) computing the total payroll expenses
- this app needs to access employee data at all 3 sites, so generating the final results will last a little longer
- if the Caracas site crashes, the *Total Payroll app* cannot access all required data
- opportunities for parallel execution

# Distributed Databases - Motivating Example



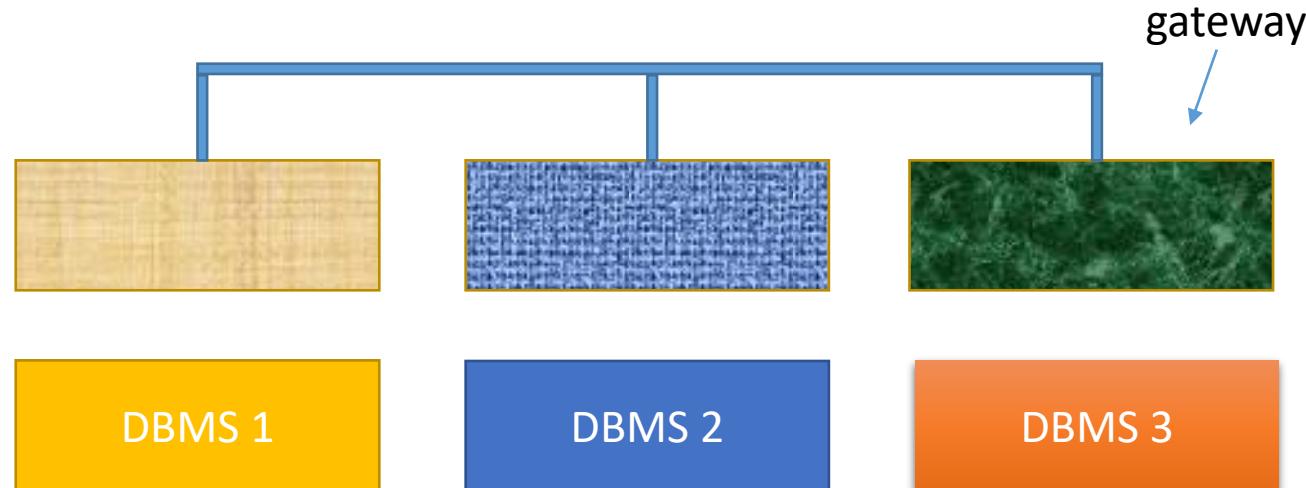
- data replication: at *Site X*, store data about *Site X* employees and data about employees from a different site, e.g., store data about Pretoria employees and Skopje employees in Pretoria (a copy of the Skopje employees data, which is stored in Skopje)
- if the Caracas site crashes, the *Total Payroll app* can continue to work, as it can access all required data, including data about the Caracas employees (a copy of this data being stored in Skopje)

# Types of Distributed Databases

- homogeneous:
  - the same DBMS software at every site
- heterogeneous (multidatabase system):
  - different DBMSs at different sites

\* *gateway protocols*:

- mask differences between different database servers



# Distributed Databases - Challenges

## \* distributed database design:

- deciding where to store the data
- depends on the data access patterns of the most important applications (how are they accessing the data)
- two sub-problems: *fragmentation* and *allocation*

## \* distributed query processing:

- centralized query plan (treated in previous lectures)
  - objective: minimize the number of disk I/Os; execute the query as fast as possible
- distributed context – there are additional factors to consider:
  - communication costs
  - opportunity for parallelism

=> the space of possible query plans for a given query is much larger!

## Distributed Databases - Challenges

### \* distributed concurrency control:

- serializability
- distributed deadlock management (e.g., deadlock involving transactions T1 and T2, with T1 executing at site S1, and T2 executing at site S2)

### \* reliability of distributed databases:

- transaction failures
  - one or more processors may fail
  - the network may fail
- data must be synchronized

## Storing Data in a Distributed DBMS

- accessing relations at remote sites => communication costs
  - \* example:
    - Pretoria: the site stores the *Employees* relation, holding data about all employees in the company
    - Skopje: a local manager wants to obtain the average salary for Skopje employees; she must access the relation stored in Pretoria
  - reduce such costs: *fragmentation / replication*
    - a relation can be partitioned into *fragments*, which are stored across several sites (a fragment is kept where it's most often accessed)
- \* example:
  - partition the *Employees* relation into fragments *PretoriaEmployees*, *SkopjeEmployees*, etc
  - store fragment *PretoriaEmployees* in Pretoria, fragment *SkopjeEmployees* in Skopje, etc

## Storing Data in a Distributed DBMS

- accessing relations at remote sites => communication costs
- reduce such costs: *fragmentation / replication*
  - a relation can be *replicated* at each site where it's needed the most
    - \* example:
      - suppose the *Employees* relation is frequently needed in Beijing, New York, and Bucharest
      - *Employees* can be replicated at the Bucharest site, the New York one, and in Beijing

# Storing Data in a Distributed DBMS

\* *fragmentation*: break a relation into smaller relations (fragments); store the fragments instead of the relation itself

- *horizontal / vertical / hybrid*

\* example – relation Accounts(accnum, name, balance, branch):

- horizontal fragmentation

- fragment: subset of rows
- n selection predicates => n fragments (n record sets)
- horizontal fragments should be disjoint
- reconstruct the original relation: take the union of the horizontal fragments
- $\sigma_{\text{branch}=\text{'Eroilor'}}(\text{Accounts})$ ,  
 $\sigma_{\text{branch}=\text{'Napoca'}}(\text{Accounts})$ ,  
 $\sigma_{\text{branch}=\text{'Motilor'}}(\text{Accounts}) \Rightarrow$

| R                      |
|------------------------|
| 1, Radu, 250, Eroilor  |
| 2, Ana, 200, Napoca    |
| 3, Ionel, 150, Motilor |
| 4, Maria, 400, Eroilor |
| 5, Andi, 600, Napoca   |
| 6, Calin, 250, Eroilor |
| 7, Iulia, 350, Motilor |

|    |                                                                           |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| R1 | 1, Radu, 250, Eroilor<br>4, Maria, 400, Eroilor<br>6, Calin, 250, Eroilor |
| R2 | 2, Ana, 200, Napoca<br>5, Andi, 600, Napoca                               |
| R3 | 3, Ionel, 150, Motilor<br>7, Iulia, 350, Motilor                          |

# Storing Data in a Distributed DBMS

- vertical fragmentation
  - fragment: subset of columns
  - performed using projection operators
    - must obtain a good decomposition\*
    - reconstruction operator: natural join
      - $\pi_{\{\text{accnum}, \text{name}\}}(\text{Accounts})$
      - $\pi_{\{\text{accnum}, \text{balance}, \text{branch}\}}(\text{Accounts})$
- hybrid fragmentation
  - horizontal fragmentation + vertical fragmentation

| R1       | R2              |
|----------|-----------------|
| 1, Radu  | 1, 250, Eroilor |
| 2, Ana   | 2, 200, Napoca  |
| 3, Ionel | 3, 150, Motilor |
| 4, Maria | 4, 400, Eroilor |
| 5, Andi  | 5, 600, Napoca  |
| 6, Calin | 6, 250, Eroilor |
| 7, Iulia | 7, 350, Motilor |

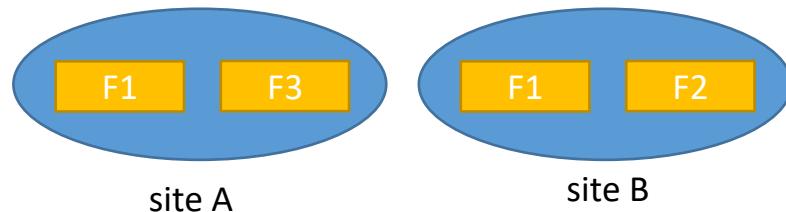
| R1       | R2              |
|----------|-----------------|
| 1, Radu  | 1, 250, Eroilor |
| 2, Ana   | 2, 200, Napoca  |
| 3, Ionel | 3, 150, Motilor |
| 6, Calin | 6, 250, Eroilor |
| R3       | R4              |
| 4, Maria | 4, 400, Eroilor |
| 5, Andi  | 5, 600, Napoca  |
| 7, Iulia | 7, 350, Motilor |

\* see *Databases – Normal Forms*

## Storing Data in a Distributed DBMS

\* *replication*: store multiple copies of a relation or of a relation fragment; an entire relation or one or several fragments of a relation can be replicated at one or several sites

\* example: relation R is partitioned into fragments F1, F2, F3; fragment F1 is stored at site A and at site B:



- motivation:
  - increased availability of data: query Q uses fragment F1 from site A; if site A goes down or a communication link fails, the query can use another active server (e.g., site B)
  - faster query evaluation: can use a local copy of the data to avoid communication costs, e.g., query Q at site A can use the local copy of F1, it doesn't need to access the copy of F1 from site B
- types of replication: synchronous versus asynchronous
  - how are the copies of the data kept current when the relation is changed

## Updating Distributed Data

- synchronous replication:
  - suppose relation R has 3 copies: R1, R2, R3
  - transaction T modifies relation R
  - before T commits, it synchronizes all copies of R (R1, R2, R3 and R all contain the same data)
- => data distribution is transparent to the user: when reading relation R, the user doesn't need to know which copy of R it accesses, as all copies store correct, current data
- asynchronous replication:
  - transaction T modifies relation R
  - R's copies (R1, R2, R3) are synchronized periodically, i.e., it's possible that some of R's copies are outdated for brief periods of time
  - a transaction T2 reading 2 different copies of R (say R1 and R3) may see different data; but in the end, all copies of R will be synchronized

## Updating Distributed Data

- asynchronous replication:

=> users must be aware of the fact that the data is distributed, i.e., distributed data independence is compromised

- a lot of current systems are using this approach

## Updating Distributed Data – Synchronous Replication

- transaction T, object O (with several copies)
  - objective:
    - no matter which copy of O it accesses, T should see the same value
    - 2 basic techniques: *voting* and *read-any write-all*
- \* *voting*
- to modify O, a transaction T1 must write a majority of its copies
  - when reading O, a transaction T2 must read enough copies to make sure it's seeing at least one current copy
  - e.g., O has 10 copies; T1 changes O: suppose T1 writes 7 copies of O; T2 reads O: it should read at least 4 copies to make sure at least one of them is current
  - each copy has a version number (the copy that is current has the highest version number)

## Updating Distributed Data – Synchronous Replication

### \* *voting*

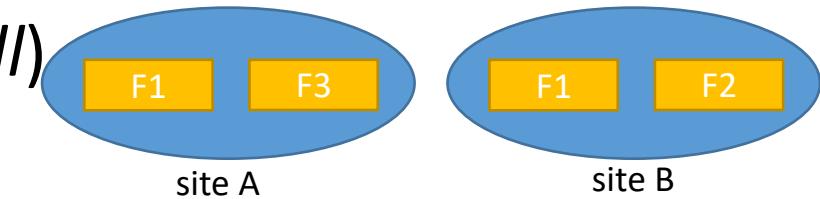
- not an attractive approach in most cases, because reads are usually much more common than writes (and reads are expensive in this approach)

### \* *read-any write-all*

- transaction T1 modifies O: T1 must write all copies of O
- transaction T2 reads O: T2 can read any copy of O (no matter which copy T2 reads, it will see current data, as T1 wrote all copies of O)
- fast reads (only one copy is read), slower writes (compared with the voting technique)
- most common approach to synchronous replication

## Updating Distributed Data – Synchronous Replication Costs

- before an update transaction T can commit, it must lock all copies of the modified relation / fragment (with *read-any write-all*)
  - suppose relation R is partitioned into fragments F1, F2, F3, stored at sites A and B (with F1 being stored at both sites)
  - if transaction T changes fragment F1 at site A, it must also lock the copy of F1 stored at site B!
  - such a transaction sends lock requests to remote sites; while waiting for the response, the transaction holds on to its other locks
- if there's a site or link failure, transaction T cannot commit until the network / involved sites are back up (if site B becomes unavailable in the example above, transaction T cannot commit until site B comes back up)
- even if there are no failures and locks are immediately obtained, T must follow an expensive commit protocol when committing (with several messages being exchanged) => asynchronous replication is more used



## Updating Distributed Data – Asynchronous Replication

- transaction T1 modifies object O; T1 is allowed to commit before all copies of O have been changed
  - => users must know:
    - which copy they are reading
    - that copies may be outdated for brief periods of time
- two approaches:
  - *primary site replication*
  - *peer-to-peer replication*
- \* difference: number of *updatable copies (master copies)*

# Updating Distributed Data – Asynchronous Replication

## \* *peer-to-peer* replication

- several copies of an object O can be *master copies* (i.e., updatable)
- changes to a master copy are propagated to the other copies of object O
- need a conflict resolution strategy for cases when two master copies are changed in a conflicting manner:
  - e.g., master copies at site 1 and site 2; at site 1: Dana's city is changed to Cluj-Napoca; at site 2: Dana's city is changed to Timișoara; which value is correct?
  - in general - ad hoc approaches to conflict resolution

# Updating Distributed Data – Asynchronous Replication

\* *peer-to-peer* replication

- best utilized when conflicts do not arise:
  - each master site owns a fragment (usually a horizontal fragment) and any 2 fragments that can be updated by different master sites are disjoint
    - \* example: store relation *Employees* at Skopje and Caracas
      - data about Skopje employees can only be updated in Skopje
      - data about Caracas employees can only be updated in Caracas
- updating rights are held by only one master site at a time

# Updating Distributed Data – Asynchronous Replication

## \* *primary site* replication

- exactly one copy of an object O is chosen as the *primary (master)* copy; this copy is published at the *primary* site
- secondary copies of the object (copies of the relation or copies of relation fragments) can be created at other sites (*secondary* sites)
- can subscribe to the primary copy or to fragments of the primary copy
- changes to the primary copy are propagated to the secondary copies in 2 steps:
  - *capture* the changes made by committed transactions
  - *apply* these changes to secondary copies

# Updating Distributed Data – Asynchronous Replication

## \* *primary site* replication

- capture: *log-based capture / procedural capture*
  - log-based capture:
    - the log (kept for recovery purposes) is used to generate the *Change Data Table* (CDT) structure: write log tail to stable storage => write all log records affecting replicated relations to the CDT
    - changes of aborted transactions must be removed from the CDT
    - in the end, CDT contains only update log records of committed transactions
    - suppose committed transaction T1 has executed 3 UPDATE operations on (the replicated) relation *Employees*; then the CDT will include 3 update log records, describing the UPDATE operations

# Updating Distributed Data – Asynchronous Replication

\* *primary site* replication

- capture: *log-based capture / procedural capture*
  - procedural capture
    - capture is performed through a procedure that is automatically invoked (e.g., a trigger)
    - the procedure takes a snapshot of the primary copy
    - *snapshot*: a copy of the relation
  - log-based capture:
    - smaller overhead and smaller delay, but it depends on proprietary log details

# Updating Distributed Data – Asynchronous Replication

## \* *primary site* replication

- apply
  - applies changes collected in the Capture step (from the Change Data Table or snapshot) to the secondary copies:
    - the primary site can continuously send the CDT
    - or the secondary sites can periodically request a snapshot or (the latest portion of) the CDT from the primary site
    - each secondary site runs a copy of the Apply process

# Updating Distributed Data – Asynchronous Replication

## \* *primary site* replication

- the replica could be a view over the modified relation
  - replication: incrementally updating the view as the relation changes
- log-based capture + continuous apply
  - minimizes delay in propagating changes
- procedural capture + application-driven apply
  - most flexible way to process changes

# Distributed Query Processing

Researchers(RID: integer, Name: string, ImpactF: integer, Age: real)

AuthorContribution(RID: integer, PID: integer, Year: integer, Coord: string)

- Researchers
  - 1 tuple - 50 bytes
  - 1 page - 80 tuples
  - 500 pages
- AuthorContribution
  - 1 tuple - 40 bytes
  - 1 page - 100 tuples
  - 1000 pages
- estimate the cost of evaluation strategies:
  - number of I/O operations and number of pages shipped among sites, i.e., take into account communication costs
  - use  $t_d$  to denote the time to read / write a page from / to disk
  - use  $t_s$  to denote the time to ship a page from one site to another (e.g., from Skopje to Caracas)

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* nonjoin queries in a distributed DBMS

- impact of fragmentation / replication on simple operations
- scanning a relation, selection, projection
- horizontal fragmentation
  - all Researchers tuples with  $\text{ImpactF} < 6$  - stored at New York
  - all Researchers tuples with  $\text{ImpactF} \geq 6$  - stored at Lisbon

Q1 .

```
SELECT R.Age  
FROM Researchers R  
WHERE R.ImpactF > 4 AND R.ImpactF < 10
```

- the DBMS evaluates the query at New York and Lisbon, then takes the union of the obtained results to produce the result set for query Q1

## Distributed Query Processing

\* nonjoin queries in a distributed DBMS

- horizontal fragmentation

Q2.

```
SELECT AVG(R.Age)
FROM Researchers R
WHERE R.ImpactF > 4 AND R.ImpactF < 10
```

- the DBMS computes  $\text{SUM}(\text{Age})$  and number of Age values at New York and Lisbon; then based on this information, it computes the average age of all researchers with ImpactF in the specified range

Q3.

```
SELECT ...
FROM Researchers R
WHERE R.ImpactF > 7
```

- in this case, the DBMS evaluates the query only at Lisbon

# Distributed Query Processing

\* nonjoin queries in a distributed DBMS

- vertical fragmentation
  - RID, ImpactF - stored at New York (for all researchers)
  - Name, Age - stored at Lisbon (for all researchers)
  - the DBMS adds a field that contains the id of the corresponding tuple from Researchers to both fragments and rebuilds the Researchers relation by joining the 2 fragments on the common field (the tuple-id field)
  - the DBMS then evaluates the query over the reconstructed relation

# Distributed Query Processing

\* nonjoin queries in a distributed DBMS

- replication
  - Researchers relation stored at both New York and Lisbon
  - then Q1, Q2, Q3 can be executed at either New York or Lisbon
  - choosing the execution site - factors to consider:
    - the cost of shipping the result to the query site (e.g., the query site could be New York, Lisbon, or a 3<sup>rd</sup>, distinct site)
    - local processing costs:
      - can vary from one site to another
      - e.g., check the available indexes on Researchers at New York and Lisbon

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- can be quite expensive if the relations are stored at different sites
- Researchers stored at New York
- AuthorContribution stored at Lisbon
- evaluate *Researchers join AuthorContribution*

->

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

## \* fetch as needed

- page-oriented nested loops in New York
    - Researchers - outer relation
    - for every page in Researchers, bring in all the AuthorContribution pages from Lisbon
    - cost
      - scan Researchers:  $500t_d$
      - scan AuthorContribution + ship all AuthorContribution pages (for every Researchers page):  $1000(t_d + t_s)$
- => total cost:  $500t_d + 500,000(t_d + t_s)$

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

## \* fetch as needed

- page-oriented nested loops in New York
  - obs. bring in all AuthorContribution pages for each Researchers tuple => much higher cost
  - optimization
    - bring in AuthorContribution pages only once from Lisbon to New York
    - cache AuthorContribution pages at New York until the join is complete

## Distributed Query Processing

- join queries in a distributed DBMS
  - Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

### \* fetch as needed

- page-oriented nested loops in New York
  - query not submitted at New York  
=> add the cost of shipping the result to the query site
  - RID - key in Researchers  
=> the result has 100,000 tuples (the number of tuples in AuthorContribution)
  - the size of a tuple in the result
    - $40 + 50 = 90$  bytes
    - the number of result tuples / page
      - $4000 / 90 = 44$

## Distributed Query Processing

- join queries in a distributed DBMS
  - Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

### \* fetch as needed

- page-oriented nested loops in New York
  - query not submitted at New York
  - number of pages necessary to hold all the result tuples
    - $100,000/44 = 2273$  pages
  - the cost of shipping the result to another site (if necessary)
    - $2273 t_s$
    - higher than the cost of shipping both Researchers and AuthorContribution to the site ( $1500 t_s$ )

## References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Da03] DATE, C.J., An Introduction to Database Systems (8<sup>th</sup> Edition), Addison-Wesley, 2003
- [Ga09] GARCIA-MOLINA, H., ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., Database Systems: The Complete Book (2nd Edition), Pearson, 2009
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si19] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (7th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2019
- [Ul11] ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., A First Course in Database Systems,  
<http://infolab.stanford.edu/~ullman/fcdb.html>

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 12  
Distributed Databases

# Distributed Query Processing

Researchers(RID: integer, Name: string, ImpactF: integer, Age: real)

AuthorContribution(RID: integer, PID: integer, Year: integer, Coord: string)

- Researchers
  - 1 tuple - 50 bytes
  - 1 page - 80 tuples
  - 500 pages
- AuthorContribution
  - 1 tuple - 40 bytes
  - 1 page - 100 tuples
  - 1000 pages

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

## \* fetch as needed

- index nested loops join in New York
  - AuthorContribution - unclustered hash index on RID
  - 100,000 AuthorContribution tuples, 40,000 Researchers tuples
  - on average, a researcher has 2.5 corresponding tuples in AuthorContribution
  - for each Researchers tuple, retrieve the 2.5 corresponding tuples in AuthorContribution:
    - obtain the index page:  $1.2 t_d$  (on average)
      - +
        - read the matching records in AuthorContribution:  $2.5 t_d$

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

## \* fetch as needed

- index nested loops join in New York
    - for each Researchers tuple, retrieve the 2.5 corresponding tuples in AuthorContribution:  
=> cost per Researchers tuple:  $(1.2 + 2.5)t_d$ 
      - the pages containing these 2.5 tuples must also be shipped from Lisbon to New York
- => total cost:  $500t_d + 40.000(3.7t_d + 2.5t_s)$  (there are 40.000 records in Researchers)

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

## \* ship to one site

- ship Researchers to Lisbon, compute the join at Lisbon
    - scan Researchers, ship it to Lisbon, save Researchers at Lisbon:
      - cost:  $500(2t_d + t_s)$
      - compute *Researchers join AuthorContribution* at Lisbon
        - example: use improved version of Sort-Merge Join
          - combine the merging phase of sorting with the merging phase of the join => SMJ cost:  $3(\text{number of R pages} + \text{number of A pages})$
          - SMJ cost:  $3(500 + 1000) = 4500t_d$
- => total cost:  $500(2t_d + t_s) + 4500t_d$

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

## \* ship to one site

- ship Researchers to Lisbon, compute the join at Lisbon
  - total cost:  $500(2t_d + t_s) + 4500t_d$
- ship AuthorContribution to New York, compute the join at New York
  - total cost:  $1000(2t_d + t_s) + 4500t_d$

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

## \* semijoin

- at New York:
  - project Researchers onto the join columns (RID)
  - ship the projection to Lisbon
- at Lisbon:
  - join the Researchers projection with AuthorContribution
  - => the so-called *reduction of AuthorContribution with respect to Researchers*
  - ship the reduction of AuthorContribution to New York
- at New York:
  - join Researchers with the reduction of AuthorContribution

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

## \* semijoin

- tradeoff:
  - the cost of computing and shipping the projection  
+  
• the cost of computing and shipping the reduction versus
    - the cost of shipping the entire AuthorContribution relation
  - very useful if there is a selection on one of the relations

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

## \* bloomjoin

- at New York:
  - compute a bit-vector of some size k
    - hash Researchers tuples (using the join column RID) into the range 0 to k-1
    - if some tuple hashes to  $i$ , set bit  $i$  to 1 (i from 0 to k-1)
      - otherwise (no tuple hashes to  $i$ ), set bit  $i$  to 0
    - ship the bit-vector to Lisbon
- at Lisbon:
  - hash each AuthorContribution tuple (using the join column RID) into the range 0 to k-1, with the same hash function

# Distributed Query Processing

## \* join queries in a distributed DBMS

- Researchers R - New York, AuthorContribution A - Lisbon, R join A

## \* bloomjoin

- at Lisbon:
  - discard tuples with a hash value  $i$  that corresponds to a 0 bit in the Researchers bit-vector  
 $\Rightarrow$  *reduction of AuthorContribution with respect to Researchers*
  - ship the reduction to New York
- at New York:
  - join Researchers with the reduction

## Distributed Catalog Management

- keeping track of data distribution across sites
- one should be able to identify each replica of each fragment for a relation that is fragmented and replicated
- local autonomy should not be compromised
  - solution - names containing several fields:
    - global relation name:
      - $\langle \text{local-name}, \text{birth-site} \rangle$
    - global replica name:
      - $\langle \text{local-name}, \text{birth-site}, \text{replica\_id} \rangle$

# Distributed Catalog Management

- centralized system catalog
  - stored at a single site
  - contains data about all the relations, fragments, replicas
  - vulnerable to single-site failures
  - can overload the server

## Distributed Catalog Management

- global system catalog maintained at each site
  - every copy of the catalog describes all the data
  - not vulnerable to single-site failures (the data can be obtained from a different site)
  - local autonomy is compromised:
    - changes to a local catalog must be propagated to all the other sites

## Distributed Catalog Management

- local catalog maintained at each site
  - each site keeps a catalog that describes local data, i.e., copies of data stored at the site
  - the catalog at the birth-site for a relation keeps track of all the fragments / replicas of the relation
  - create a new replica / move a replica to another site:
    - must update the catalog at the birth-site
  - not vulnerable to single-site failures & doesn't compromise local autonomy

# Distributed Transaction Management

- a transaction submitted at a site S could ask for data stored at several other sites
- *subtransaction* - the activity of a transaction at a given site
- context: Strict 2PL with deadlock detection
- problems:
  - distributed concurrency control
    - lock management when objects are stored across several sites
    - deadlock detection
  - distributed recovery
    - transaction atomicity
      - all the effects of a committed transaction (across all the sites it executes at) are permanent
      - none of the actions of an aborted transaction are allowed to persist

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed concurrency control
  - lock management
    - techniques – synchronous / asynchronous replication
      - which objects will be locked
    - concurrency control protocols
      - when are locks acquired / released
    - lock management
      - *centralized*
      - *primary copy*
      - *fully distributed*

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed concurrency control
  - lock management
    - centralized:
      - one site does all the locking for all the objects
      - vulnerable to single-site failures
    - primary copy:
      - object O, primary copy PC of O stored at site S with lock manager L
      - all requests to lock / unlock some copy of O are handled by L
      - not vulnerable to single-site failures
      - read some copy C of O stored at site S2:  
=> communicate with both S and S2

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed concurrency control
  - lock management
    - fully distributed:
      - object O, some copy C of O stored at site S with Lock Manager L
        - requests to lock / unlock C are handled by L (the site where the copy is stored)
      - one doesn't need to access 2 sites when reading some copy of O

## Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed concurrency control
  - detect and resolve deadlocks
  - each site maintains a local waits-for graph
  - a cycle in such a graph indicates a deadlock
  - but a global deadlock can exist even if none of the local graphs contains a cycle

->

# Distributed Transaction Management

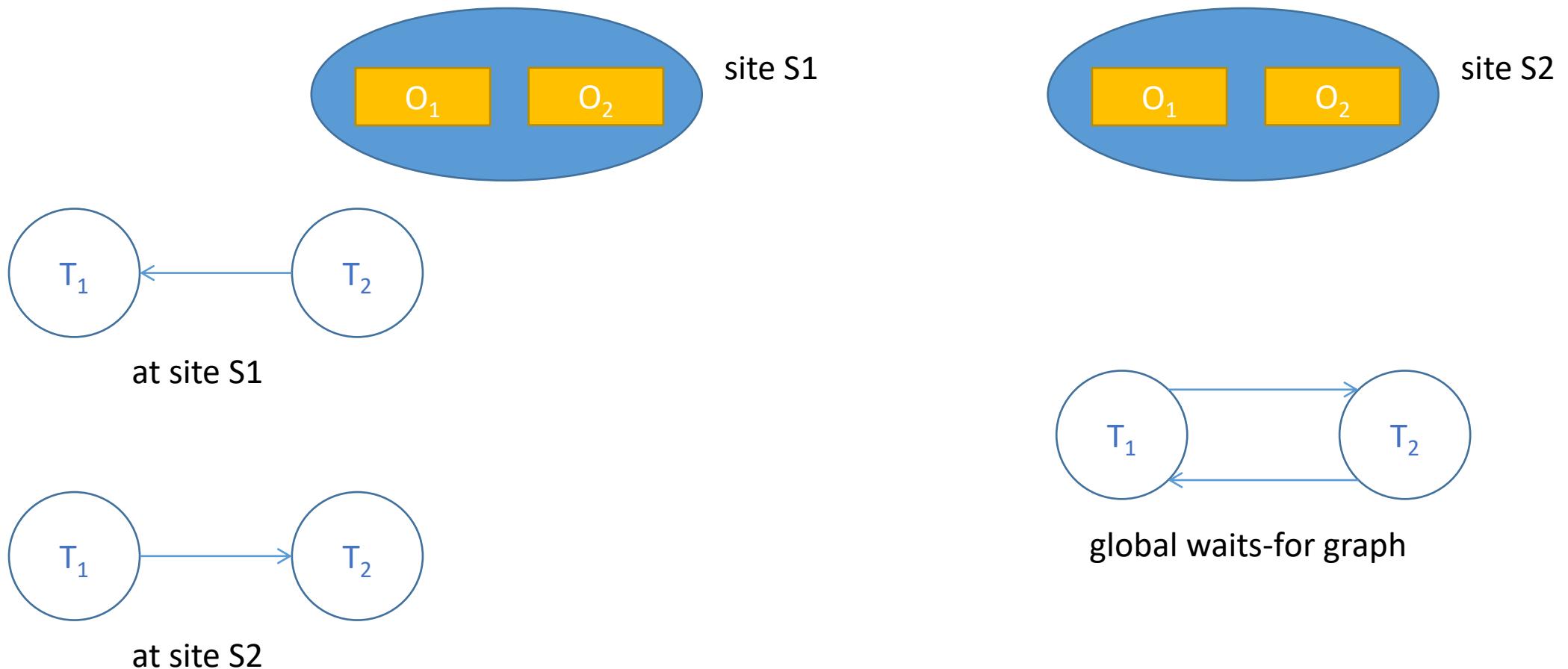
- distributed concurrency control – distributed deadlock
  - e.g., using *read-any write-all*



- T<sub>1</sub> wants to read O<sub>1</sub> and write O<sub>2</sub>
- T<sub>2</sub> wants to read O<sub>2</sub> and write O<sub>1</sub>
- T<sub>1</sub> acquires a S lock on O<sub>1</sub> and an X lock on O<sub>2</sub> at site S1
- T<sub>2</sub> obtains a S lock on O<sub>2</sub> and an X lock on O<sub>1</sub> at site S2
- T<sub>1</sub> asks for an X lock on O<sub>2</sub> at site S2
- T<sub>2</sub> asks for an X lock on O<sub>1</sub> at site S1

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed concurrency control – distributed deadlock
  - e.g., using *read-any write-all*



# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed concurrency control – distributed deadlock
  - distributed deadlock detection algorithms
    - *centralized*
    - *hierarchical*
    - based on a *timeout* mechanism

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed concurrency control – distributed deadlock
  - distributed deadlock detection algorithms
    - centralized:
      - all the local waits-for graphs are periodically sent to a single site S
      - S - responsible for global deadlock detection
      - the global waits-for graph is generated at site S
        - nodes
          - the union of the nodes in the local graphs
        - edges
          - there is an edge from node N1 to node N2 if such an edge exists in one of the local graphs

## Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed concurrency control – distributed deadlock
  - distributed deadlock detection algorithms
    - hierarchical:
      - sites are organized into a hierarchy, e.g., grouped by city, county, country, etc
      - each site periodically sends its local waits-for graph to its parent site
      - assumption: more deadlocks are likely across related sites
      - all the deadlocks are detected in the end

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed concurrency control – distributed deadlock
  - distributed deadlock detection algorithms
    - hierarchical:
      - example:  
RO ( CJ ( Cluj-Napoca, Dej, Turda ), BN ( Bistrita, Beclean ) )

Cluj-Napoca : T1 -> T2

Dej: T2 -> T3

Turda: T3 -> T4 <- T7

Bistrita: T5 -> T6

Beclean: T4 -> T7 -> T6 -> T5

CJ: T1 -> T2 -> T3 -> T4 <- T7

BN: T5 <-> T6 <- T7 <- T4 (\*)

RO: T1 -> T2 -> T3 -> T4 <-> T7 -> T6 <-> T5

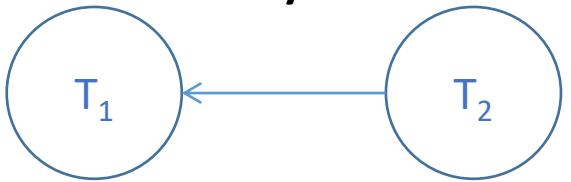
Obs RO: T5 or T6 has been aborted at (\*)

## Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed concurrency control – distributed deadlock
  - distributed deadlock detection algorithms
    - based on a timeout mechanism:
      - a transaction is aborted if it lasts longer than a specified interval
      - can lead to unnecessary restarts
      - however, the deadlock detection overhead is low
      - could be the only available option in a heterogeneous system (if the participating sites cannot cooperate, i.e., they cannot share their local waits-for graphs)

# Distributed Transaction Management

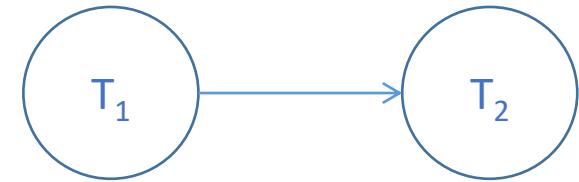
- distributed concurrency control – distributed deadlock
- phantom deadlocks
  - "deadlocks" that don't exist, but are detected due to delays in propagating local information
  - lead to unnecessary aborts
  - example:



at site S1



global waits-for graph



at site S2

- generate local waits-for graphs, send them to the site responsible for global deadlock detection
- T2 aborts (not because of the deadlock) => local waits-for graphs are changed, there is no cycle in the "real" global waits-for graph
- but the built waits-for graph does have a cycle, T1 could be chosen as a victim

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - more complex than in a centralized DBMS
  - new types of failure
    - network failure
    - site failure
  - commit protocol
    - either all the subtransactions of a transaction commit, or none of them does
  - normal execution
    - ensure all the necessary information is provided to recover from failures
  - a log is maintained at each site; it contains:
    - data logged in a centralized DBMS
    - actions carried out as part of the commit protocol

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - transaction T
    - coordinator
      - the Transaction Manager at the site where T originated
    - subordinates
      - the Transaction Managers at the sites where T's subtransactions execute

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - two-phase commit protocol (2PC)
    - exchanged messages + records written in the log
    - 2 rounds of messages, both initiated by the coordinator
      - *voting phase*
      - *termination phase*
    - any Transaction Manager can abort a transaction
    - however, for a transaction to commit, all Transaction Managers must decide to commit

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - two-phase commit protocol
    - the user decides to commit transaction T  
=> the commit command is sent to T's coordinator, initiating 2PC
      1. the coordinator sends a *prepare* message to each subordinate
      2. upon receiving a *prepare* message, a subordinate decides whether to commit / abort its subtransaction
        - the subordinate force-writes an *abort* or a *prepare\** log record
        - then it sends a *no* or *yes* message to the coordinator

\* *prepare* log records are specific to the commit protocol, they are not used in centralized DBMSs

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - two-phase commit protocol
    3.
      - if the coordinator receives *yes* messages from all subordinates:
        - it force-writes a *commit* log record
        - it then sends *commit* messages to all subordinates
      - otherwise (i.e., if it receives at least one *no* message or if it doesn't receive any message from a subordinate for a predetermined timeout interval)
        - if force-writes an *abort* log record
        - it then sends an *abort* message to each subordinate

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - two-phase commit protocol
    4.
      - upon receiving an *abort* message, a subordinate:
        - force-writes an *abort* log record
        - sends an *ack* message to the coordinator
        - aborts the subtransaction
      - upon receiving a *commit* message, a subordinate:
        - force-writes a *commit* log record
        - sends an *ack* message to the coordinator
        - commits the subtransaction

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - two-phase commit protocol
    5. after it receives *ack* messages from all subordinates, the coordinator writes an *end* log record for the transaction
  - sending a message – the sender has made a decision
  - the message is sent only after the corresponding log record has been forced to stable storage (to ensure the corresponding decision can survive a crash)
  - T is a committed transaction if the commit log record of T's coordinator has been forced to stable storage

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - two-phase commit protocol
    - log records for the commit protocol
      - record type
      - transaction id
      - coordinator's identity
    - the commit / abort log record for the coordinator also contains the identities of the subordinates

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - restart after a failure – site S comes back up after a crash
    - if there is a *commit* or an *abort* log record for transaction T:
      - must redo / undo T
      - if S is T's coordinator:
        - periodically send *commit* / *abort* messages to subordinates until *ack* messages are received
        - write an *end* log record after receiving all *ack* messages
      - if there is a *prepare* log record for transaction T, but no *commit* / *abort*, S is one of T's subordinates
        - contact T's coordinator repeatedly until T's status is obtained
        - write a *commit* / an *abort* log record
        - redo / undo T

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - restart after a failure – site S
    - if there are no *commit / abort / prepare* log records for T:
      - abort T, undo T
      - if S is T's coordinator, T's subordinates may subsequently contact S
  - blocking
    - if T's coordinator site fails, T's subordinates who have voted yes cannot decide whether to commit or abort T until the coordinator recovers, i.e., T is *blocked*
    - even if all the subordinates know each other (overhead - *prepare* messages), they are still blocked (unless one of them voted *no*)

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - link and remote site failures
    - current site S, remote site R, transaction T
    - if R doesn't respond during the commit protocol for T, either because R failed or the link failed:
      - if S is T's coordinator:
        - S should abort T
        - if S is one of T's subordinates, and has not voted yet:
          - S should abort T
        - if S is one of T's subordinates and has voted yes:
          - S is blocked until T's coordinator responds

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - 2PC – observations
    - *ack* messages
      - used to determine when can a coordinator C “forget” about a transaction T
      - C must keep T in the transaction table until it receives all *ack* messages
    - C fails after sending *prepare* messages, but before writing a *commit* / an *abort* log record
      - when C comes back up it aborts T
      - i.e., absence of information => T is presumed to have aborted
      - if a subtransaction doesn't change any data, its commit / abort status is irrelevant

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - 2PC with Presumed Abort
    - coordinator C, transaction T, some subordinate S, some subtransaction t
    - C aborts T
      - T is undone
      - C immediately removes T from the Transaction Table, i.e., it doesn't wait for *ack* messages
    - subordinates' names need not be recorded in C's abort log record
    - S doesn't send an *ack* message when it receives an *abort* message

# Distributed Transaction Management

- distributed recovery
  - 2PC with Presumed Abort
    - coordinator C, transaction T, some subordinate S, some subtransaction t
    - t doesn't change any data
      - t responds to *prepare* messages with a *reader* message, instead of *yes / no*
    - C subsequently ignores readers
    - if all subtransactions are readers, the 2nd phase of the protocol is not needed

## References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Da03] DATE, C.J., An Introduction to Database Systems (8<sup>th</sup> Edition), Addison-Wesley, 2003
- [Ga09] GARCIA-MOLINA, H., ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., Database Systems: The Complete Book (2nd Edition), Pearson, 2009
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si19] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (7th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2019
- [Ul11] ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., A First Course in Database Systems,  
<http://infolab.stanford.edu/~ullman/fcdb.html>

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 13

Parallel Databases \*

Spatial Databases \*

\* not among the exam topics

## Parallel Database Systems

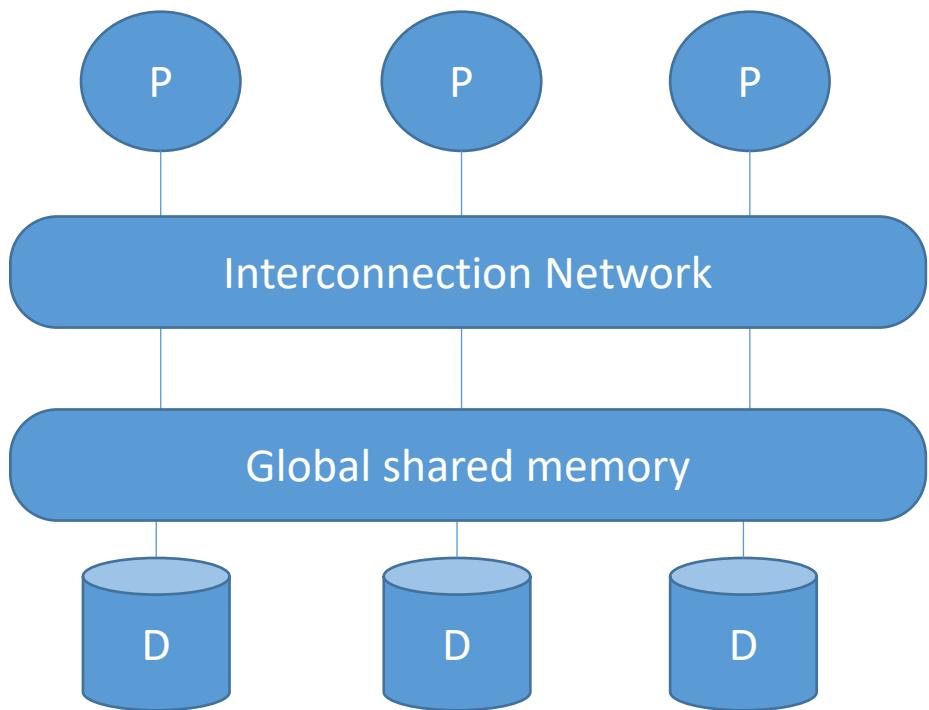
- performance improvement
  - parallelize operations:
    - loading data
    - building indexes
    - query evaluation
  - data can be distributed, but distribution is dictated solely by performance reasons

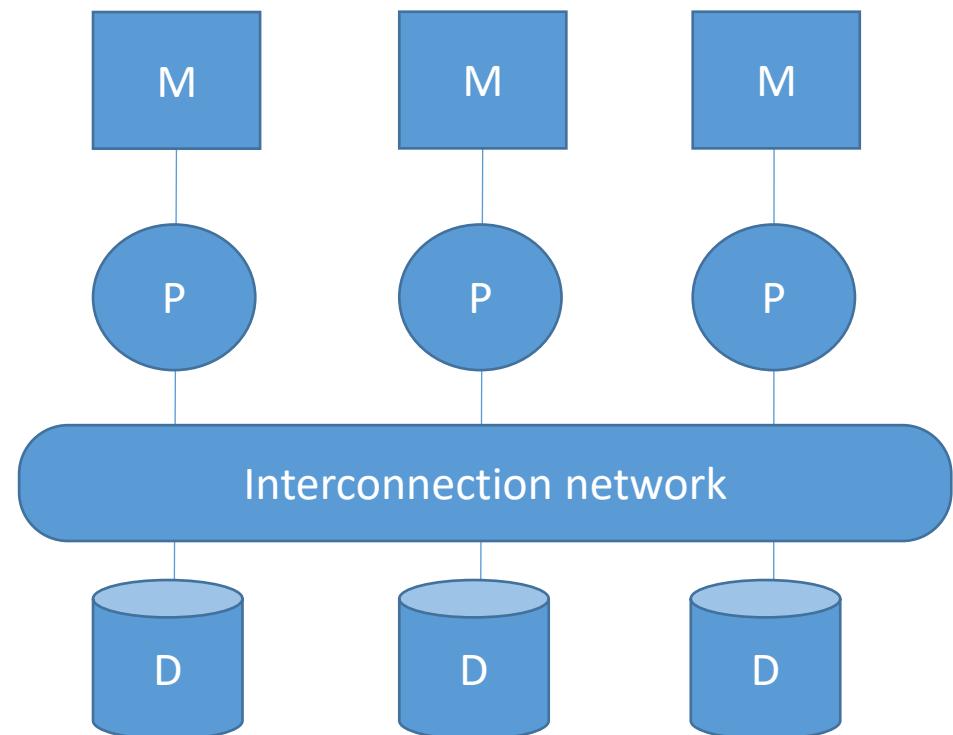
## Parallel Databases - Architectures

- *shared-memory*
- *shared-disk*
- *shared-nothing*

# Parallel Databases - Architectures

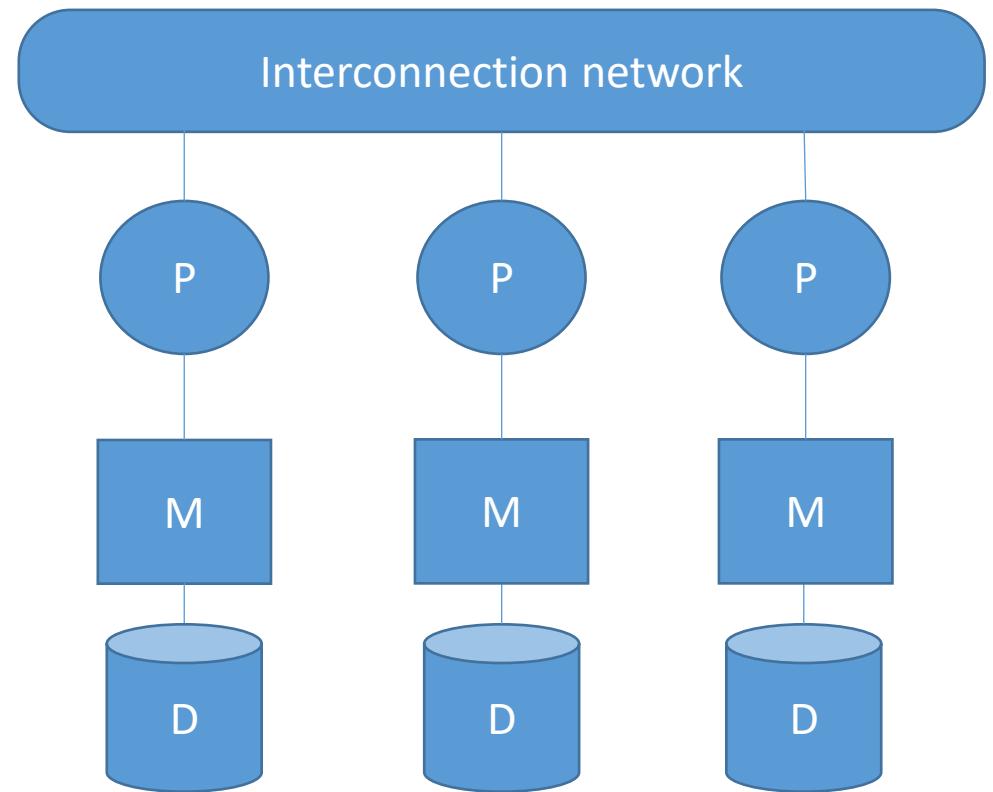
- *shared-memory*
  - several CPUs
    - attached to an interconnection network
    - can access a common region in the main memory
- *shared-disk*
  - CPU
    - its own private memory
    - can access all disks through a network



# Parallel Databases - Architectures

- *shared-nothing*
  - a CPU
    - its own local main memory
    - its own disk space
  - 2 different CPUs cannot access the same storage area
  - CPUs communicate through a network



## Interference

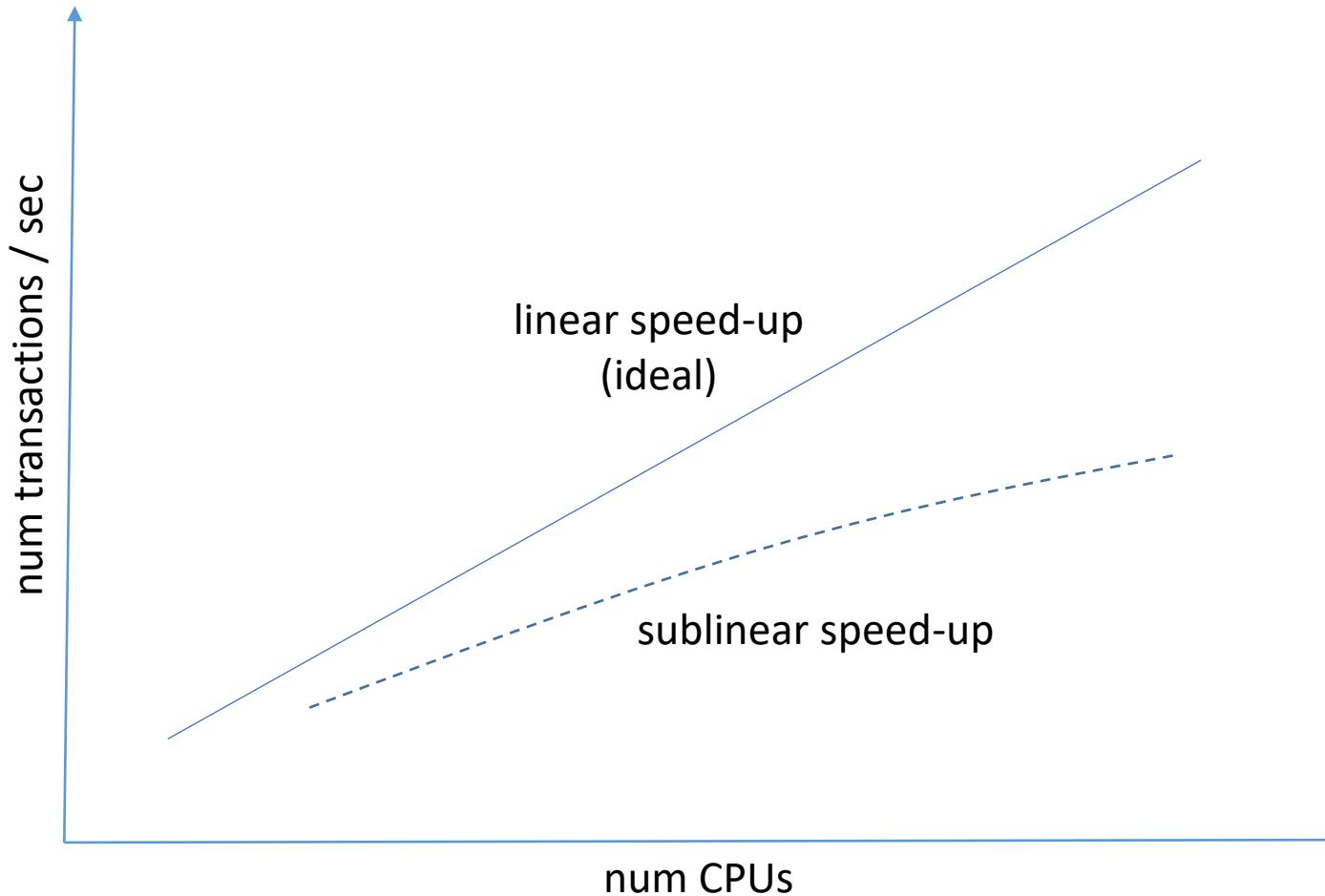
- specific to shared-memory and shared-disk architectures
- add CPUs:
  - increased contention for memory and network bandwidth  
=> existing CPUs are slowing down
- main reason that led to the shared-nothing architecture, currently considered as the best option for large parallel database systems

## The Shared-Nothing Architecture

- linear speed-up & linear scale-up
- linear speed-up
  - required processing time for operations decreases proportionally to the increase in the number of CPUs and disks
- linear scale-up
  - num. of CPUs and disks grows proportionally to the amount of data  
=> performance is sustained

# The Shared-Nothing Architecture

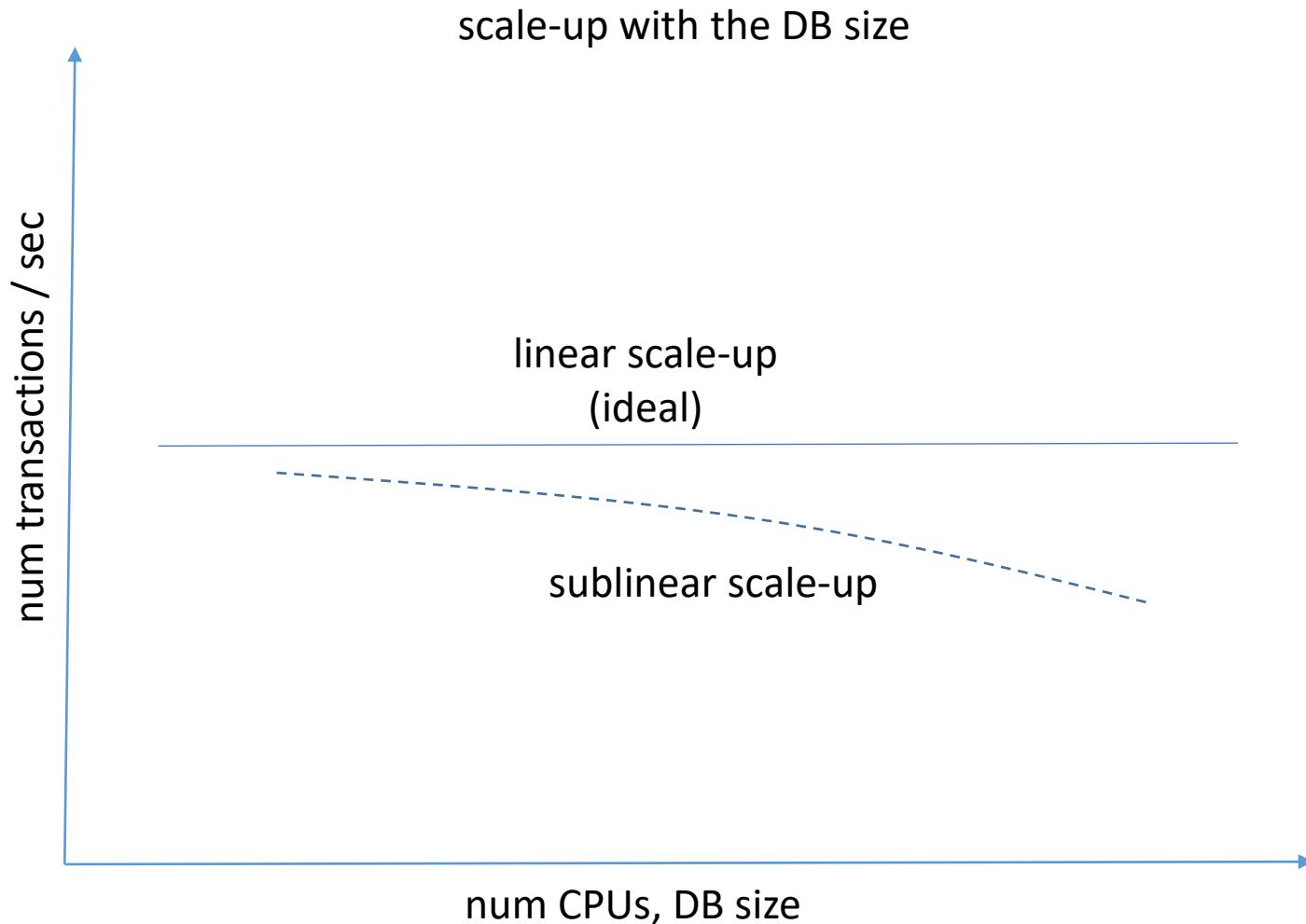
- speed-up



- DB size - fixed
  - add CPUs
- => more transactions can be executed per second

# The Shared-Nothing Architecture

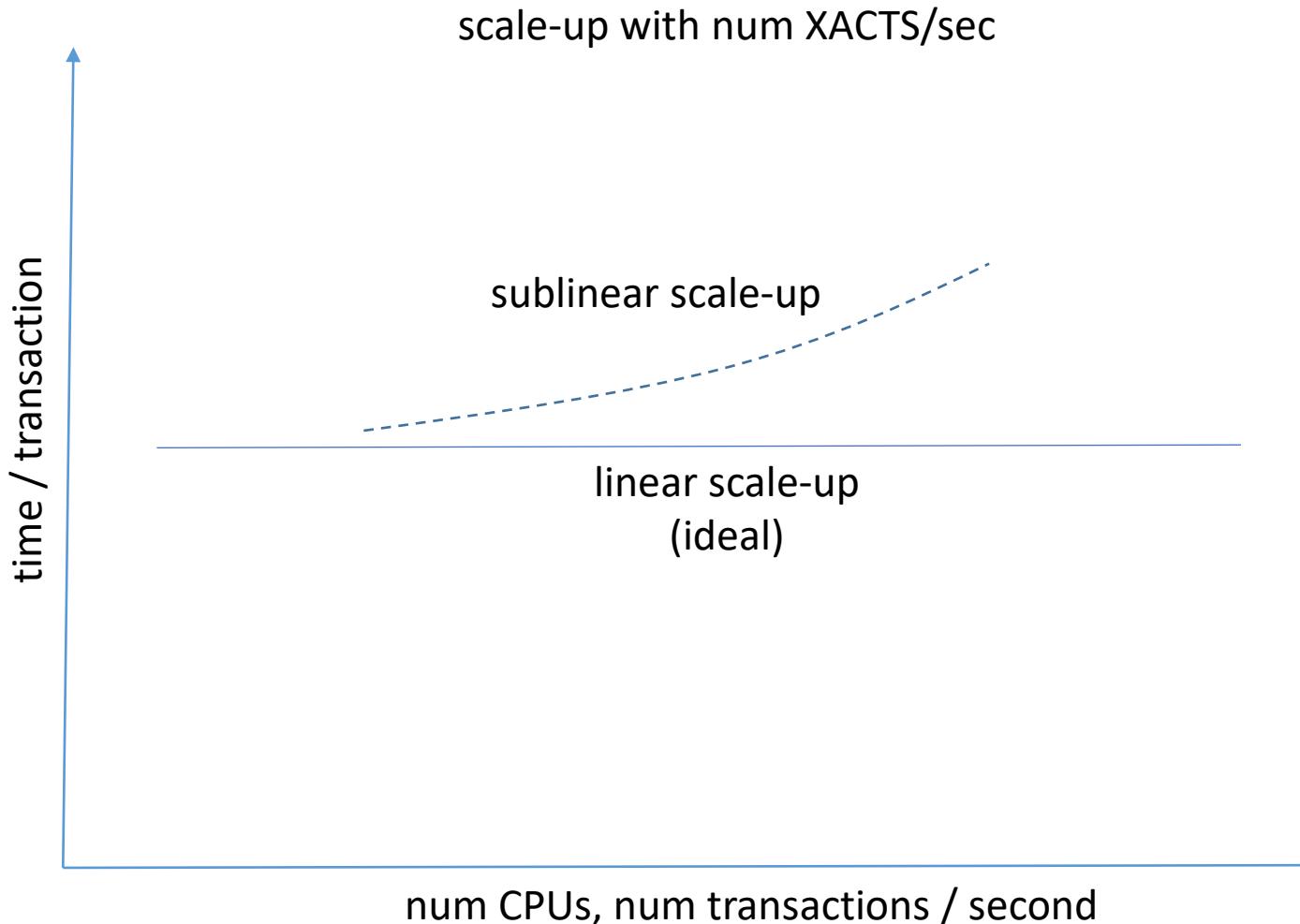
- scale-up



- the number of transactions executed per second, as the DB size and the number of CPUs increase

# The Shared-Nothing Architecture

- scale-up



\* alternative

- add CPUs as the number of transactions executed per second increases
- evaluate the time required for a transaction

# Parallel Query Evaluation

- context
  - DBMS based on a shared-nothing architecture
- evaluate a query in a parallel manner
- operators in an execution plan can be evaluated in parallel
  - 2 operators are evaluated in parallel
  - one operator is evaluated in a parallel manner
- an operator is said to *block* if it doesn't produce results until it consumes all its inputs (e.g., sorting, aggregation)
- pipelined parallelism
  - an operator consumes the output of another operator
  - limited by blocking operators

## Parallel Query Evaluation

- parallel evaluation on partitioned data
  - every operator in a plan can be evaluated in a parallel manner by partitioning the input data
  - partitions are processed in parallel, the results are then combined
- processor = CPU + its local disk

## Parallel Query Evaluation – Data Partitioning

- horizontally partition a large dataset on several disks
- partitions are then read / written in parallel
- *round-robin* partitioning
  - n processors
  - the  $i^{\text{th}}$  tuple is assigned to processor  $i \% n$
- hash partitioning
  - determine the processor for a tuple  $t$ 
    - apply a hash function to  $t$  (or to some of its attributes)
- range partitioning
  - n processors
  - order tuples conceptually
  - choose n ranges for the sorting key values s.t. each range contains approximately the same number of tuples
  - tuples in range  $i$  are assigned to processor  $i$

## Parallel Query Evaluation – Data Partitioning

- queries that scan the entire relation
  - round-robin partitioning - suitable
- queries that operate on a subset of tuples
  - e.g.,  $\text{age} = 30$ 
    - tuples partitioned on the attributes in the selection condition, e.g.,  $\text{age}$
    - hash and range partitioning are better than round-robing (one can access only the disks containing the desired tuples)
  - range, e.g.,  $20 < \text{age} < 30$ 
    - range partitioning is better than hash partitioning (it's likely that the desired tuples are grouped on several processors)

# Parallelizing Individual Operations

- context
  - DBMS based on a shared-nothing architecture
- each relation is horizontally partitioned on several disks
- scanning a relation
  - pages can be read in parallel
  - obtained tuples can than be reunited
  - similarly – obtain all tuples that meet a selection condition

# Parallelizing Individual Operations

- sorting
  - v1
    - each CPU sorts the relation fragment on its disk
    - subsequently, the sorted tuple sets are merged
  - v2
    - redistribute tuples in the relation using range partitioning
    - each processor sorts its tuples with a sequential sorting algorithm => several sorted runs on the disk
    - merge runs => sorted version of the set of tuples assigned to the current processor
    - obtain the entire sorted relation
      - visit processors in an order corresponding to their assigned ranges and scan the tuples

## Parallelizing Individual Operations

- sorting
  - v2
    - challenges
      - range partitioning – assign approximately the same number of tuples to each processor
      - a processor that receives a disproportionately large number of tuples will limit scalability

# Spatial Data Types and Queries

- spatial data
  - multidimensional points
  - lines
  - rectangles
  - cubes
  - etc
- spatial extent (SE)
  - region of space occupied by an object
  - characterized by location + boundary

# Spatial Data Types and Queries

- DBMS
  - point data
  - region data
- point data
  - collection of points in a multidimensional space
  - point
    - SE – only location
    - no space, area, volume
  - direct measurements (e.g., MRI)
  - transforming data obtained from measurements (e.g., feature vectors)

# Spatial Data Types and Queries

- region data
  - collection of regions
  - region - SE
    - location
      - position of a fixed anchor point for the region
      - + boundary (e.g., line, surface)
  - geometric approximations to objects, built with points, line segments, polygons, spheres, cubes, etc
  - e.g., in geographic apps
    - collection of line segments
      - roads, railways, rivers, etc
    - polygons
      - lakes, counties, countries, etc

# Spatial Data Types and Queries

- spatial queries
  - spatial range queries
  - nearest neighbor queries
  - spatial join queries
- spatial range queries
  - associated region
    - location + boundary
  - find all regions that overlap / are contained within the specified range
    - e.g., Find all cities within 150 km of Constanța.
    - e.g., Find all rivers in Bihor.

# Spatial Data Types and Queries

- spatial queries
  - nearest neighbor queries
    - e.g., Find the 5 cities that are nearest to Paris.
    - usually, answers are ordered by proximity
  - spatial join queries
    - e.g., Find all cities near Bucureşti.
    - e.g., Find pairs of cities within 150 km of each other.
    - meaning of queries can be determined by the level of detail in the representation of objects
    - e.g., relation in which each tuple is a point that represents a city
      - answer the queries with a self join
      - join condition – distance between 2 tuples in the query result

# Spatial Data Types and Queries

- spatial queries
    - spatial join queries
      - e.g., cities have a SE
- => meaning of queries and evaluation strategies become more complex
- cities whose centroids are within 150 km of each other?
  - or cities whose boundaries come within 150 km of each other?

## Applications

- relation  $R$  with  $k$  attributes seen as a collection of  $k$ -dimensional points
- Geographic Information Systems (GIS)
  - points; lines; regions in 2 / 3 dimensions
  - e.g., a map that contains the locations of several small objects (points), highways (lines), cities (regions)
  - point & region data
  - range, nearest neighbor, join queries
- Computer-aided design (CAD) systems, medical imaging
  - store spatial objects
  - point & region data
  - most frequent queries - range & join
  - spatial integrity constraints

## Applications

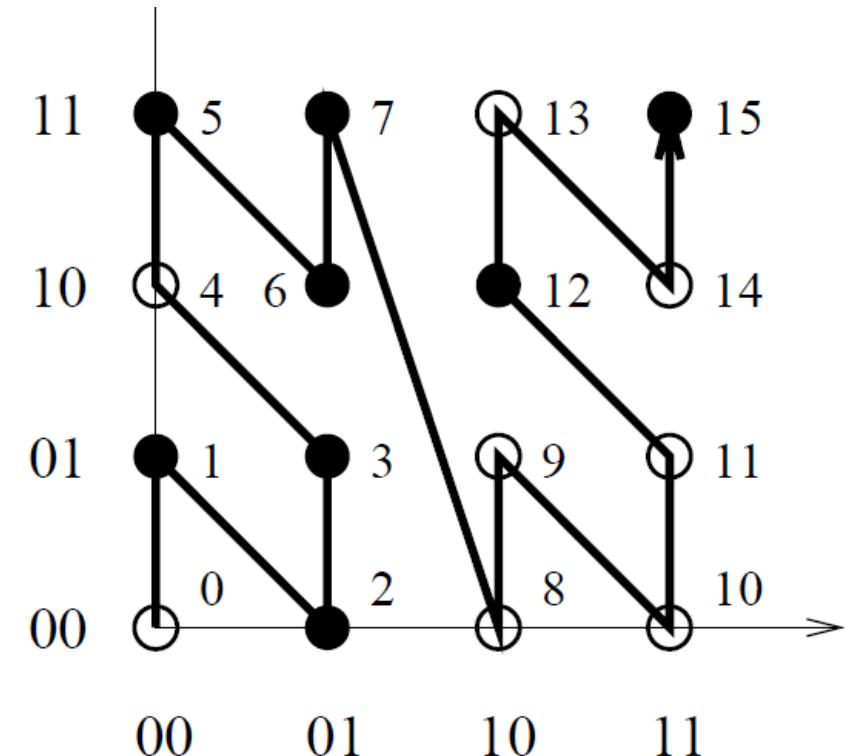
- multimedia DBs
  - multimedia objects
    - images, text, *time-series* data (e.g., audio)
  - object
    - point in a multidimensional space
  - similarity of 2 multimedia objects
    - distance between the corresponding points
  - similarity queries converted to nearest neighbor queries
  - point data & nearest neighbor queries – most common

## Indexing - space-filling curves

- assumption
  - any attribute value can be represented with a fixed num. of bits, e.g., k bits

=> max. num. of values per dimension =  $2^k$

- linear ordering of the domain
- the point with  $X = 01$ ,  $Y = 11$  has Z-value = 0111, obtained by interleaving the bits of X and Y
  - the 8<sup>th</sup> point visited by the space-filling curve, which starts at point  $X=00$ ,  $Y=00$



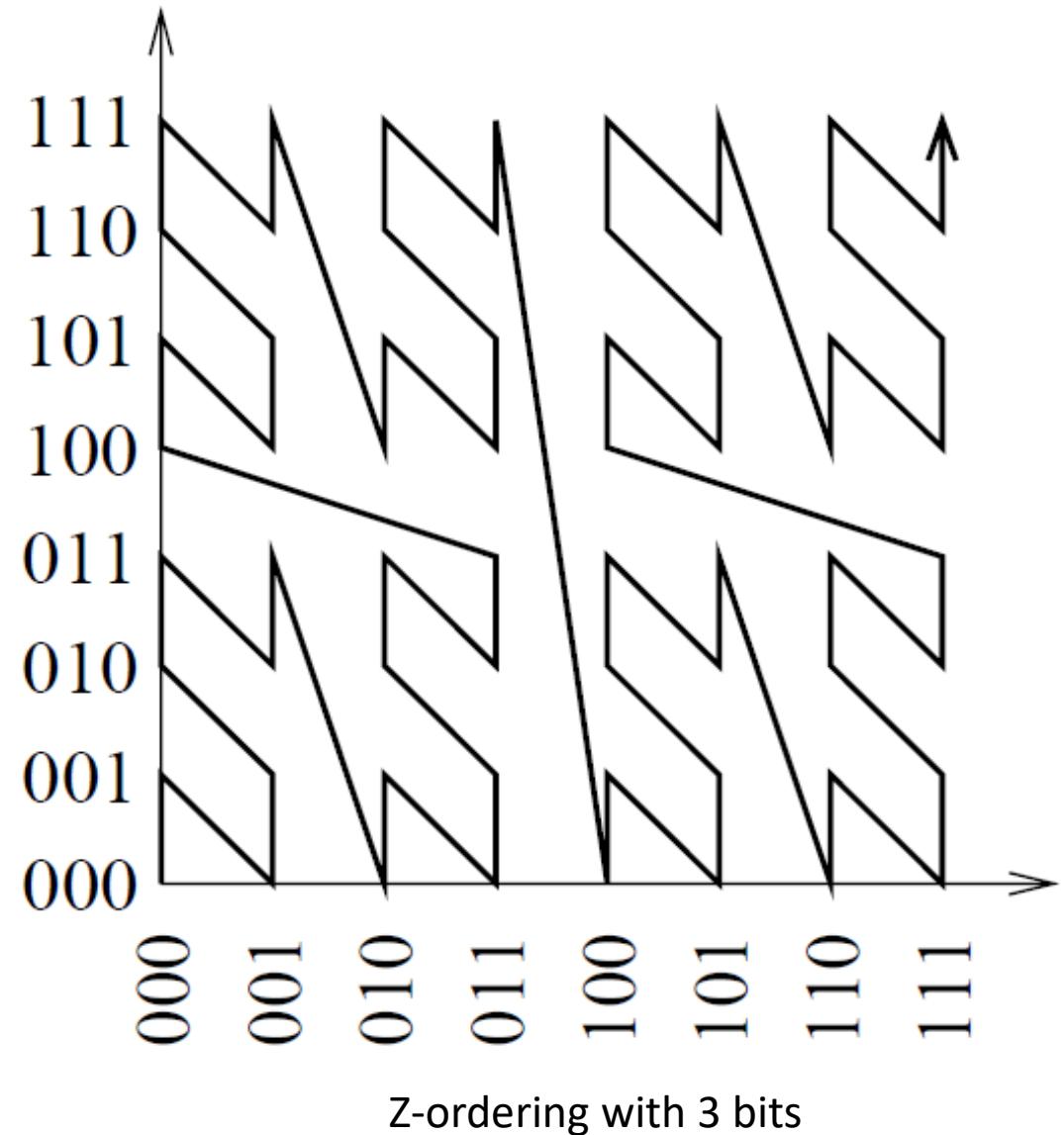
Z-ordering with 2 bits

## *Indexing - space-filling curves*

- points in the dataset are stored in the order of their Z-values
- indexing
  - B+ tree
  - search key
    - Z-value
  - store the Z-value of the point along with the point
  - I / D / search point
    - compute Z-value
    - I / D / search into / from / the B+ tree
  - unlike when using traditional B+ tree-based indexing, points are clustered together by spatial proximity in the X-Y space
  - spatial queries in the X-Y space become linear range queries
    - efficient evaluation on the B+ tree organized by Z-values

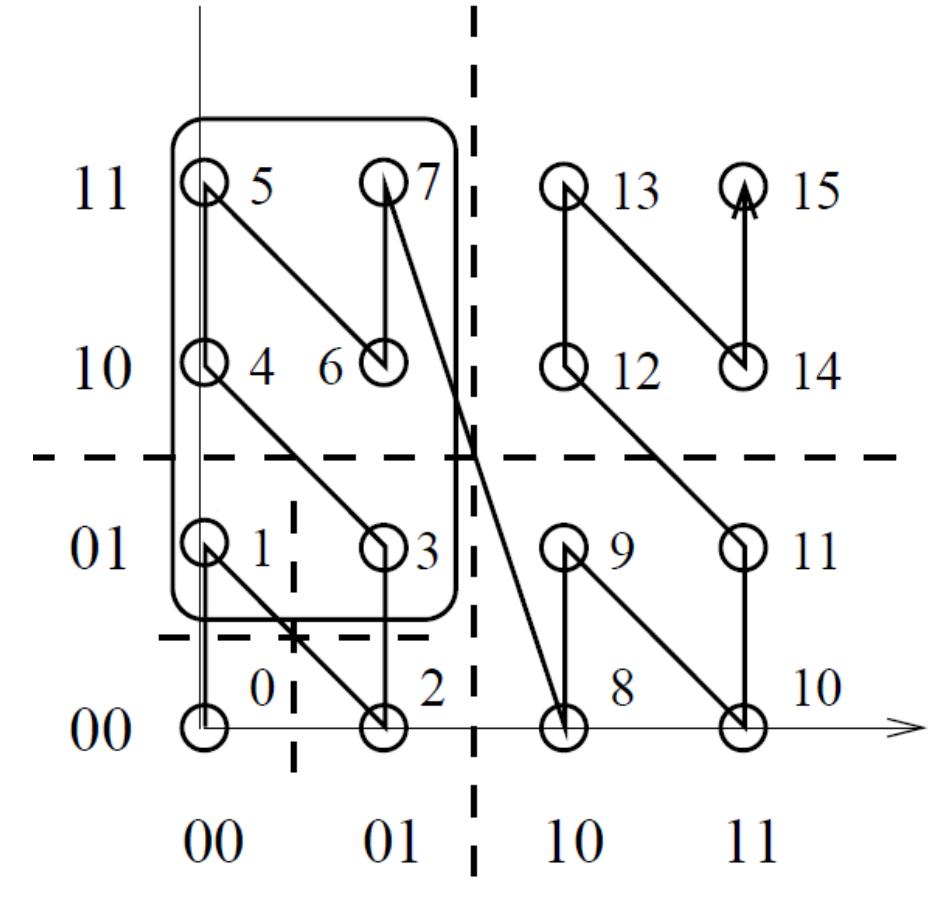
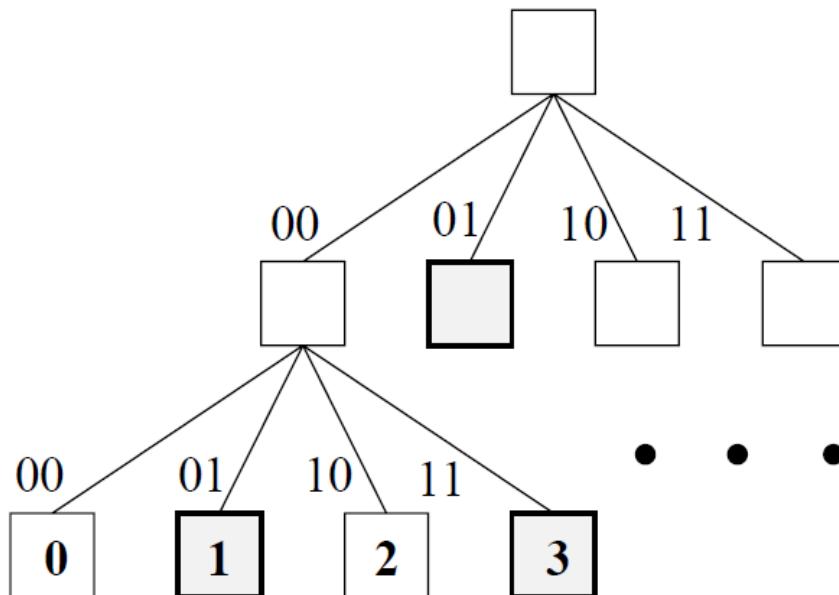
## *Indexing - space-filling curves*

- Z-ordering curve for domains with 3-bit representations of attribute values – spatial grouping of points
- the curve visits all the points in a quadrant before moving on to the next one  
=> all points in a quadrant are stored together



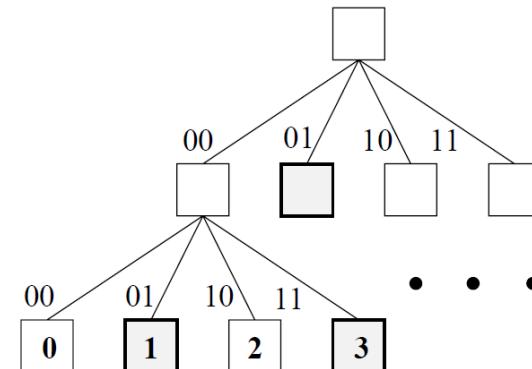
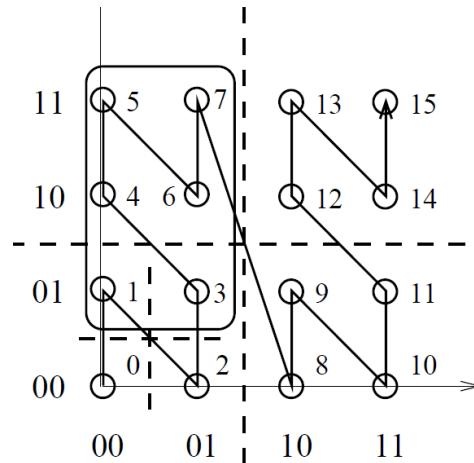
## *Indexing - space-filling curves*

- region data
- Z-ordering recursively decomposes space into quadrants and subquadrants
- the structure of a Region Quad tree directly corresponds to the recursive decomposition of the data space
- each node in the tree correspond to a square region in the data space



## *Indexing - space-filling curves*

- root – entire data space
- internal node - 4 children
- rectangle object R stored by the DBMS
  - all points in the 01 quadrant of the root and the points with Z-values 1 and 3
  - 3 records stored: <0001, R>, <0011, R>, <01, R>
  - records clustered and indexed by the 1<sup>st</sup> field, i.e., Z-value, in a B+ tree
- use B+ trees to implement Region Quad trees
- generalization - k dimensions => at every node, the space is partitioned into  $2^k$  subregions



## References

- [Ra02] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems (3rd Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2002
- [Da03] DATE, C.J., An Introduction to Database Systems (8<sup>th</sup> Edition), Addison-Wesley, 2003
- [Ga09] GARCIA-MOLINA, H., ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., Database Systems: The Complete Book (2nd Edition), Pearson, 2009
- [Ra07] RAMAKRISHNAN, R., GEHRKE, J., Database Management Systems, McGraw-Hill, 2007,  
<http://pages.cs.wisc.edu/~dbbook/openAccess/thirdEdition/slides/slides3ed.html>
- [Si19] SILBERSCHATZ, A., KORTH, H., SUDARSHAN, S., Database System Concepts (7th Edition), McGraw-Hill, 2019
- [Ul11] ULLMAN, J., WIDOM, J., A First Course in Database Systems,  
<http://infolab.stanford.edu/~ullman/fcdb.html>

Sabina S. CS

Let R and S be 2 relations. R has 10.000 records; a page can hold 10 R records. S has 2.000 records; a page can hold 10 S records.

1. 52 buffer pages are available. Compute the cost of:

```
SELECT *  
FROM R INNER JOIN S ON R.a = S.b
```

using *page-oriented nested loops join* and *block nested loops join*; S is the outer relation.

Let R and S be 2 relations. R has 10.000 records; a page can hold 10 R records. S has 2.000 records; a page can hold 10 S records.

2. Compute the cost of sorting R using *external merge sort* with 200 buffer pages.

Let R and S be 2 relations. R has 10.000 records; a page can hold 10 R records. S has 2.000 records; a page can hold 10 S records.

3. R is stored at Bucureşti, S is stored at Cluj-Napoca. Compute the cost of:

```
SELECT *
FROM R INNER JOIN S ON R.a = S.b
```

using *simple nested loops join (tuple-oriented)* in Cluj-Napoca, without caching; S is the outer relation.

4. Encode the data *de gustibus non disputandum* using the secret encryption key *metallica* and the table of codes below. Write the last 5 characters in the result.

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|    | a  | b  | c  | d  | e  | f  | g  | h  | i  | j  | k  | l  | m  | n  | o  | p  | q  | r  | s  | t  | u  | v  | w  | x  | y  | z  | -  |
| 00 | 01 | 02 | 03 | 04 | 05 | 06 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 |

||

1. T1 and T2 are 2 concurrent transactions, both active at time  $t$ . Choose the correct answer(s):
- a. The following execution describes a *write read* conflict: At time  $t$ , T2 is reading a data object previously written by T1.
  - b. The following execution describes a *write read* conflict: At time  $t$ , T2 is writing a data object previously read by T1.
  - c. The following execution describes a *read write* conflict: At time  $t$ , T2 is reading a data object previously written by T1.
  - d. The following execution describes a *read write* conflict: At time  $t$ , T2 is writing a data object previously read by T1.
  - e. none of the above answers is correct.

2. A schedule S:

- a. is conflict serializable if and only if its precedence graph has exactly one cycle.
- b. is conflict serializable if and only if its precedence graph is acyclic.
- c. is conflict serializable if and only if its precedence graph has exactly two cycles.
- d. is conflict serializable if and only if its precedence graph has exactly three cycles.
- e. none of the above answers is correct.

3. In SQL Server, under the READ UNCOMMITTED isolation level:
- a. S locks must be acquired to perform read operations.
  - b. read operations are performed without acquiring S locks.
  - c. X locks must be acquired to perform write operations.
  - d. write operations are performed without acquiring X locks.
  - e. none of the above answers is correct.

4. In horizontal fragmentation:

- a. the reconstruction operator is the natural join.
- b. the union of the horizontal fragments must be equal to the original relation.
- c. fragmentation is performed with projection operators.
- d. fragmentation is performed with selection predicates.
- e. none of the above answers is correct.

5. I is an index with search key  $\langle C_1, C_2, C_3, C_4 \rangle$ .

- a. If I is a hash index, I matches condition  $C_1 > 10$  AND  $C_2 > 7$ .
- b. If I is a hash index, I matches condition  $C_1 = 10$  AND  $C_2 = 7$  AND  $C_3 = 1$  AND  $C_4 = 5$ .
- c. If I is a B+ tree index, I matches condition  $C_1 = 10$  AND  $C_2 = 7$ .
- d. If I is a B+ tree index, I matches condition  $C_2 = 7$  AND  $C_3 = 9$ .
- e. none of the above answers is correct.

6. Let R be a relation with P pages. The cost of sorting R using *simple two-way merge sort* (i.e., with 3 pages in the buffer pool) is:

- a.  $\pi^P$
- b.  $2P(\lceil \log_4 P \rceil + 1)$
- c.  $2P(\lceil \log_2 P \rceil + 1)$
- d.  $2P(\lceil \log_3 P \rceil + 1)$
- e. none of the above answers is correct.

7. Consider the query:

SELECT \*

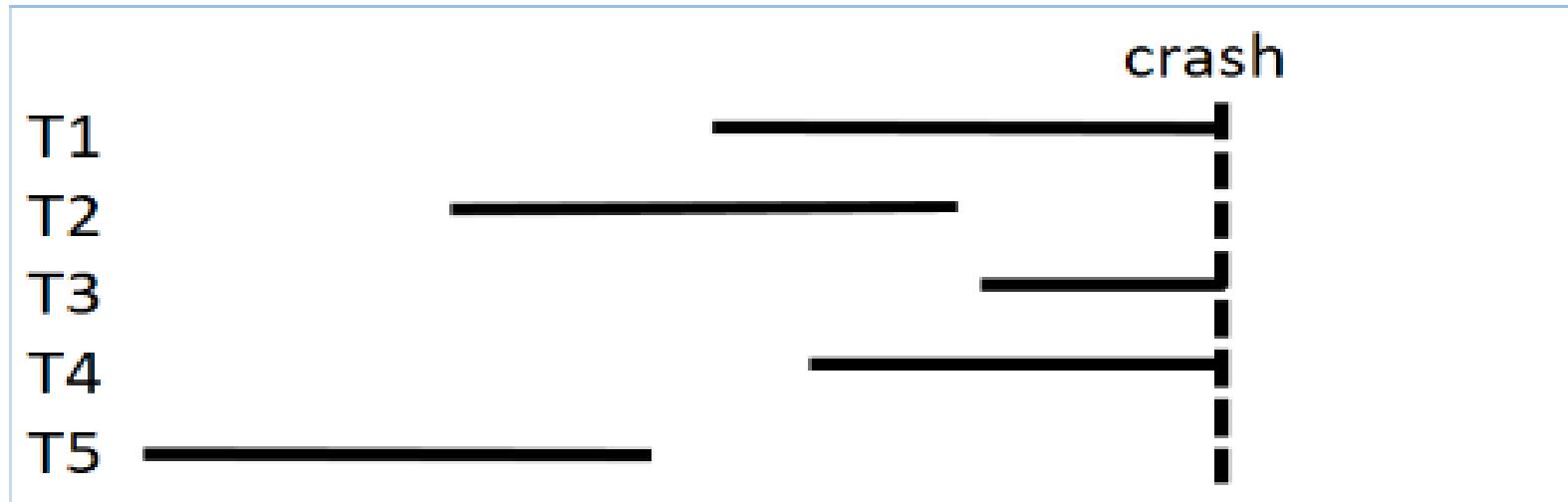
FROM R1, R2, R3

WHERE p1 AND p2 AND p3

The conditions tested by the predicates in the WHERE clause are statistically independent. The cardinality of a relation R is denoted by  $|R|$ . The reduction factor associated with predicate p is denoted by  $RF(p)$ . The cardinality of the query's result set can be estimated by:

- a. 
$$\frac{|R1| * |R2| * |R3|}{RF(p1) + RF(p2) + RF(p3)}$$
- b.  $|R1| * |R2| * |R3| * RF(p1) * RF(p2) * RF(p3)$
- c.  $RF(p1) * RF(p2) * RF(p3) - (|R1| + |R2| + |R3|)$
- d.  $|R1| + |R2| + |R3| + RF(p1) + RF(p2) + RF(p3)$
- e. none of the above answers is correct.

8. Consider the execution below. When the system comes back up after the crash, it must ensure that:



- a. T1, T3, T4 are durable; T2 and T5 are undone.
- b. T1, T3, T4 are undone; T2 and T5 are durable.
- c. T1 is undone only if T2 and T4 are also undone.
- d. T2 is durable only if T5 is undone.
- e. none of the above answers is correct.

9. In data replication:

- a. *primary site replication* is an asynchronous replication technique.
- b. *primary site replication* is a synchronous replication technique.
- c. *read-any write-all* is a synchronous replication technique.
- d. *read-any write-all* is an asynchronous replication technique.
- e. none of the above answers is correct.

10. A database access request contains:

- a. the requesting user.
- b. the criminal record of the requesting user.
- c. the operation the user wants to perform.
- d. the requested object.
- e. none of the above answers is correct.

11. Consider schedule S below over transactions T1, T2, T3, T4 (all transactions commit):

| T1   | T2   | T3   | T4   |
|------|------|------|------|
| W(A) |      |      |      |
|      |      |      | R(C) |
|      | R(B) |      |      |
|      |      | W(D) |      |
|      | R(A) |      |      |
| R(D) |      |      |      |
|      |      |      | W(B) |
| R(C) |      |      |      |

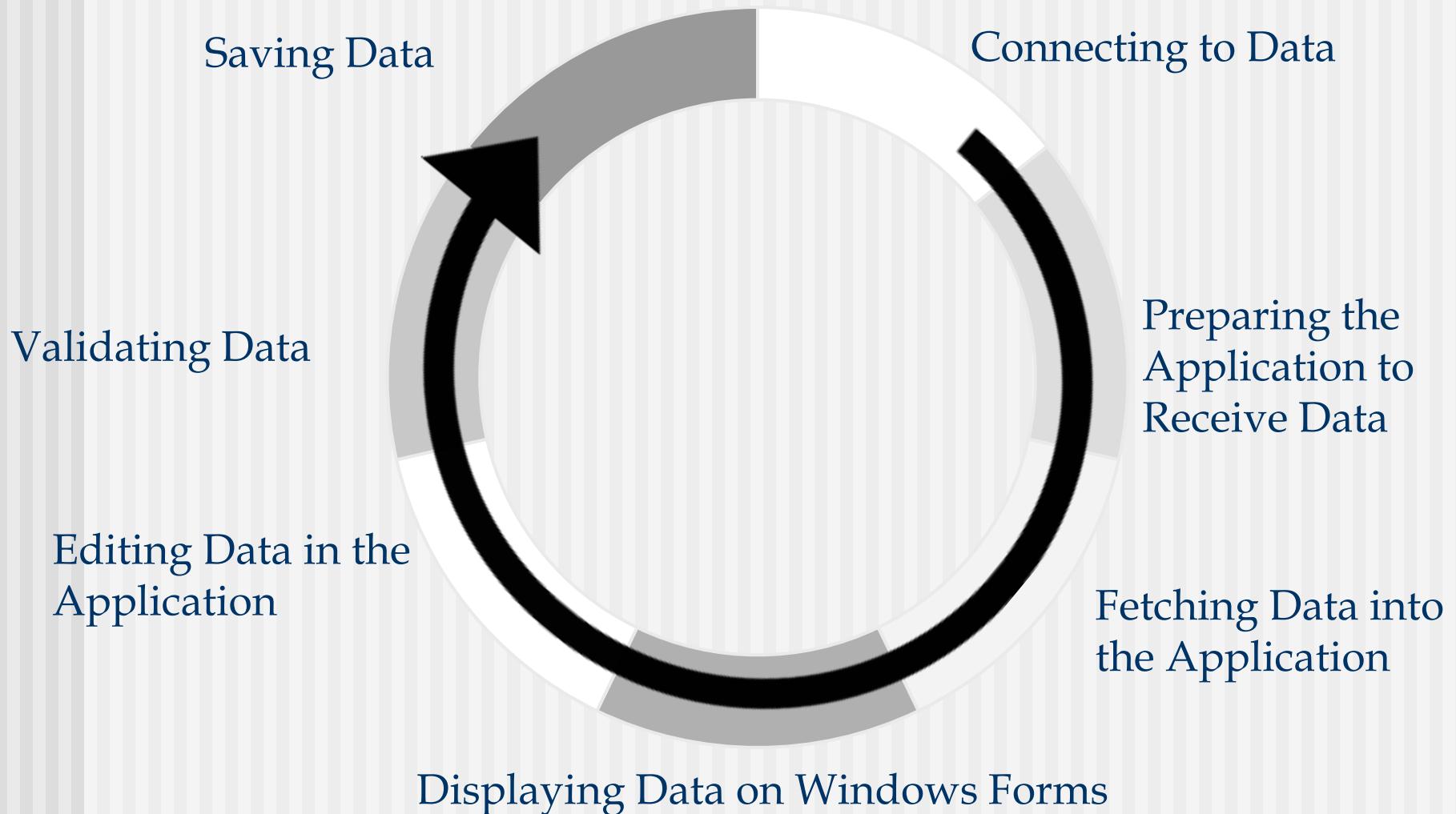
- a. S is conflict serializable.
- b. S is not conflict serializable.
- c.  $(R(T4, C), R(T1, C))$  belongs to the conflict relation of S.
- d.  $(W(T1, A), R(T2, A))$  belongs to the conflict relation of S.
- e. none of the above answers is correct.

# Seminar 1

---

ADO.NET

# The Data Cycle



# The Data Cycle

---

- connecting to data: establish a two-way communication between the application and the database server (e.g., *TableAdapter*)
- preparing the app to receive data: when using a disconnected data model there are specific objects that temporarily store data (e.g., *datasets*, *LINQ to SQL* objects)
- fetching data: execute queries and stored procedures (e.g., by using *TableAdapters*)

# The Data Cycle

---

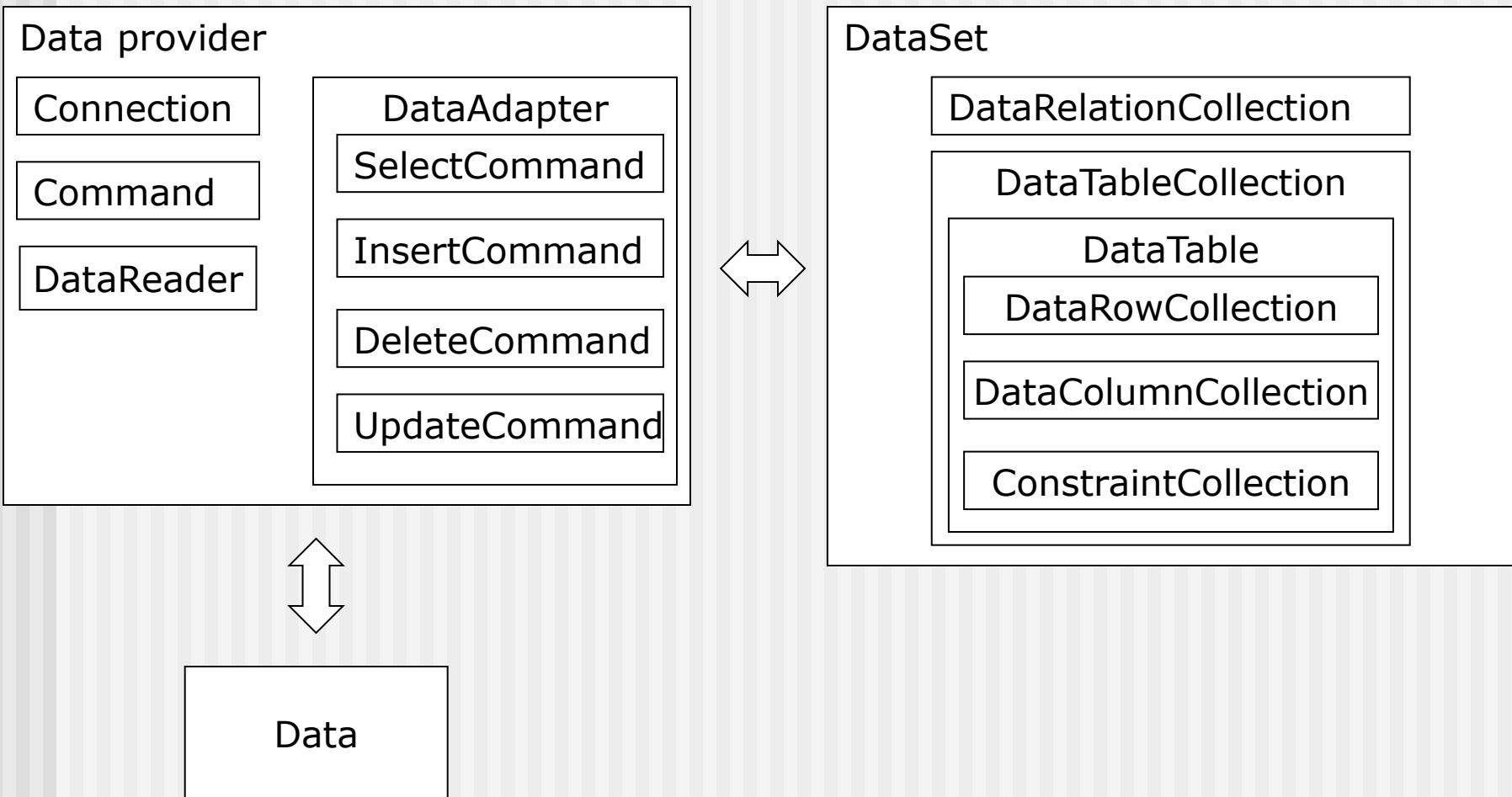
- displaying data: data-bound controls
- editing and validating data: add / modify / delete records; verify if the new values meet the requirements of the application
- saving data: send changes back to the database (e.g., *TableAdapterManager*)

# Data Models

---

- typed / untyped datasets
- conceptual model based on the *Entity Data Model*
- *LINQ to SQL*

# ADO.NET



# Datasets

---

- System
  - Data
    - DataSet
    - DataTable
    - DataRelation
    - DataColumn
    - DataRow
    - Constraint

# Datasets - the DataSet class

---

- object containing data tables that can temporarily store the data used in the application
- typed / untyped
- local in-memory cache
- also works when the application disconnects from the database
- has a similar structure to a relational database (tables, rows, columns, constraints, relationships)

# Datasets - the DataSet class

---

- properties:
  - *Tables (DataTableCollection)* – collection of tables in the DataSet
  - *Relations (DataRelationCollection)* – collection of relations (child / parent tables)
- methods:
  - *Clear()* – clears all rows in all tables
  - *HasChanges()* – indicates whether there are new / deleted / modified rows

# Datasets - the DataTable class

---

- properties:
  - *Rows (DataRowCollection)*
  - *Columns ( DataColumnCollection )*
  - *ChildRelations and ParentRelations (DataRelationCollection)*

# Datasets - the DataRow class

---

- properties:
  - *RowState* - possible values: *Added*, *Deleted*, *Modified*, *Unchanged*

# SqlConnection

---

- represents a connection to a SQL Server database
- cannot be inherited
- if the SqlConnection goes out of scope, it is not closed => must ensure the connection is always closed (e.g., *Close*)
- properties:
  - *ConnectionString* - string used to open a SQL Server database  
(<http://www.connectionstrings.com/>)
  - *ConnectionTimeout* - time to wait to establish a connection before terminating the attempt and generating an error

# SqlConnection

---

- methods:
  - *Open()*
  - *Close()*
- if a *SqlException* is generated, the *SqlConnection* remains open when the severity level  $\leq 19$

# SqlCommand

---

- represents a Transact-SQL statement or stored procedure to be executed on a SQL Server database
- cannot be inherited
- properties:
  - *CommandText*
  - *CommandTimeout*
- methods:
  - *ExecuteNonQuery* - returns the number of affected rows

# SqlCommand

---

- methods:

- *ExecuteScalar* – returns the first column of the first row in the answer set
- *ExecuteReader* – builds a SqlDataReader

# SqlDataReader

- reads a forward-only stream of rows from a SQL Server database

# SqlDataAdapter

---

- bridge between a DataSet and SQL Server to obtain data and save changes back to the database
- a set of commands and a database connection
- properties:
  - *UpdateCommand* - statement / stored procedure used to update records in the data source
  - *InsertCommand* - statement / stored procedure used when inserting records into the data source
  - *DeleteCommand* - statement / stored procedure used to delete records

# SqlDataAdapter

---

## ■ methods:

- *Fill(DataSet, String)* - adds or refreshes rows in the DataSet object to match those in the data source (2<sup>nd</sup> param – name of table)
- *Update(DataSet, String)* – changes the values in the database by executing INSERT / UPDATE / DELETE statements for every added / modified / removed row

# Console

---

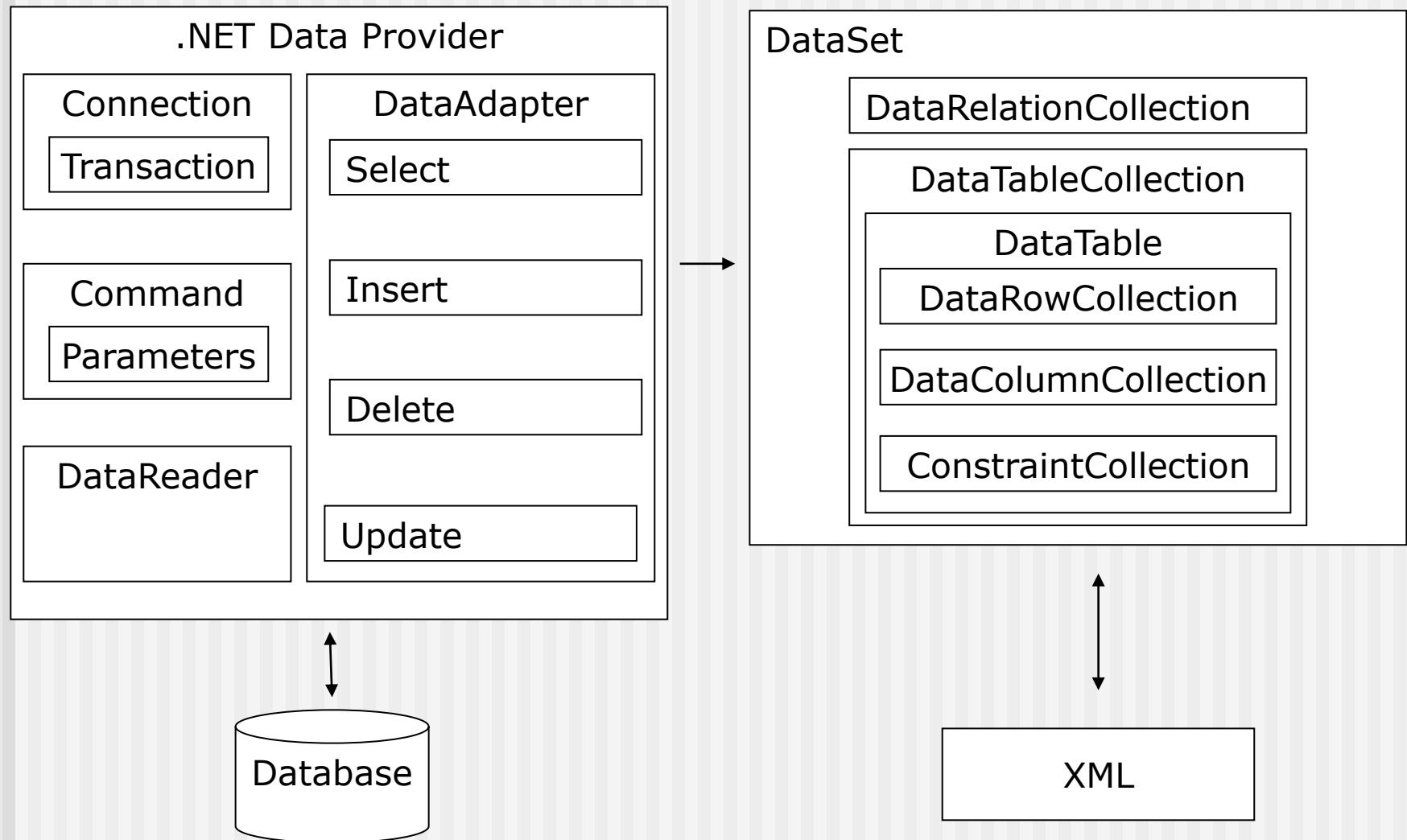
- it represents the standard input, output, error streams for console applications
- properties:
  - *WindowLeft, WindowTop, WindowHeight, WindowWidth, BackgroundColor, Title, etc*
- methods:
  - *Write(...), WriteLine(...)*
  - *Read(), ReadLine(), ReadKey()*

# Seminar 2

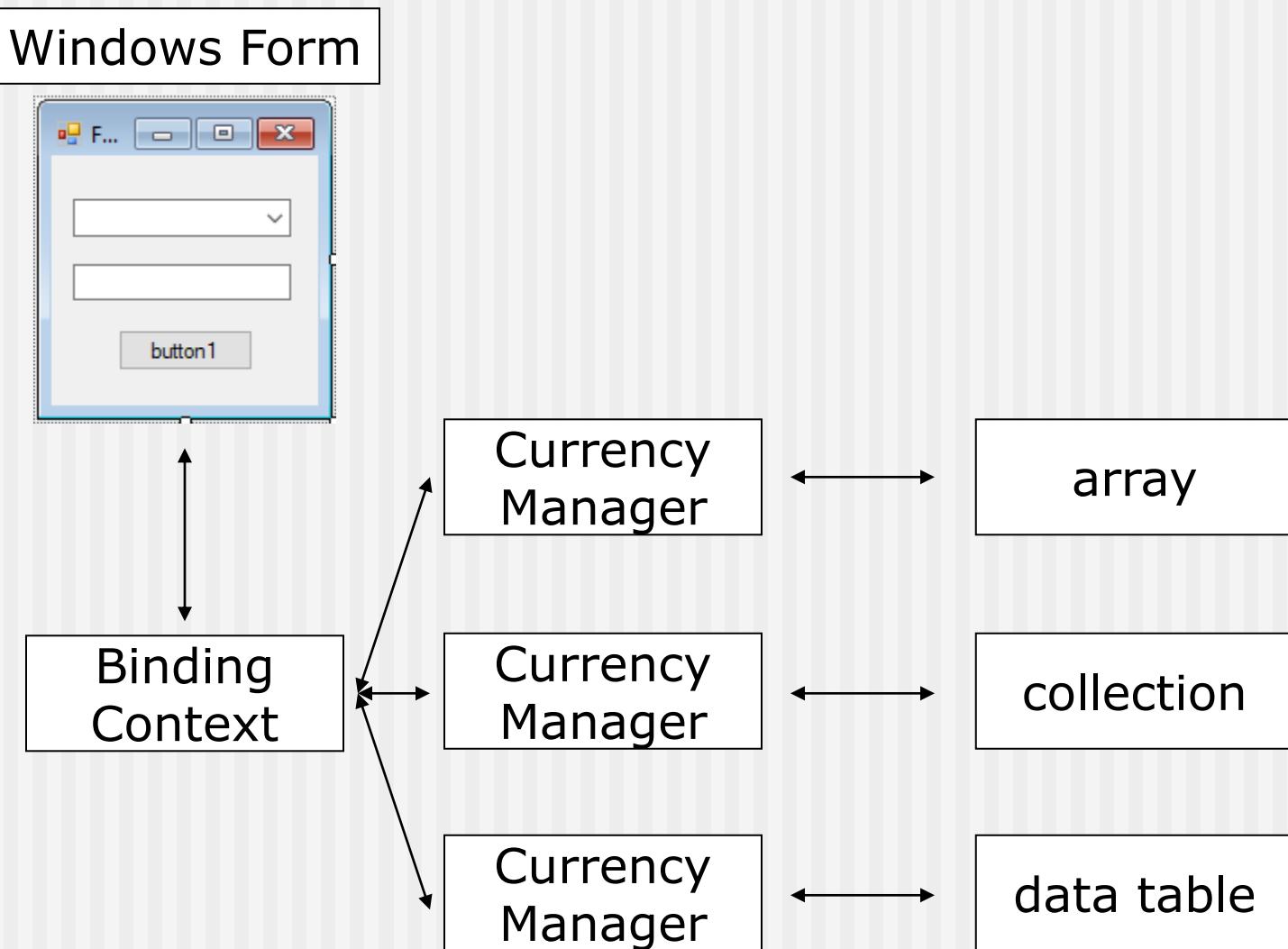
---

ADO.NET  
Data Binding

# The ADO.NET Architecture



# Data Binding – Windows Forms



# Windows Forms – Structures to Bind To

---

- list-based binding – the object should support the *IList* interface
- ADO.NET provides data structures suitable for data binding
  - *DataColumn*
  - *DataTable* – with columns, rows, constraints
  - *DataView* – customized view of a single data table
  - *DataSet* – with tables, relationships
  - *DataViewManager* – customized view of a  *DataSet*

# *CurrencyManager*

---

- keeps data-bound controls synchronized with each other
- for each data source associated with a Windows Form, there is one *CurrencyManager* object
- *currency* = the current position within a data structure
- the *Position* property - determines the current position of all the controls using the same *CurrencyManager* (the position within the underlying list)

# *BindingContext*

---

- manages the collection of *CurrencyManager* objects for any container control / form

# The *DataBindings* Property and the *Binding* Class

---

## ■ *DataBindings*

- property of a control
- retrieves the data bindings for the control
- one can bind any property of a control to the property of an object

## ■ *Binding* class

- the simple binding between the property value of an object and the property value of a control
- *Binding (String propertyName, Object dataSource, String dataMember)*

# Dataset – *Fill, Update*

---

- a dataset doesn't contain data by default
- data tables are filled with data when executing *TableAdapter* / data adapter (*SqlDataAdapter*) queries / commands

```
aTableAdapter.Fill(aDataSet.TableName);
```

- saving data:

```
aTableAdapter.Update(aDataSet.TableName);
```

- when the *Update* method is called, the value of the *RowState* property is examined to determine which records must be saved and which command (*InsertCommand*, *UpdateCommand*, *DeleteCommand*) must be executed

# Accessing Records

---

- every table exposes a collection of rows
- rows can be accessed through the collection's index or by using collection-specific statements in the host programming language
- typed dataset

```
TextBox1.Text = ds1.TableName[3].aField;
```

- untyped dataset

```
string val = (string)
```

```
ds1.Tables["TableName"].Rows[0]["aField"];
```

# Related Tables, *DataRelation* Objects

---

- the data in a dataset's tables can be interrelated
- *DataRelation* objects can be created to describe the relationships among the dataset's tables
- a *DataRelation* object can be used to locate related records:
  - the *GetChildRows* method
    - called on a *DataRow* in the parent table
    - returns an array of related child records (*DataRow* objects)

# Related Tables, *DataRelation* Objects

---

- a *DataRelation* object can be used to locate related records:
  - the *GetParentRow* method
    - called on a *DataRow* in the child table
    - returns a single *DataRow* from the parent table

# Related Tables, *DataRelation* Objects

- return the child records for a parent record

```
string custID = "VINET";
NorthwindDataSet.OrdersRow[] orders;
orders = (NorthwindDataSet.OrdersRow[])
    northwindDataSet.Customers.
    FindByCustomerID(custID).GetChildRows
        ("FK_Orders_Customers");
MessageBox.Show(orders.Length.ToString());
```

# Related Tables, *DataRelation* Objects

- return the parent record for a child record

```
int orderID = 10835;  
  
NorthwindDataSet.CustomersRow customer;  
customer = (NorthwindDataSet.CustomersRow)  
    northwindDataSet.Orders.  
        FindByOrderID(orderID).  
        GetParentRow("FK_Orders_Customers");  
  
MessageBox.Show(customer.CompanyName);
```

# Creating an Application in Visual Studio

---

- create a new *Windows Forms* project
  - *File -> New -> Project*
  - select *Windows Forms App*, specify a name, choose a location
  - click on *OK*
  - the project is created and added to the *Solution Explorer*

# Creating an Application in Visual Studio

## ■ create a *Data Source*

- start the *Data Source Configuration Wizard* (*Data Sources* window)
- choose a Data Source Type (e.g., Database)
- choose a Database Model (Dataset)
- choose the data connection
- select the database objects (e.g., the required tables)

# Creating an Application in Visual Studio

---

- drag items (e.g., a particular table) from the Data Sources window onto the form to create *data-bound controls*

=> the following components are now visible in the component tray:

- *DataSet* - typed dataset that contains tables
- *BindingSource* - binds the controls on the form to the table in the dataset
- *BindingNavigator* – allows the user to navigate through the rows in the table
- *TableAdapter* – communication between the database and the dataset

# Creating an Application in Visual Studio

---

- drag items (e.g., a particular table) from the Data Sources window onto the form to create *data-bound controls*

=> the following components are now visible in the component tray:

- *TableAdapterManager* - controls the order of individual inserts, updates, and deletes

# Constraints

---

- two types of constraints: unique / foreign key
- unique constraint
  - all values in a set of columns must be unique
  - class *UniqueConstraint*
- foreign key constraint
  - defines rules on how to change related child records when a parent record is updated or deleted
  - class *ForeignKeyConstraint*

# Constraints

---

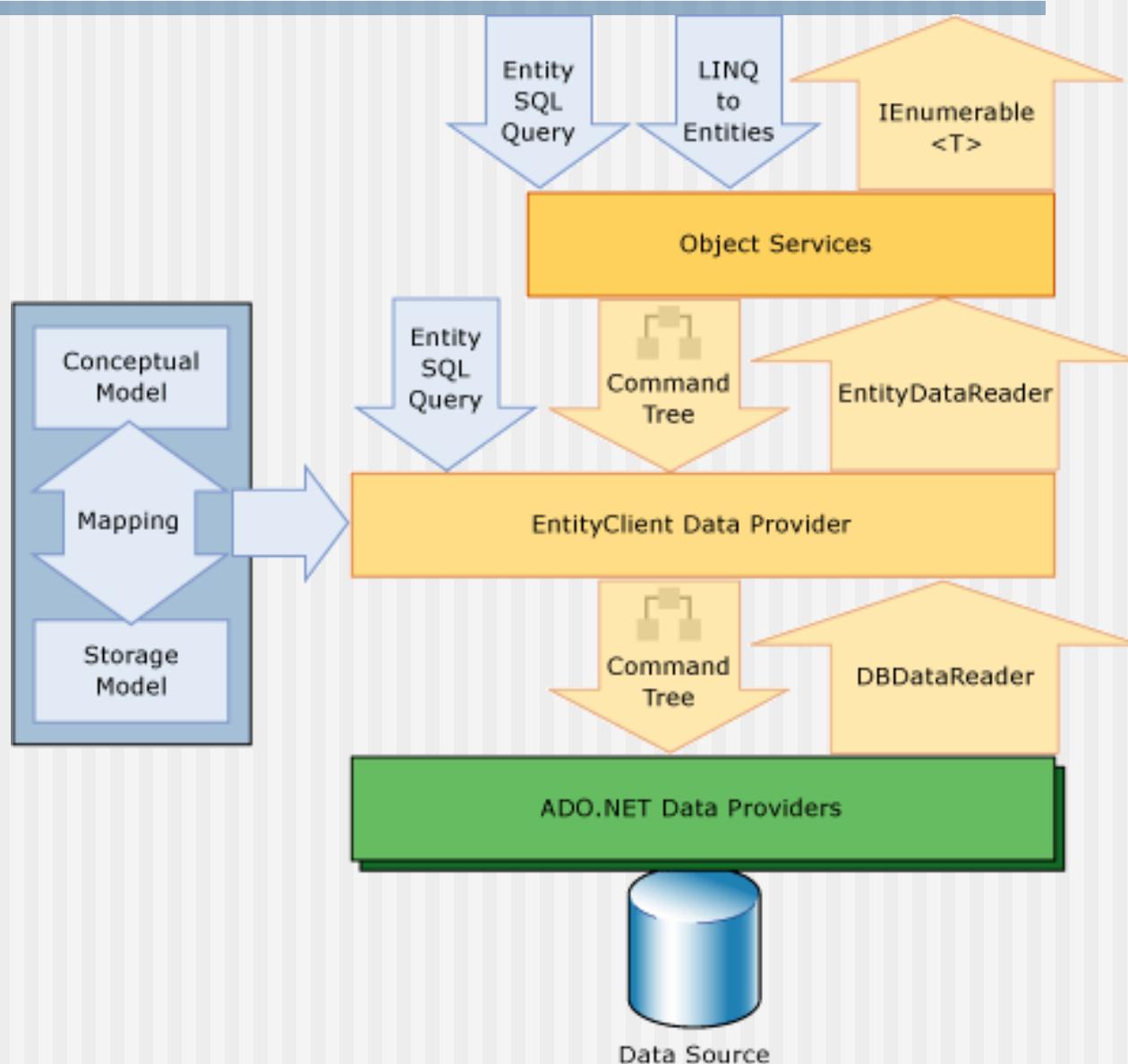
- a foreign key constraint is automatically added when creating a *DataRelation* object in a dataset
- a table's constraints can be retrieved using the *Constraints* property
- the boolean property *EnforceConstraints* in the *Dataset* class indicates whether constraints are enforced or not (by default it's *true*)

# Entity Framework

---

- set of technologies in ADO.NET that support the development of data-oriented applications
- developers can work with domain-specific objects and properties (as opposed to dealing with tables and columns)
- developers can query entities and relationships in the domain model; the Entity Framework translates such operations to data source-specific commands

# Entity Framework



# Seminar 3

---

## Transactions Concurrency Control in SQL Server

# Transactions in SQL Server

---

- combine multiple operations into a single unit of work
- the actions of each user are processed using a different transaction
- objective:
  - maximize throughput => transactions must be allowed to execute in parallel
- ACID properties
- serializability

# Transactions in SQL Server

---

- transaction invocation - mechanisms:
  - unless specified otherwise, each command is a transaction
  - BEGIN TRAN, ROLLBACK TRAN, COMMIT TRAN
  - SET IMPLICIT\_TRANSACTIONS ON
    - enables chained transactions
- SET XACT\_ABORT ON
  - SQL errors => rollback transaction

# Transactions in SQL Server

---

- local transactions / distributed transactions
- one can *nest* transactions (but transactions are not really nested)
- named *savepoints*
  - allow a portion of work in a transaction to be rolled back

# Concurrency Problems

- transaction isolation tackles four major concurrency problems:
  - *lost updates* - two transactions (writers) modify the same piece of data
  - *dirty reads* - a transaction (reader) reads uncommitted data, i.e., data changed by another ongoing transaction
  - *unrepeatable reads* - a row read by a transaction (reader) is changed by another transaction while the reader is in progress (if the 1<sup>st</sup> transaction reads the row again it will get different row values)

# Concurrency Problems

- transaction isolation tackles four major concurrency problems:
  - *phantoms* - transaction T1 reads a set of rows based on a search predicate; transaction T2 generates a new row (I/U) that matches the search predicate while T1 is ongoing; if T1 issues the same read operation, it will get an extra row

# Concurrency Problems

- transaction isolation is achieved through the locking mechanism
- *write locks*
  - exclusive locks, i.e., they don't allow other readers / writers
- *read locks*
  - allow other readers
  - don't allow other writers

# Concurrency Problems

- isolation levels determine:
  - whether read locks are acquired for read operations
  - the duration of the acquired locks
  - whether key-range locks are acquired to prevent phantoms

# Locking in SQL Server

---

- locks
  - usually managed by the Lock Manager (not via apps)
- lock granularity:
  - *Row / Key, Page, Table, Extent\*, Database*
- hierarchy of related locks
  - locks can be acquired at several levels
- lock escalation
  - > 5000 locks per object (pros & cons)

\* contiguous group of 8 pages

# Locking in SQL Server

- lock types:
- *Shared (S)*
  - read operations
- *Update (U)*
  - deadlock avoidance mechanism
- *Exclusive (X)*
  - write operations
  - incompatible with other locks

|   | S   | X  |
|---|-----|----|
| S | Yes | No |
| X | No  | No |

# Locking in SQL Server

---

- lock types:
- *Exclusive (X)*
  - read operations by other transactions can be performed only when using the NOLOCK hint or the READ UNCOMMITTED isolation level
  - a transaction always acquires exclusive locks to modify data (regardless of the isolation level)
  - exclusive locks are released when the transaction completes execution

# Locking in SQL Server

---

- lock types:
- *Intent* (IX, IS, SIX)
  - intention to lock (for performance improvement purposes)
- *Schema* (Sch-M, Sch-S)
  - schema modification, schema stability
  - Sch-M
    - prevents concurrent access to the table
  - Sch-S
    - doesn't allow DDL operations to be performed on the table

# Locking in SQL Server

---

- lock types:
- *Bulk Update (BU)*
  - bulk load data concurrently into the same table
  - BULK INSERT statement
  - TABLOCK hint
- *Key-Range*
  - protect a range of rows implicitly included in a set of records read by a transaction (under the SERIALIZABLE isolation level)

# Key-Range Locking

---

- lock sets of rows defined by a predicate  
...**WHERE grade between 8 and 10**
- lock existing data, as well as data that doesn't exist
- use predicate "**grade between 8 and 10**" 2 times => obtain the same rows

# Transaction Workspace Locks

---

- every connection to a database acquires a *Shared\_Transaction\_Workspace* lock
- exceptions - connections to master, tempdb
- used to prevent:
  - DROP
  - RESTORE

# Isolation Levels in SQL Server

---

- **READ UNCOMMITTED**
  - allows dirty reads (a transaction can see uncommitted changes made by another ongoing transaction)
  - no S locks when reading data
- **READ COMMITTED** (default isolation level)
  - a transaction can read data that has been previously read (but not modified) by another ongoing transaction
  - allows unrepeatable reads
  - S locks - released as soon as the SELECT operation is performed

# Isolation Levels in SQL Server

---

- **READ COMMITTED**
  - X locks - released at the end of the transaction
- **REPEATABLE READ**
  - holds S locks and X locks until the end of the transaction
  - dirty reads, unrepeatable reads - avoided
  - phantom reads can occur

# Isolation Levels in SQL Server

---

- **SERIALIZABLE**
  - highest isolation level
  - holds locks (including key-range locks) during the entire transaction
  - dirty reads, unrepeatable reads, phantom reads - avoided
- **SNAPSHOT**
  - working on a snapshot of the data
- **SQL syntax**
  - **SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL ...**

# Isolation Levels in SQL Server

| concurrency probl. / isolation level | Chaos | Read Uncommitted | Read Committed | Repeatable Read | Serializable |
|--------------------------------------|-------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| Lost Updates?                        | Yes   | No               | No             | No              | No           |
| Dirty Reads?                         | Yes   | Yes              | No             | No              | No           |
| Unrepeatable Reads?                  | Yes   | Yes              | Yes            | No              | No           |
| Phantoms?                            | Yes   | Yes              | Yes            | Yes             | No           |

# Deadlocks

---

- SQL Server uses deadlock detection
- the transaction that's least expensive to roll back is terminated
- capture and handle error 1205
- SET LOCK\_TIMEOUT
  - specify how long (in milliseconds) a transaction waits for a locked resource to be released
  - value 0 - immediate termination
- SET DEADLOCK\_PRIORITY
  - values: {*LOW*, *NORMAL*, *HIGH*, *<numeric-priority>*}
  - *<numeric-priority>* ::= {-10, -9, ..., 10}

# Reduce the Likelihood of Deadlocks

---

- transactions - short & in a single batch
- obtain / verify input data from the user before opening a transaction
- access resources in the same order
- use a lower / a row versioning isolation level

# Seminar 4

---

## Multiversioning

# Monitoring Locks

---

- SQL Server Profiler
- sp\_lock
- sys.dm\_tran\_locks
- sys.dm\_tran\_active\_transactions

# Resource Types

---

- RID – row in a heap
- Key – row in an index
- Page
- HoBT – heap or B-tree
- Object – table, view, etc
- File
- Database
- Metadata
- Application

# Isolation Levels in SQL Server

---

- **READ UNCOMMITTED**
  - allows dirty reads (a transaction can see uncommitted changes made by another ongoing transaction)
  - no S locks when reading data
- **READ COMMITTED** (default isolation level)
  - a transaction can read data that has been previously read (but not modified) by another ongoing transaction
  - allows unrepeatable reads
  - S locks - released as soon as the SELECT operation is performed

# Isolation Levels in SQL Server

---

- **READ COMMITTED**
  - X locks - released at the end of the transaction
- **REPEATABLE READ**
  - holds S locks and X locks until the end of the transaction
  - dirty reads, unrepeatable reads - avoided
  - phantom reads can occur

# Isolation Levels in SQL Server

---

- **SERIALIZABLE**
  - highest isolation level
  - holds locks (including key-range locks) during the entire transaction
  - dirty reads, unrepeatable reads, phantom reads - avoided
- **SNAPSHOT**
  - working on a snapshot of the data
- **SQL syntax**
  - **SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL ...**

# Multiversioning

---

- in a DBMS with multiversioning, every write operation on a data object  $O$  results in a new copy (i.e., *version*) of  $O$
- every time object  $O$  is read, the DBMS picks one of  $O$ 's versions
- writes do not overwrite each other

# Row-Level Versioning (RLV)

---

- introduced in SQL Server 2005
- useful when the user needs *committed* data, but not necessarily *the most recent version* of the data
- *Read Committed Snapshot Isolation* & *Full Snapshot Isolation*:
  - the reader never blocks; instead, it obtains data that has been previously committed
- the *tempdb* database stores the older versions of the data:
  - a snapshot of the database can be assembled using these old(er) versions

# Read Committed Snapshot Isolation

---

```
ALTER DATABASE MyDatabase  
SET READ_COMMITTED_SNAPSHOT ON
```

- operations see the most recent committed data as of the beginning of their execution =>
  - snapshot of the data at the command level
  - consistent reads at the command level
  - READ COMMITTED isolation level

# Full Snapshot Isolation

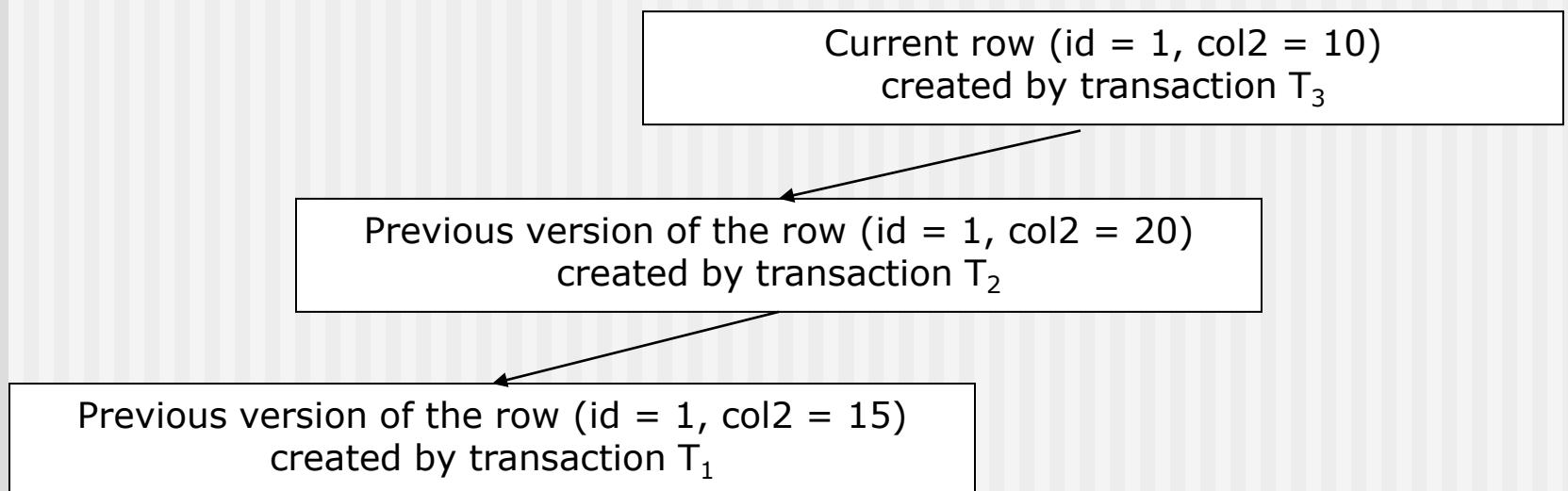
---

```
ALTER DATABASE MyDatabase  
SET ALLOW_SNAPSHOT_ISOLATION ON
```

- operations see the most recent committed data as of the beginning of their transaction =>
  - snapshot of the data at the transaction level
  - consistent reads at the transaction level
  - SNAPHOT isolation level

# Row-Level Versioning

- each version of a row is marked with the *transaction sequence number (XSN)* of the transaction that changed the row
- all versions are kept in a linked list:



# Row-Level Versioning

---

- advantages:
  - increased concurrency level
  - positive impact - triggers / indexes
- drawbacks:
  - monitoring the usage of the *tempdb* database => extra management requirements
  - update operations – slower
  - read operations – also affected (browsing the linked lists)

# Row-Level Versioning

---

- drawbacks
  - solves the writer-reader conflict, but simultaneous writers are still not allowed

# Triggers & RLV

---

- triggers can access 2 *pseudo-tables*:
  - the *deleted* table – contains removed rows or previous versions of updated rows
  - the *inserted* table – contains added rows or new versions of updated rows
- row versioning is used to create the *inserted* / *deleted* tables
- before SQL Server 2005:
  - the *deleted* table was created using the transaction log – affected performance

# Index Creation & RLV

---

- index creation / rebuilding in previous versions of SQL Server:
  - *clustered index* - table exclusively locked, data entirely inaccessible
  - *non-clustered index* - index not available
- using RLV:
  - indexes are created and rebuilt online
  - all requests are processed on versioned data

# Isolation Levels and Concurrency Anomalies

| concurrency problem/<br>isolation level | read uncommitted | read committed locking | read committed snapshot | repeatable read | snapshot   | serializable |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|------------|--------------|
| dirty reads                             | yes              | no                     | no                      | no              | no         | no           |
| unrepeatable reads                      | yes              | yes                    | yes                     | no              | no         | no           |
| phantoms                                | yes              | yes                    | yes                     | yes             | no         | no           |
| update conflicts                        | no               | no                     | no                      | no              | yes        | no           |
| concurrency model                       | pessimistic      | pessimistic            | optimistic              | pessimistic     | optimistic | pessimistic  |

# Query Governor and DBCC LOG

- SET QUERY\_GOVERNOR\_COST\_LIMIT *value*
  - *value*
    - the longest time in which a query can run
    - queries with an estimated cost greater than *value* are not allowed to run
    - value 0 – all queries are allowed to run
- DBCC LOG – transaction log
  - DBCC LOG (<DBname>,<Output>)
  - Output - level of detail (0-4)

# PIVOT / UNPIVOT

---

- change a table-valued expression into another table
- PIVOT rotates a table-valued expression; it transforms the unique values in one column in the expression into multiple columns in the output; aggregations are performed where necessary on any remaining column values that are required in the output
- UNPIVOT performs the opposite operation; it rotates columns in a table-valued expression into column values

# PIVOT

---

```
SELECT <non-pivoted column>,
       [first pivoted column] AS <column name>,
       [second pivoted column] AS <column name>,
       ...
       [last pivoted column] AS <column name>
FROM
    (<SELECT query that produces the data>) AS
  <source query alias>
PIVOT
(
    <aggregation function>(<column being aggregated>)
FOR
    [<column that contains values that become column headers>]
        IN ( [first pivoted column], [second pivoted column],
              ... [last pivoted column])
) AS <alias for the pivot table>
<optional ORDER BY clause>;
```

# Recap - The OUTPUT Clause

- provides access to *inserted*, *updated*, *deleted* records
- can implement certain functionalities which can otherwise be performed only via triggers

```
UPDATE Courses
SET cname = 'Database Management Systems'
OUTPUT inserted.cid, deleted.cname, inserted.cname,
      GETDATE(), SUSER_SNAME()
INTO CourseChanges
WHERE cid = 'DB2'
```

# Recap - The MERGE Statement

---

- a source table is compared with a target table; INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE statements can be executed based on the result of the comparison, i.e., INSERT / UPDATE / DELETE operations can be executed on the target table based on the result of a join with the source table

# Recap - MERGE – General Syntax

---

```
MERGE TargetTable AS Target
USING SourceTable AS Source
ON (Search terms)
WHEN MATCHED THEN
    UPDATE SET
        or
    DELETE
WHEN NOT MATCHED [BY TARGET] THEN
    INSERT
WHEN NOT MATCHED BY SOURCE THEN
    UPDATE SET
        or
    DELETE
```

# Recap - MERGE example

Books table

|   | BookID | Title                  | Author        | ISBN          | Pages |
|---|--------|------------------------|---------------|---------------|-------|
| 1 | 1      | In Search of Lost Time | Marcel Proust | NULL          | NULL  |
| 2 | 2      | In Search of Lost Time | NULL          | NULL          | 350   |
| 3 | 3      | In Search of Lost Time | NULL          | 9789731246420 | NULL  |

# Recap - MERGE example

---

MERGE Books

USING

```
(SELECT MAX(BookID) BookID, Title, MAX(Author)
Author, MAX(ISBN) ISBN, MAX(Pages) Pages
FROM Books
GROUP BY Title
) MergeData ON Books.BookID = MergeData.BookID
```

WHEN MATCHED THEN

```
UPDATE SET Books.Title = MergeData.Title,
Books.Author = MergeData.Author,
Books.ISBN = MergeData.ISBN,
Books.Pages = MergeData.Pages
```

WHEN NOT MATCHED BY SOURCE THEN DELETE;

# Recap - MERGE example

|   | BookID | Title                  | Author        | ISBN          | Pages |
|---|--------|------------------------|---------------|---------------|-------|
| 1 | 3      | In Search of Lost Time | Marcel Proust | 9789731246420 | 350   |

# Seminar 5

---

## Performance Tuning in SQL Server

# Query Tuning Methodology

---

- identify waits (bottleneck) at the server level
    - locks
    - transaction log
    - I/O
    - etc
  - correlate waits with queues
  - drill down to database / file level
  - drill down to process level
  - tune problematic queries
- \* DMVs - dynamic management views

# Identify Waits

---

- **sys.dm\_os\_wait\_stats**
  - returned table
    - wait\_type
    - resource waits (locks, latches, network, I/O), queue waits, external waits
    - waiting\_tasks\_count
    - wait\_time\_ms
    - max\_wait\_time\_ms
    - signal\_wait\_time\_ms
- reset DMV values
  - `DBCC SQLPERF ('sys.dm_os_wait_stats', CLEAR);`

# Correlate Waits with Queues

---

- **sys.dm\_os\_performance\_counters**
  - *object\_name* - the category of the counter
  - *counter\_name* - the name of the counter
  - *instance\_name* - the name of the specific instance of the counter; often contains the name of the database
  - *cntr\_value* - the current value of the counter
  - *cntr\_type* - the type of the counter (as defined by the Windows performance architecture)

# Correlate Waits with Queues

---

- **sys.dm\_os\_performance\_counters**
- > 500 counters: Access Methods, User Settable, Buffer Manager, Broker Statistics, SQL Errors, Latches, Buffer Partition, SQL Statistics, Locks, Buffer Node, Plan Cache, Cursor Manager by Type, Memory Manager, General Statistics, Databases, Catalog Metadata, Broker Activation, Broker/DBM Transport, Transactions, Cursor Manager Total, Exec Statistics, Wait Statistics, etc
- *cntr\_type* = 65792 → *cntr\_value* contains the actual value

# Correlate Waits with Queues

---

- **sys.dm\_os\_performance\_counters**
- *cntr\_type* = 537003264 → *cntr\_value* contains real-time results, which are divided by a “base” to obtain the actual value; by themselves, they are useless
  - to get a ratio: divide by a “base” value
  - to get a percentage: multiply the result by 100.0

# Correlate Waits with Queues

---

- **sys.dm\_os\_performance\_counters**
- *cntr\_type = 272696576*
  - time-based, cumulative counters
  - a secondary table can be used to log intermediate values

# Correlate Waits with Queues

---

- **sys.dm\_os\_performance\_counters**
- *cntr\_type* = 1073874176 and *cntr\_type* = 1073939712 → poll both the value (1073874176) and the base value (1073939712)
- poll both values again (e.g., after 15 seconds) ☺
- to obtain the desired result, compute:  
$$\text{UnitsPerSec} = (\text{cv2} - \text{cv1}) / (\text{bv2} - \text{bv1}) / 15.0$$

# Drill Down to Database / File Level

---

## ■ **sys.dm\_io\_virtual\_file\_stats**

- returns I/O information about *data files* and *log files*

## ■ parameters

- **database\_ID**
  - NULL = all databases
  - useful function: DB\_ID

- **file\_ID**
  - NULL = all files
  - useful function: FILE\_IDEX

# Drill Down to Database / File Level

---

## ■ **sys.dm\_io\_virtual\_file\_stats**

### ■ returned table

- database\_ID
- file\_ID
- sample\_ms - # of milliseconds since the computer was started
- num\_of\_reads - number of reads issued on the file
- num\_of\_bytes\_read - number of bytes read on the file
- io\_stall\_read\_ms - total time users waited for reads issued on the file

# Drill Down to Database / File Level

---

## ■ **sys.dm\_io\_virtual\_file\_stats**

### ■ returned table

- num\_of\_writes - number of writes
- num\_of\_bytes\_written - total number of bytes written to the file
- io\_stall\_write\_ms - total time users waited for writes to be completed on the file
- io\_stall - total time users waited for the completion of I/O operations (ms)
- file\_handle

# Drill Down to the Process Level

---

- a filter on duration / I/O only isolates individual processes (batch / proc / query)
- aggregate performance information by query pattern
  - patterns can be easily identified when using stored procedures
  - when one doesn't use stored procedures:
    - quick and dirty approach: LEFT(query string, n)
    - use a parser to identify the query pattern

# Indexes

---

- one of the major factors influencing query performance
  - impact on: filtering, joins, sorting, grouping; blocking and deadlock avoidance, etc
  - effect on modifications: positive effect (locating the rows); negative effect (cost of modifying the index)
- understanding indexes and their internal mechanisms
  - clustered/nonclustered, single/multicolumn, indexed views, indexes on computed columns, covering scenarios, intersection

# Indexes

---

- one should carefully judge whether additional index maintenance costs are justified by improvements in query performance
  - take into account the environment and the ratio between SELECT queries and data modifications
- *multicolumn indexes*
  - tend to be more useful than single-column indexes
  - the query optimizer is more likely to use such indexes to cover a query

# Indexes

---

- *indexed views* come with a higher maintenance cost than standard indexes
  - mandatory option
    - **WITH SCHEMABINDING**

# Tools to Analyze Query Performance

---

- graphical execution plan
- STATISTICS IO - scan count, logical reads, physical reads, *read-ahead* reads
- STATISTICS TIME - duration and net CPU time
- SHOWPLAN\_TEXT - SQL Server returns detailed information about how the statements are executed
- SHOWPLAN\_ALL - SQL Server returns detailed information about how the statements are executed, provides estimates of the resource requirements

# Tools to Analyze Query Performance

---

- STATISTICS PROFILE - a profile of the query execution
- STATISTICS XML - actual plan information in XML format
- SHOWPLAN\_XML - estimated plan information in XML format

# Query Optimization

---

- evaluating execution plans
  - sequences of physical/logical operations
- optimization - factors
  - search predicate
  - tables involved in joins
  - join conditions
  - result set size
  - list of indexes
- goal - avoid worst query plans
- SQL Server uses a *cost-based* query optimizer

# STATISTICS IO and STATISTICS TIME

The screenshot shows a SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) interface. The top window is titled 'EXPRESSIA-1\...\SQLQuery1.sql\*' and contains the following T-SQL script:

```
USE Adventureworks;
GO
DBCC DROPCLEANBUFFERS;
DBCC FREEPROCCACHE;
GO
SET STATISTICS IO ON;
SET STATISTICS TIME ON;
GO
SELECT * FROM Person.Contact;
```

The bottom window is titled 'Results' and displays the execution output:

```
SQL Server parse and compile time:
    CPU time = 0 ms, elapsed time = 359 ms.

(19972 row(s) affected)
Table 'Contact'. Scan count 1, logical reads 561, physical reads 1,
    read-ahead reads 559, lob logical reads 0, lob physical reads 0,
    lob read-ahead reads 0.

SQL Server Execution Times:
    CPU time = 125 ms, elapsed time = 1112 ms.
```

- DBCC DROPCLEANBUFFERS – clear data from the cache
- DBCC FREEPROCCACHE – clear execution plans from the cache

# STATISTICS IO and STATISTICS TIME

The screenshot shows a SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) interface. In the top-left pane, there is a query window titled "EXPRESSIA-1\E...\SQLQuery1.sql\*". The code in the window is:

```
USE Adventureworks;
GO
DBCC DROPCLEANBUFFERS;
DBCC FREEPROCCACHE;
GO
SET STATISTICS IO ON;
SET STATISTICS TIME ON;
GO
SELECT * FROM Person.Contact;
```

In the bottom-right pane, the "Results" tab is selected, displaying the execution output:

```
SQL Server parse and compile time:
    CPU time = 0 ms, elapsed time = 359 ms.

(19972 row(s) affected)
Table 'Contact'. Scan count 1, logical reads 561, physical reads 1,
    read-ahead reads 559, lob logical reads 0, lob physical reads 0,
    lob read-ahead reads 0.

SQL Server Execution Times:
    CPU time = 125 ms, elapsed time = 1112 ms.
```

- *CPU time, elapsed time* – CPU time and elapsed time to parse and compile the query, and to execute it

# STATISTICS IO and STATISTICS TIME

The screenshot shows a SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) interface. The top window is titled 'EXPRESSIA-1\...\SQLQuery1.sql\*' and contains the following T-SQL script:

```
USE Adventureworks;
GO
DBCC DROPCLEANBUFFERS;
DBCC FREEPROCCACHE;
GO
SET STATISTICS IO ON;
SET STATISTICS TIME ON;
GO
SELECT * FROM Person.Contact;
```

The bottom window displays the execution results. The 'Results' tab is selected, showing:

```
SQL Server parse and compile time:
    CPU time = 0 ms, elapsed time = 359 ms.

(19972 row(s) affected)
Table 'Contact'. Scan count 1, logical reads 561, physical reads 1,
    read-ahead reads 559, lob logical reads 0, lob physical reads 0,
    lob read-ahead reads 0.

SQL Server Execution Times:
    CPU time = 125 ms, elapsed time = 1112 ms.
```

- *physical reads* - number of pages read from the disk
- *read-ahead reads* - number of pages placed in the cache for the query

# STATISTICS IO and STATISTICS TIME

The screenshot shows a SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) window. The query editor tab bar shows 'EXPRESSIA-1\...\SQLQuery1.sql\*'. The main pane contains the following T-SQL script:

```
USE Adventureworks;
GO
DBCC DROPCLEANBUFFERS;
DBCC FREEPROCCACHE;
GO
SET STATISTICS IO ON;
SET STATISTICS TIME ON;
GO
SELECT * FROM Person.Contact;
```

The results pane displays the output of the executed query. It includes:

- SQL Server parse and compile time:  
CPU time = 0 ms, elapsed time = 359 ms.
- (19972 row(s) affected)
- Table 'Contact'. Scan count 1, logical reads 561, physical reads 1,  
read-ahead reads 559, lob logical reads 0, lob physical reads 0,  
lob read-ahead reads 0.
- SQL Server Execution Times:  
CPU time = 125 ms, elapsed time = 1112 ms.

- *scan count* - number of seeks or scans after reaching the leaves
- *logical reads* - number of pages read from the data cache

# STATISTICS IO and STATISTICS TIME

The screenshot shows a SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) interface. In the top window (Query Editor), a script named 'SQLQuery1.sql' is open, containing the following T-SQL code:

```
USE Adventureworks;
GO
DBCC DROPCLEANBUFFERS;
DBCC FREEPROCCACHE;
GO
SET STATISTICS IO ON;
SET STATISTICS TIME ON;
GO
SELECT * FROM Person.Contact WHERE firstname='Carla';
```

The bottom window (Results pane) displays the execution output. The 'Results' tab is selected. The output includes:

- SQL Server parse and compile time:  
CPU time = 110 ms, elapsed time = 128 ms.
- SQL Server parse and compile time:  
CPU time = 0 ms, elapsed time = 1 ms.
- (25 row(s) affected)
- Table 'Contact'. Scan count 1, logical reads 561, physical reads 0, re
- SQL Server Execution Times:  
CPU time = 0 ms, elapsed time = 13 ms.

Annotations with red circles highlight the following text:

- (25 row(s) affected)
- Table 'Contact'. Scan count 1, logical reads 561, physical reads 0, re
- SQL Server Execution Times:  
CPU time = 0 ms, elapsed time = 13 ms.

# STATISTICS IO and STATISTICS TIME

---

```
USE AdventureWorks
```

```
GO
```

```
CREATE NONCLUSTERED INDEX IDX_FirstName  
    ON Person.Contact(FirstName ASC)
```

```
GO
```

# STATISTICS IO and STATISTICS TIME

The screenshot shows a SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) interface. The top tab bar displays 'EXPRESSIA-1\...\SQLQuery1.sql\*' and 'Object Explorer Details'. The main window contains the following T-SQL code:

```
USE Adventureworks;
GO
DBCC DROPCLEANBUFFERS;
DBCC FREEPROCCACHE;
GO
SET STATISTICS IO ON;
SET STATISTICS TIME ON;
GO
SELECT * FROM Person.Contact WHERE firstname='Carl'
```

The results pane shows the execution statistics for the query:

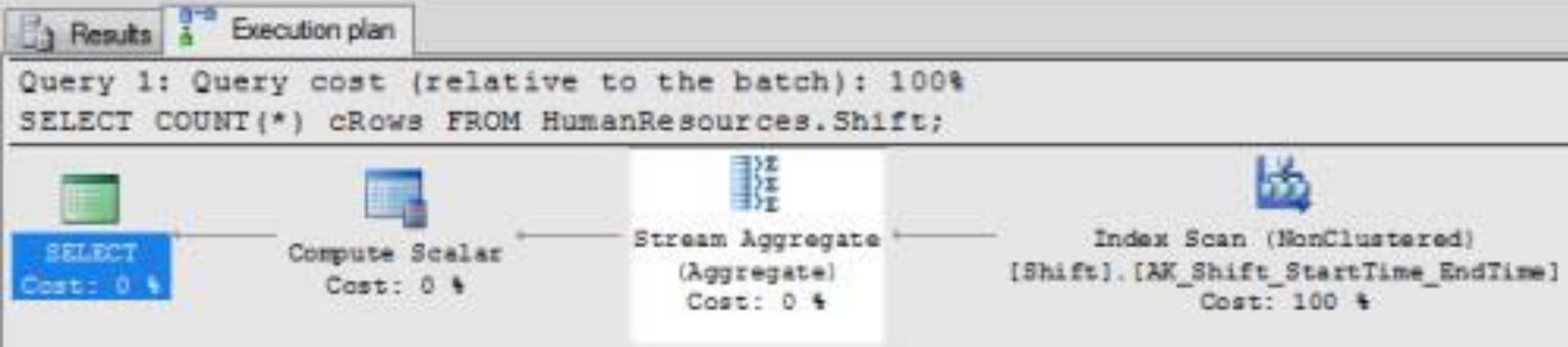
```
SQL Server parse and compile time:
    CPU time = 0 ms, elapsed time = 6 ms.
SQL Server parse and compile time:
    CPU time = 0 ms, elapsed time = 1 ms.

(25 row(s) affected)
Table 'Contact'. Scan count 1, logical reads 52, physical r
SQL Server Execution Times:
    CPU time = 0 ms, elapsed time = 2 ms.
```

Two specific statistics are highlighted with red ovals: 'logical reads 52' and 'elapsed time = 2 ms.'

# Graphical Execution Plan

```
USE AdventureWorks  
GO  
SELECT COUNT(*) cRows  
FROM HumanResources.Shift;  
GO
```



# SHOWPLAN\_ALL

```
SET SHOWPLAN_ALL ON;
GO
SELECT COUNT(*) cRows
FROM HumanResources.Shift;
GO
SET SHOWPLAN_ALL OFF;
GO
```

## Results

### StmtText

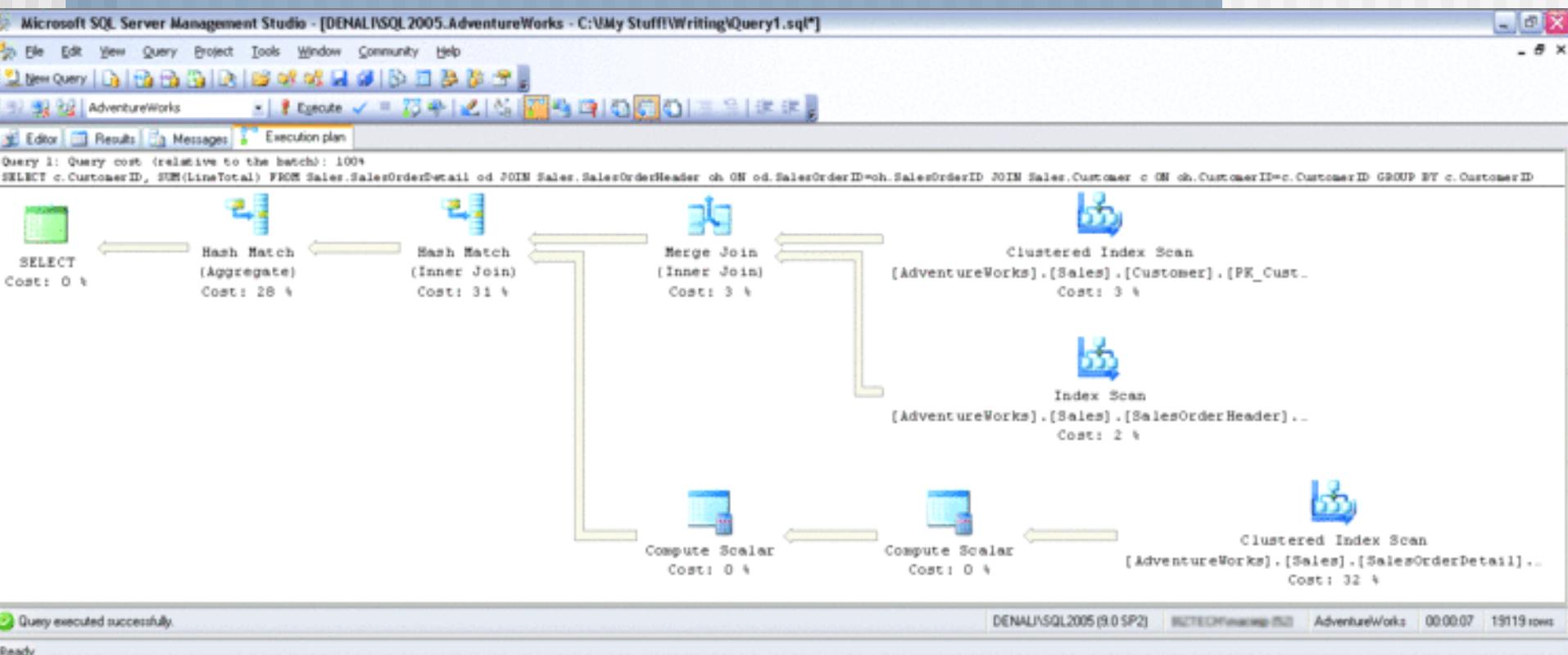
```
-----  
SELECT COUNT(*) cRows  
FROM HumanResources.Shift;  
|--Compute Scalar(DEFINE:([Expr1003]=CONVERT_IMPLICIT(int,[Expr1004],0)))  
|--Stream Aggregate(DEFINE:([Expr1004]=Count(*)))  
|--Index Scan(OBJECT:[master].[HumanResources].[Shift].[AK_Shif  
(4 row(s) affected)
```

# Graphical Execution Plan

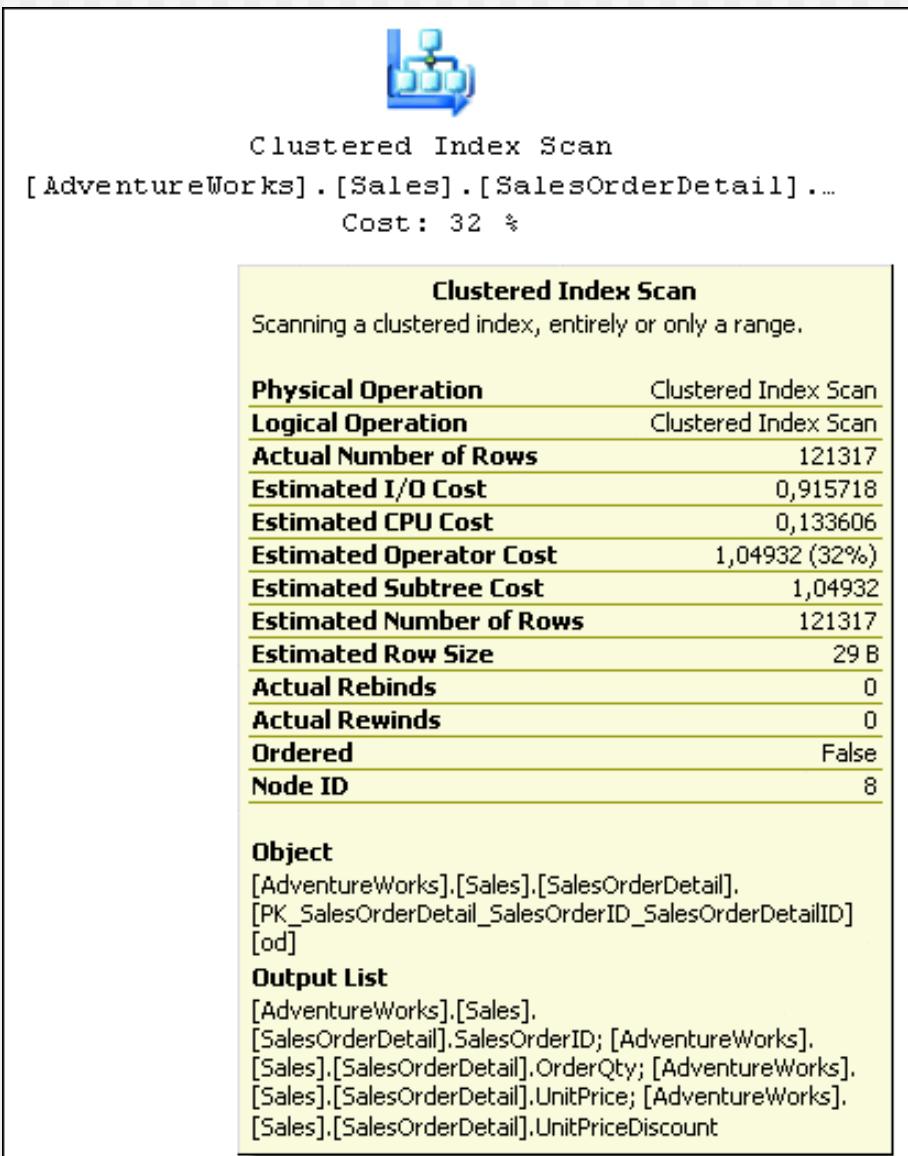
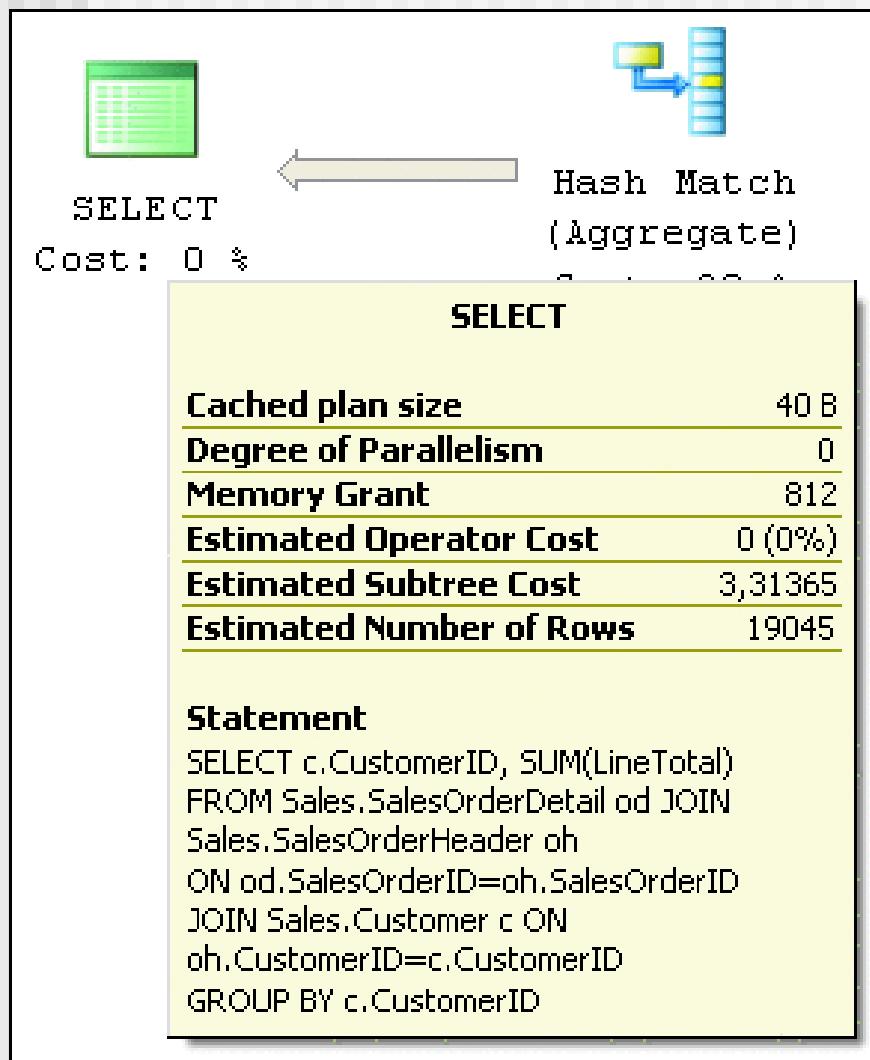
---

```
SELECT c.CustomerID, SUM(LineTotal)
FROM Sales.SalesOrderDetail od
JOIN Sales.SalesOrderHeader oh ON
    od.SalesOrderID = oh.SalesOrderID
JOIN Sales.Customer c ON
    oh.CustomerID = c.CustomerID
GROUP BY c.CustomerID
```

# Graphical Execution Plan



# Graphical Execution Plan



# Graphical Execution Plan

---

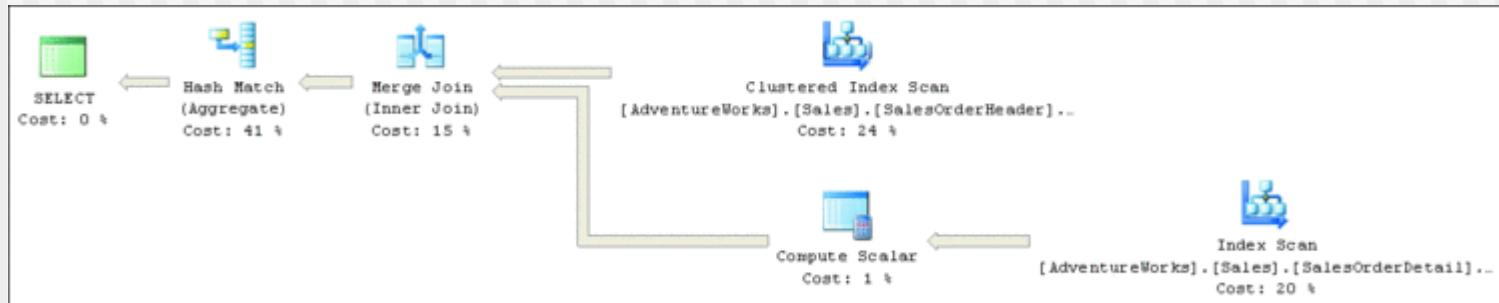
```
SELECT oh.CustomerID, SUM(LineTotal)
FROM Sales.SalesOrderDetail od
JOIN Sales.SalesOrderHeader oh ON
    od.SalesOrderID=oh.SalesOrderID
GROUP BY oh.CustomerID
```

# Graphical Execution Plan



# Graphical Execution Plan

```
CREATE INDEX IDX_OrderDetail_OrderID_TotalLine  
ON Sales.SalesOrderDetail (SalesOrderID)  
INCLUDE (LineTotal)
```



# Seminar 7

## Performance Tuning in SQL Server (II)\*

\* Not among the exam topics

# Stored Procedures

## ■ Advantages

- Performance advantages
- Server side
- Reuse of execution plans

## ■ Note: Requirements for plan reuse

- Plan reuse is not always a good thing

## ■ New in SQL Server 2005:

- OPTIMIZE FOR / RECOMPILE query hints

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## ■ **SET NOCOUNT ON**

- Number of affected rows is not displayed
- Reduces network traffic

## ■ **Use schema name with object name**

- Helps finding directly the compiled plan

```
SELECT * FROM dbo.MyTable  
EXEC dbo.StoredProcedure
```

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

- Do not use **sp\_** prefix
  - SQL Server first searches in the **master** database and then in the **current** database
- use UNION to implement an "OR" operation
- Avoid joins between two types of columns
  - Index is not used for a converted column!

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## ■ **sp\_executesql** vs **exec**

- Execution plan of a dynamic statement can be reused if ALL characters of two consecutive executions are exactly the same
- EXEC ('Select \* from Categories where ID = **1**' )
- EXEC ('Select \* from Categories where ID = **2**' )
- EXECUTE sp\_executesql N'Select \* from Categories where ID = **@ID', N'**@ID** int',  
**@ID=1;****

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## Cursors

- Generally use a lot of SQL Server resources and reduce the performance and scalability of applications
- Scenarios where cursors are suitable/better:
  - Procedural logic / must access the data in a row-by-row manner
  - Ordered calculations

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

- Do not use COUNT() in a subquery to do an existence check
- Use IF EXISTS (SELECT 1 FROM...)
  - The output of nested select is not used
  - Reduces processing time and network transfer
- Keep transactions short
  - Transactions' length affects blocking and deadlocking

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## Reuse execution plans

```
CREATE PROCEDURE test (@pid int)
AS
    SELECT * FROM Sales.SalesOrderDetail
    WHERE ProductID = @pid
```

**exec test(897)**



**exec test(870)**



# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## OPTIMIZE FOR / RECOMPILE query hints

```
ALTER PROCEDURE test (@pid int)
AS
    SELECT * FROM Sales.SalesOrderDetail
    WHERE ProductID = @pid
    OPTION (OPTIMIZE FOR (@pid = 870))
```

```
ALTER PROCEDURE test (@pid int)
AS
    SELECT * FROM Sales.SalesOrderDetail
    WHERE ProductID = @pid
    OPTION (RECOMPILE)
```

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## OPTIMIZE FOR UNKNOWN

- local variables are not known at optimization time
- example below: always generates the same execution plan

```
ALTER PROCEDURE test (@pid int)
AS
    DECLARE @lpid int
    SET @lpid = @pid
    SELECT * FROM Sales.SalesOrderDetail
    WHERE ProductID = @lpid
```

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## OPTIMIZE FOR UNKNOWN

- local variables are not known at optimization time
- example below: always generates the same execution plan

```
ALTER PROCEDURE test (@pid int)
AS
    SELECT * FROM Sales.SalesOrderDetail
    WHERE ProductID = @pid
    OPTION (OPTIMIZE FOR UNKNOWN)
```

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## OPTIMIZE FOR query hints

```
DECLARE @city_name nvarchar(30);
DECLARE @postal_code nvarchar(15);

SELECT * FROM Person.Address
WHERE City = @city_name AND PostalCode =
@postal_code OPTION
(OPTIMIZE FOR (@city_name = 'Seattle',
@postal_code UNKNOWN) );
```

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## Other query hints

- HASH GROUP / ORDER GROUP

```
SELECT ProductID, OrderQty, SUM(LineTotal) AS Total  
FROM Sales.SalesOrderDetail  
WHERE UnitPrice < $5.00  
GROUP BY ProductID, OrderQty  
ORDER BY ProductID, OrderQty  
OPTION (HASH GROUP, FAST 10);
```

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## Other query hints

- MERGE UNION / HASH UNION / CONCAT UNION

```
SELECT    ...
```

```
UNION
```

```
SELECT    ...
```

```
OPTION    ( MERGE UNION      )
```

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## Join hints

- LOOP JOIN / MERGE JOIN / HASH JOIN

```
SELECT * FROM Sales.Customer AS c
INNER JOIN Sales.vStoreWithAddresses AS sa
    ON c.CustomerID = sa.BusinessEntityID
WHERE TerritoryID = 5
OPTION (MERGE JOIN);
GO
```

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## Join hints

- FAST n - focus on returning the first ‘n’ rows as fast as possible

```
SELECT * FROM Sales.Customer AS c
INNER JOIN Sales.vStoreWithAddresses AS sa
    ON c.CustomerID = sa.BusinessEntityID
WHERE TerritoryID = 5
OPTION (FAST 10);
GO
```

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

## Join hints

- FORCE ORDER – “force” the optimizer to use the order of joins as they are listed in the query

```
SELECT * FROM Table1  
INNER JOIN Table2 ON Table1.a = Table2.b  
INNER JOIN Table3 ON Table2.c = Table3.d  
INNER JOIN Table4 ON Table3.e = Table4.f  
OPTION (FORCE ORDER) ;
```

# Stored Procedures – Optimization Tips

More about Controlling Execution Plans with Hints:  
<https://www.simple-talk.com/sql/performance/controlling-execution-plans-with-hints/>

# Dynamic Execution

## ■ Disadvantages:

- Ugly code; hard to maintain
- Requires direct permissions (in 2000)
- Security risk of SQL Injection

## ■ Use smartly:

- Dynamic filters and sorting to get good plans
- And more....

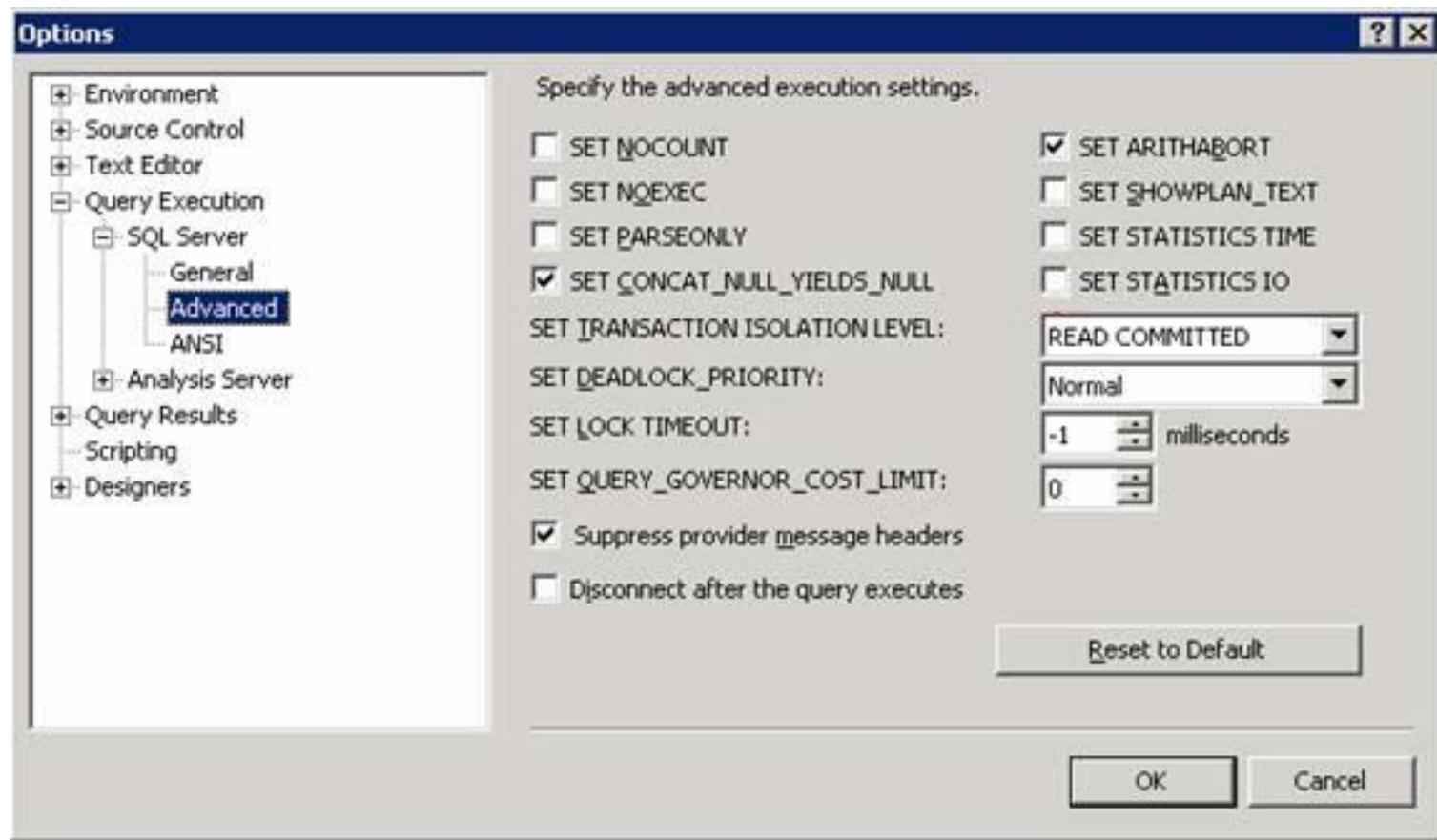
# Temporary Tables

- Useful when:
  - You have intermediate result sets that need to be accessed several times
  - You need a temporary storage area for data while running procedural code
- Use temp tables when:
  - You are handling large volumes of data, where plan efficiency is important and non-trivial
- Use table variables when:
  - You are handling small volumes of data, or when plans are trivial

# Triggers

- Expensive
- Main performance impact: accessing *inserted* and *deleted*
  - SQL Server 2000: transaction log
  - SQL Server 2005: row versioning (tempdb)
- Try to utilize set-based activities
- Identify affected rows and react accordingly
- UPDATE triggers record deletes followed by inserts in the log

# SQL Server Options



# Fragmentation

- Fragmentation: has a significant effect on query performance
  - *Logical fragmentation*: percent of *out-of-order* pages
  - *Page density*: page population
- Use DBCC SHOWCONTIG to get fragmentation statistics, and examine LogicalFragmentation and Avg. Page Density (full)
- Use the *sys.dm\_db\_index\_physical\_stats* function, and examine AvgFragmentation
- Rebuild indexes to handle fragmentation

## Other statistics

- Update statistics asynchronously
  - ***String summary statistics:*** frequency distribution of substrings is maintained for character columns
  - ***Asynchronous auto update statistics*** (default off)
  - **Computed column statistics**

## Other statistics

- *sys.dm\_exec\_query\_stats* - performance statistics for cached query plans
  - *total\_logical\_reads* / *total\_logical\_writes* - total number of logical reads/writes performed by executions of a plan since it was compiled
  - *total\_physical\_reads* - total number of physical reads performed by executions of this plan since it was compiled
  - *total\_worker\_time* - total amount of CPU time, in microseconds, that was consumed by executions of plan since it was compiled
  - *total\_elapsed\_time* - total elapsed time, in microseconds, for completed executions of the plan

## Model for the Practical Test

**I.** *Customers* is a table in a SQL Server database with schema *Customers*[CustomerID, FirstName, LastName, City, DateOfBirth]. The primary key is underlined.

*CustomerID* is the search key of the clustered index on *Customers*. The table doesn't have any other indexes.

Consider the interleaved execution below. There are no other concurrent transactions. The value of *City* for the customer with *CustomerID* 2 is *Timisoara* when T1 begins execution.

Answer questions 1-3 (each question has at least one correct answer).

| T1                                                                  | T2                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| BEGIN TRAN<br>SELECT City<br>FROM Customers<br>WHERE CustomerID = 2 |                                                                                    |
|                                                                     | BEGIN TRAN<br>UPDATE Customers<br>SET City = 'Cluj-Napoca'<br>WHERE CustomerID = 2 |
| UPDATE Customers<br>SET City = 'Bucuresti'<br>WHERE CustomerID = 2  |                                                                                    |
|                                                                     | ROLLBACK TRAN                                                                      |
| COMMIT TRAN                                                         |                                                                                    |

1. T1 and T2 run under READ UNCOMMITTED. After the *COMMIT TRAN* statement in T1, the *City* value for the customer with *CustomerID* 2 is:

- a. *Timisoara*
- b. *Cluj-Napoca*
- c. *Bucuresti*
- d. *NULL*
- e. None of the above answers is correct.

2. T1 runs under READ COMMITTED and T2 under REPEATABLE READ. After the *COMMIT TRAN* statement in T1, the *City* value for the customer with *CustomerID* 2 is:

- a. *Timisoara*
- b. *Cluj-Napoca*
- c. *Bucuresti*
- d. *NULL*
- e. None of the above answers is correct.

3. T1 runs under REPEATABLE READ and T2 runs under READ COMMITTED. Then:

- a. T1 doesn't acquire a shared lock for its *SELECT* statement.
- b. T1 acquires a shared lock for its *SELECT* statement.
- c. T2 needs an exclusive lock for its *UPDATE* statement.
- d. T1 needs an exclusive lock for its *UPDATE* statement.
- e. None of the above answers is correct.

time ↓

**II.** Create a database for a MiniFacebook system. The entities of interest to the problem domain are: *Users*, *Pages*, *Likes*, *Categories*, *Posts*, and *Comments*. Each user has a name, current city and date of birth. A user can like multiple pages. The system stores the date of each like. A page has a name and a category, e.g., *sports*, *movies*, *music*, etc. A category also has a category description. Users write posts and comment on existing posts. A user's post has a date, text, and number of shares. A comment is anonymous, has a text, a date, and a flag indicating whether it's a top comment for the corresponding post.

1. Write an SQL script that creates the corresponding relational data model.
2. Create a Master/Detail Form that allows one to display the posts for a given user, to carry out <insert, update, delete> operations on the posts of a given user. The form should have a *DataGridView* named *dgvUsers* to display the users, a *DataGridView* named *dgvPosts* to display all the posts of the selected user, and a button for saving added / deleted / modified posts. You must use the following classes: *DataSet*, *SqlDataAdapter*, *BindingSource*.
3. Create a scenario that reproduces the non-repeatable read concurrency issue on this database. Explain why the non-repeatable read occurs, and describe a solution to prevent this concurrency issue. Don't use stored procedures.

|            |          |           |
|------------|----------|-----------|
| <b>I.</b>  | <b>1</b> | <b>1p</b> |
| 2          |          | 1p        |
| 3          |          | 1p        |
| <b>II.</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>2p</b> |
| 2          |          | 2p        |
| 3          |          | 2p        |
|            |          | 1p of     |

- Northwind DB, tables Customers and Orders in 1:n
- Visual Studio -> *Create a new project* -> *Windows Forms App (.NET Framework)*
- specify a Project name, choose a Location, Create
- *Toolbox* -> drag and drop 2 *DataGridView* controls and a *Button* onto the form
- rename *DataGridViews* to *dgvCustomers* and *dgvOrders* (select *DataGridView* on form, change (*Name*) value in the *Properties* window)
- rename *Button* to *btnUpdateDB*, change its text to *Update DB ((Name))* and *Text* in the *Properties* window)
- right click on *Form1.cs* in *Solution Explorer* -> View Code

```
//namespaces
using System.Data;
using System.Data.SqlClient;
...
//required objects
SqlConnection dbConn;
SqlDataAdapter daCustomers, daOrders;
DataSet ds;
SqlCommandBuilder cb;
BindingSource bsCustomers, bsOrders;
...
//get data from the db, e.g., in the handler for the form Load's event,
//which can be created by double clicking on the form
dbConn = new SqlConnection(@"Data Source = SQLSRVEXPRESS; Initial Catalog =
Northwind; Integrated Security = true");
ds = new DataSet();
daCustomers = new SqlDataAdapter("SELECT * FROM Customers", dbConn);
daOrders = new SqlDataAdapter("SELECT * FROM Orders", dbConn);
cb = new SqlCommandBuilder(daOrders);
daCustomers.Fill(ds, "Customers");
daOrders.Fill(ds, "Orders");
DataRelation dr = new DataRelation("FK_Orders_Customers",
ds.Tables["Customers"].Columns["CustomerID"],
ds.Tables["Orders"].Columns["CustomerID"]);
ds.Relations.Add(dr);
//data binding
bsCustomers = new BindingSource();
bsCustomers.DataSource = ds;
bsCustomers.DataMember = "Customers";
bsOrders = new BindingSource();
bsOrders.DataSource = bsCustomers;
bsOrders.DataMember = "FK_Orders_Customers";
dgvCustomers.DataSource = bsCustomers;
dgvOrders.DataSource = bsOrders;
```

- run the app (F5)

- o when a different customer is selected in the customers DataGridView, the orders DataGridView displays the selected customer's orders

...  
//add code to send changes back to the db (the handler for the click event of the update db button, which can be created by double clicking the button on the form)  
daOrders.Update(ds, "Orders");

- run the app
- add / modify / remove orders through the orders DataGridView
- update the DB by clicking the button
- check the changes in the DB

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 12

Azure Machine Learning\*

Azure Stream Analytics\*

\* not among the exam topics

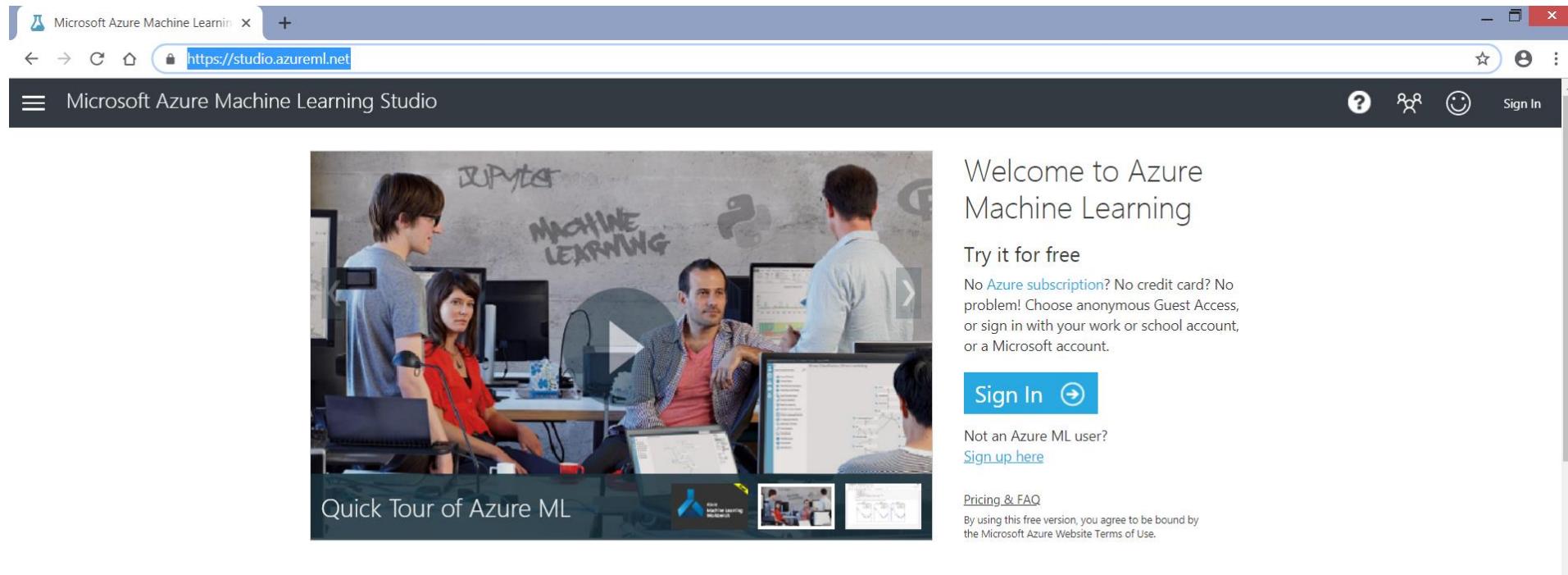
# Azure Machine Learning

# Azure Machine Learning

- build / train / deploy machine learning models
  - Machine Learning Studio
- \* Machine Learning Studio
- create the model
    - obtain the data, prepare the data, define the features
  - training
    - choose the algorithm, apply the algorithm
  - testing the model
    - predict car prices for other vehicles
    - test the quality of the results

# Data science Experiment – Car Price Prediction

- <https://studio.azureml.net/> -> Sign in



The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure Machine Learning Studio homepage. At the top, there's a navigation bar with a search icon, a 'Microsoft Azure Machine Learning' logo, and a 'Sign In' button. Below the bar, the title 'Microsoft Azure Machine Learning Studio' is displayed. To the right of the title are icons for help, user, and smiley face, followed by a 'Sign In' link. The main content area features a large image of four people working at a desk with multiple monitors, with the words 'DATA SCIENCE' and 'MACHINE LEARNING' written on the wall behind them. A play button icon is overlaid on the image. Below this image, the text 'Welcome to Azure Machine Learning' is followed by 'Try it for free'. It explains that no Azure subscription or credit card is required, and users can choose anonymous Guest Access, sign in with their work or school account, or a Microsoft account. A prominent blue 'Sign In' button with a white arrow is located below this text. Further down, it says 'Not an Azure ML user?' and provides a 'Sign up here' link. At the bottom left, there's a section titled 'Announcements NEW!' with three items: 'Azure Machine Learning Studio R Runtime Upgrade' (aired on October 31, 2018), 'Mining Campaign Funds' (aired on August 03, 2017), and 'Inside the Data Science VM' (aired on June 21, 2016). Each announcement has a 'Learn More' link.

## Announcements NEW!

### Azure Machine Learning Studio R Runtime Upgrade

Aired on October 31, 2018

The R language engine in the Execute R Script module of Azure Machine Learning Studio has added a new R runtime version -- Microsoft R Open (MRO) 3.4.4. MRO 3.4.4 is based on open-source CRAN R 3.4.4 and is therefore compatible with packages that works with that version of R.

> [Learn More](#)

### Mining Campaign Funds

Aired on August 03, 2017

Play with 2016 Presidential Campaign finance data while learning how to prepare a large dataset for machine learning by processing and engineering features. This sample experiment works on a 2.5 GB dataset and will take about 20 minutes to run in its entirety.

> [Learn More](#)

### Inside the Data Science VM

Aired on June 21, 2016

DSVM is a custom Azure Virtual Machine image that is published on the Azure marketplace and available on both Windows and Linux. It contains several popular data science and development tools both from Microsoft and from the open source community all pre-installed and pre-configured and ready to use. We will cover best practices that would show how you can use the DSVM effectively to run your next data science or analytics project.

> [Learn More](#)

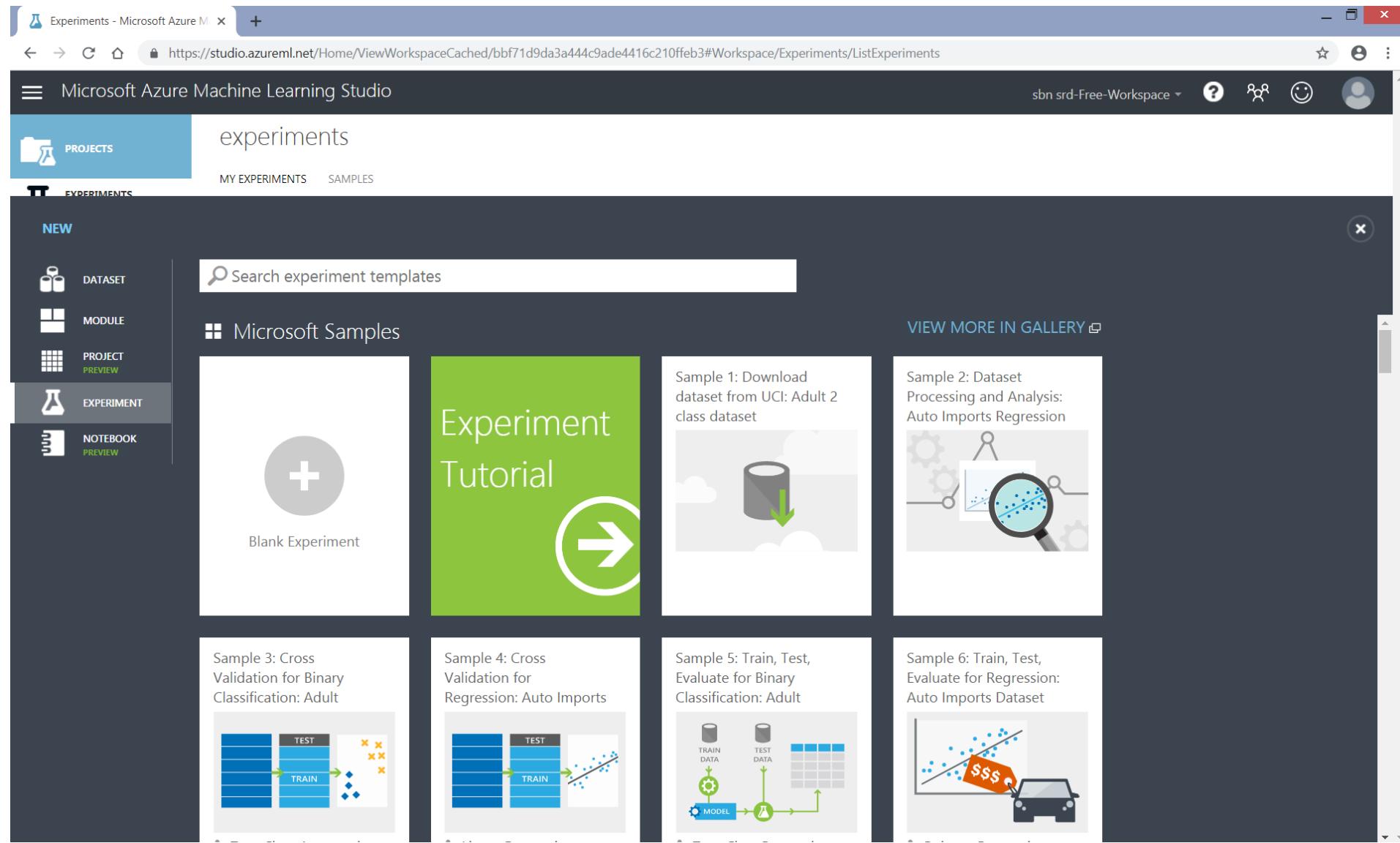
# Car Price Prediction

\* create an experiment: + New

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure Machine Learning Studio interface. The left sidebar has a blue header 'PROJECTS' and a white body with icons for EXPERIMENTS, WEB SERVICES, NOTEBOOKS, DATASETS, TRAINED MODELS, and SETTINGS. The main content area has a dark header 'Microsoft Azure Machine Learning Studio' with a 'PROJECTS' tab selected. Below it is a sub-header 'experiments' with tabs 'MY EXPERIMENTS' and 'SAMPLES'. A search bar at the top right includes filters for NAME, AUTHOR, STATUS, LAST EDITED, PROJECT, and a magnifying glass icon. The central area displays the message 'No experiments found' and a status bar indicating '0 items selected'. At the bottom, there's a dark footer bar with a 'NEW' button containing a plus sign, a trash can icon labeled 'DELETE', and a folder icon labeled 'ADD TO PROJECT'.

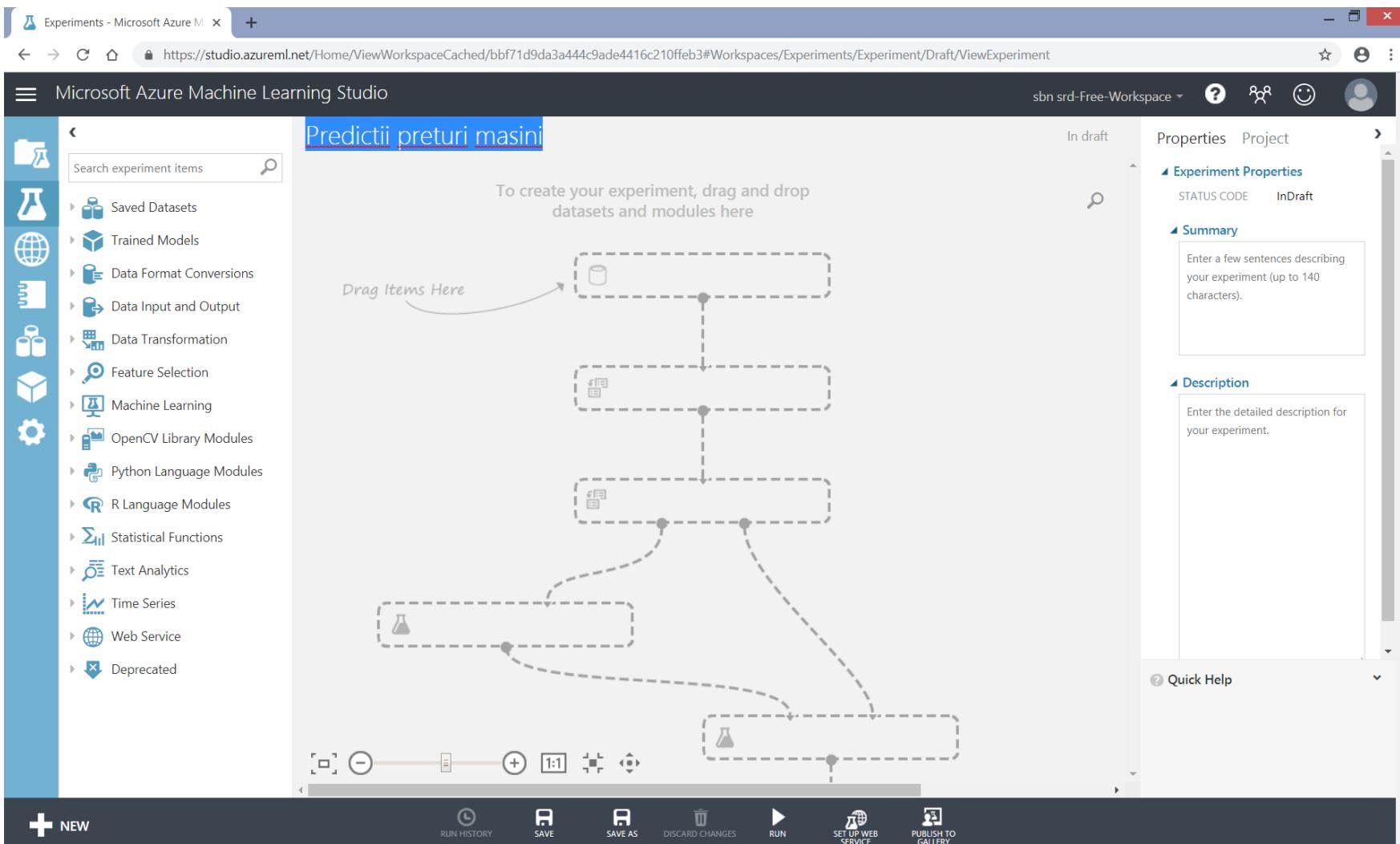
# Car Price Prediction

\* create an experiment: Blank Experiment



# Car Price Prediction

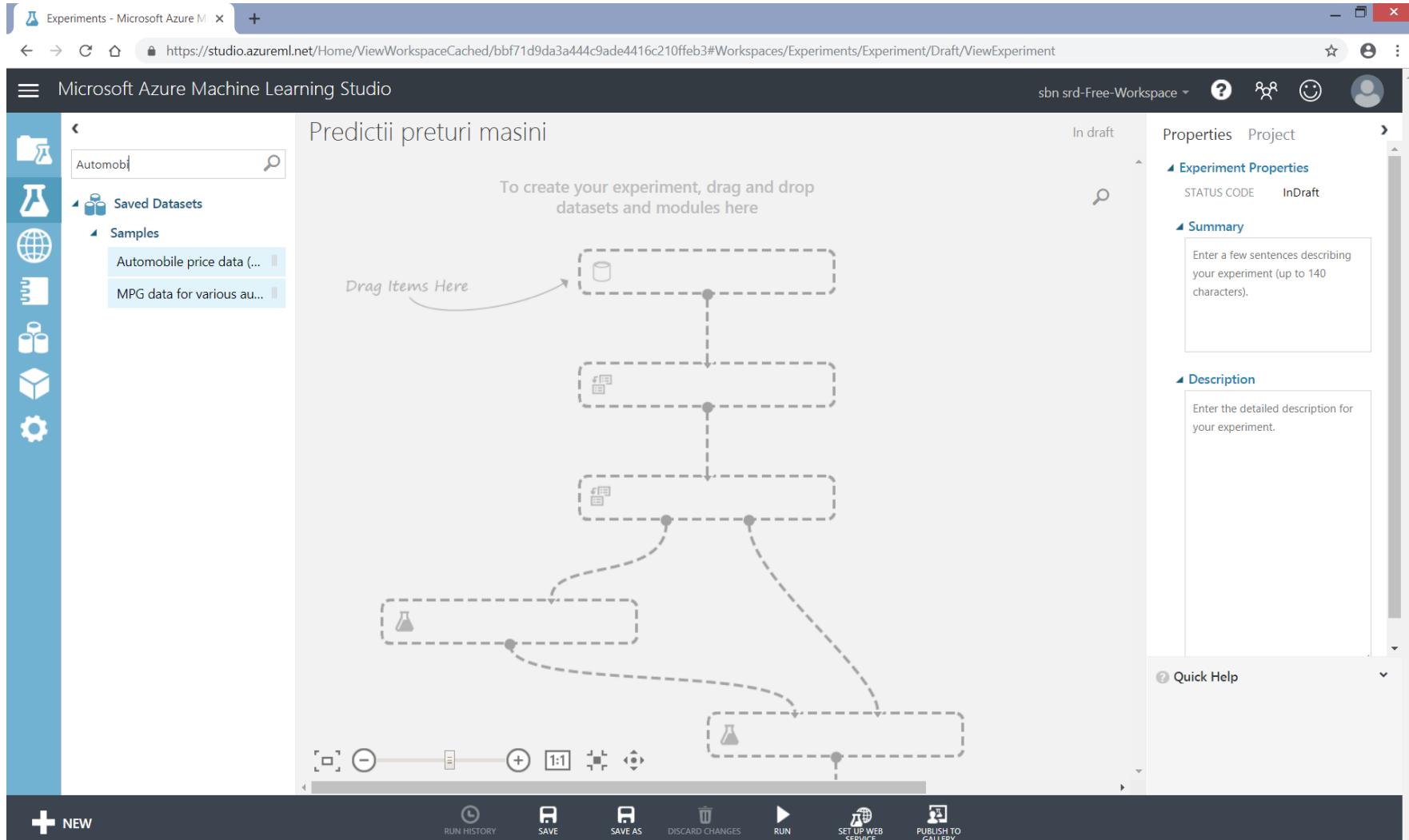
- \* create an experiment
  - experiment name



# Car Price Prediction

\* selecting the data source

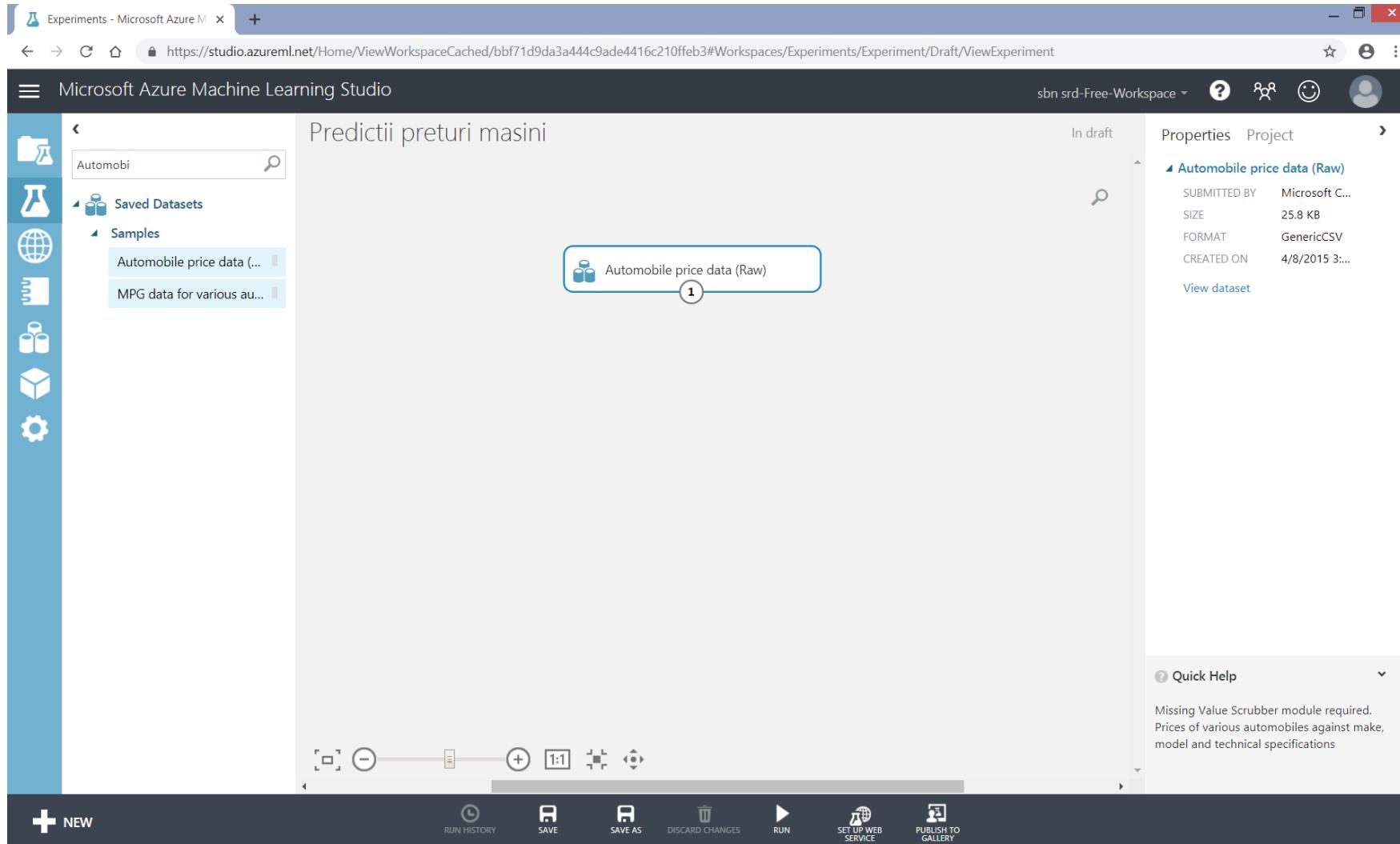
- dataset *Automobile price data (raw)*



# Car Price Prediction

\* selecting the data source

- drag & drop dataset *Automobile price data (raw)* onto the canvas



# Car Price Prediction

\* displaying the data

- dataset output port -> *Visualize*

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure Machine Learning Studio interface. On the left, there's a sidebar with icons for experiments, datasets, notebooks, and more. The main area displays a dataset titled "Predictii preturi masini". In the center, a context menu is open over a dataset named "Automobile price data (Raw)". The menu options include "Download", "Visualize" (which is highlighted with a blue circle), "Generate Data Access Code...", and "Open in a new Notebook". To the right of the menu, there's a "Properties" panel showing details about the dataset, such as it was submitted by Microsoft C..., has a size of 25.8 KB, and is in GenericCSV format, created on 4/8/2015. Below the properties, there's a link to "View dataset". At the bottom of the screen, there's a navigation bar with buttons for "NEW", "RUN HISTORY", "SAVE", "PUBLISH TO GALLERY", and others.

Predictii preturi masini

In draft

Properties Project

Automobile price data (Raw)

SUBMITTED BY Microsoft C...  
SIZE 25.8 KB  
FORMAT GenericCSV  
CREATED ON 4/8/2015 3:...

View dataset

Quick Help

Missing Value Scrubber module required.  
Prices of various automobiles against make,  
model and technical specifications

Automobile price data (Raw)

dataset (GenericCSV)

Download

Visualize

Generate Data Access Code...

Open in a new Notebook

NEW RUN HISTORY SAVE AS DISCARD CHANGES RUN SET UP WEB SERVICE PUBLISH TO GALLERY

# Car Price Prediction

\* displaying the data

- row – data about a car

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure Machine Learning Studio interface. The title bar reads "Experiments - Microsoft Azure M" and the URL is "https://studio.azureml.net/Home/ViewWorkspaceCached/bbf71d9da3a444c9ade4416c210ffeb3#Workspaces/Experiments/Experiment/Draft/ViewExperiment". The main area displays a dataset titled "Predictii preturi masini" (Prediction of car prices). The dataset summary indicates 205 rows and 26 columns. The columns listed are: symboling, normalized-losses, make, fuel-type, aspiration, num-of-doors, body-style, drive-wheels, and engine-location. Below this, a table shows the first few rows of data:

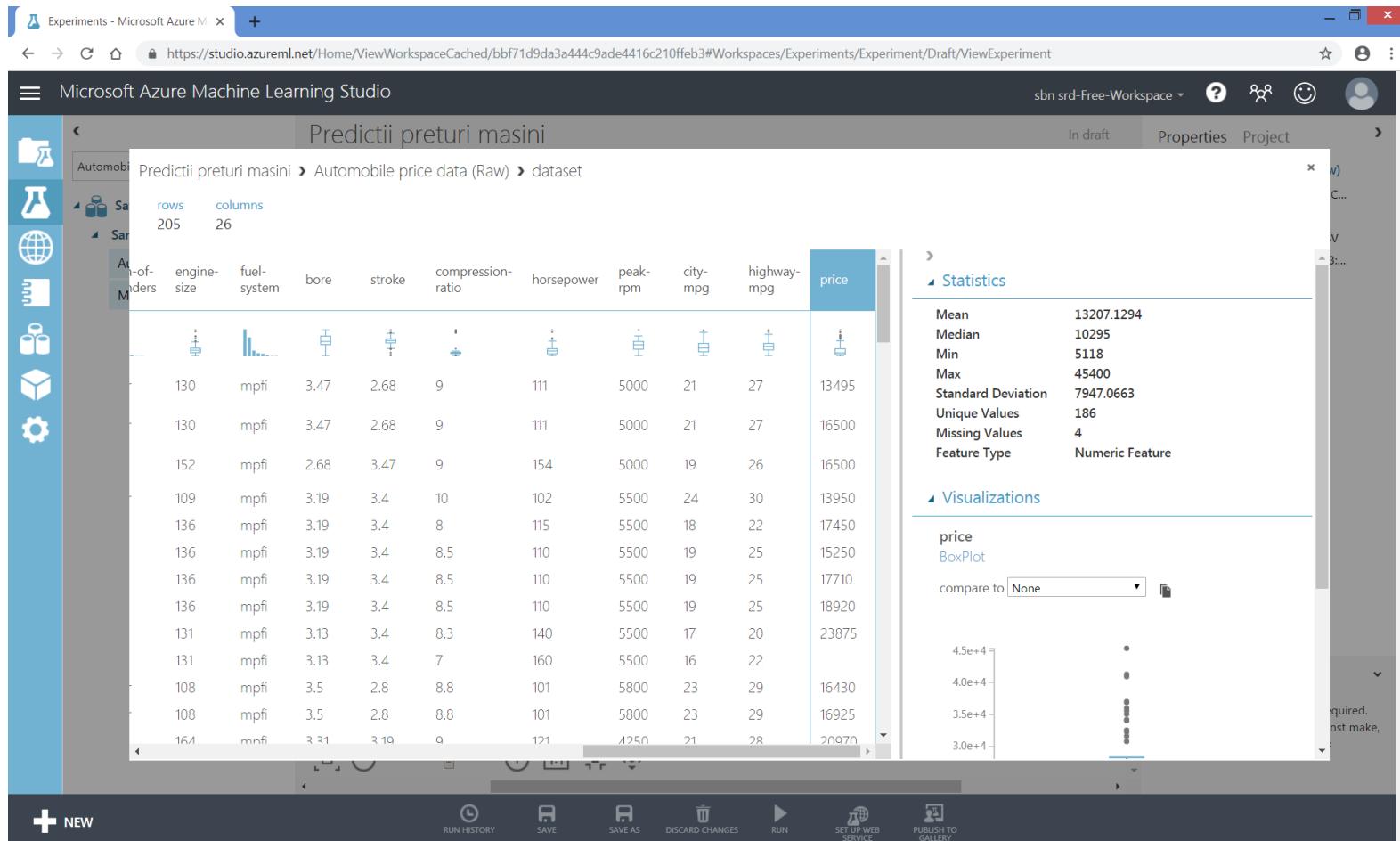
|   | symboling | normalized-losses | make        | fuel-type | aspiration | num-of-doors | body-style  | drive-wheels | engine-location |
|---|-----------|-------------------|-------------|-----------|------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 3 |           |                   | alfa-romero | gas       | std        | two          | convertible | rwd          | front           |
| 3 |           |                   | alfa-romero | gas       | std        | two          | convertible | rwd          | front           |
| 1 |           | 164               | audi        | gas       | std        | four         | sedan       | fwd          | front           |
| 2 | 164       |                   | audi        | gas       | std        | four         | sedan       | 4wd          | front           |
| 2 |           |                   | audi        | gas       | std        | two          | sedan       | fwd          | front           |
| 1 | 158       |                   | audi        | gas       | std        | four         | sedan       | fwd          | front           |
| 1 |           |                   | audi        | gas       | std        | four         | wagon       | fwd          | front           |
| 1 | 158       |                   | audi        | gas       | turbo      | four         | sedan       | fwd          | front           |
| 0 |           |                   | audi        | gas       | turbo      | two          | hatchback   | 4wd          | front           |
| 2 | 192       |                   | bmw         | gas       | std        | two          | sedan       | rwd          | front           |
| 0 | 192       |                   | bmw         | gas       | std        | four         | sedan       | rwd          | front           |
| 0 | 188       |                   | bmw         | gas       | std        | two          | sedan       | rwd          | front           |

To the right of the table, there are sections for "Statistics" and "Visualizations". The "Visualizations" section contains a histogram with the text "To view, select a column in the table." At the bottom of the screen, there is a navigation bar with icons for NEW, RUN HISTORY, SAVE, DISCARD CHANGES, RUN, SET UP WEB SERVICE, and PUBLISH TO GALLERY.

# Car Price Prediction

\* displaying the data

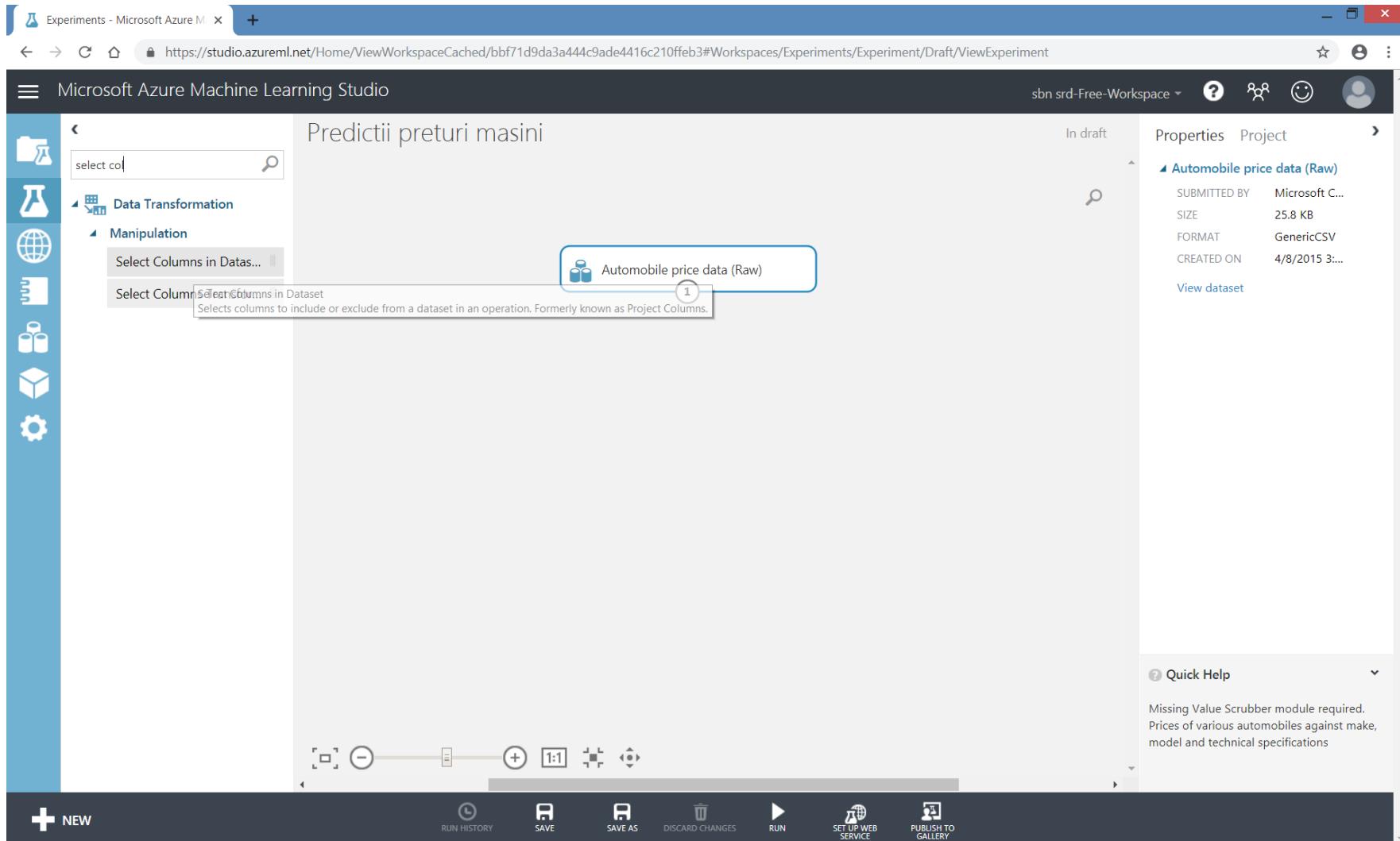
- columns – variables
- *target column - price*



# Car Price Prediction

\* preparing the data

- eliminate column with missing values – *normalized-losses*



# Database Management Systems

Lecture 12

Azure Machine Learning\*

Azure Stream Analytics\*

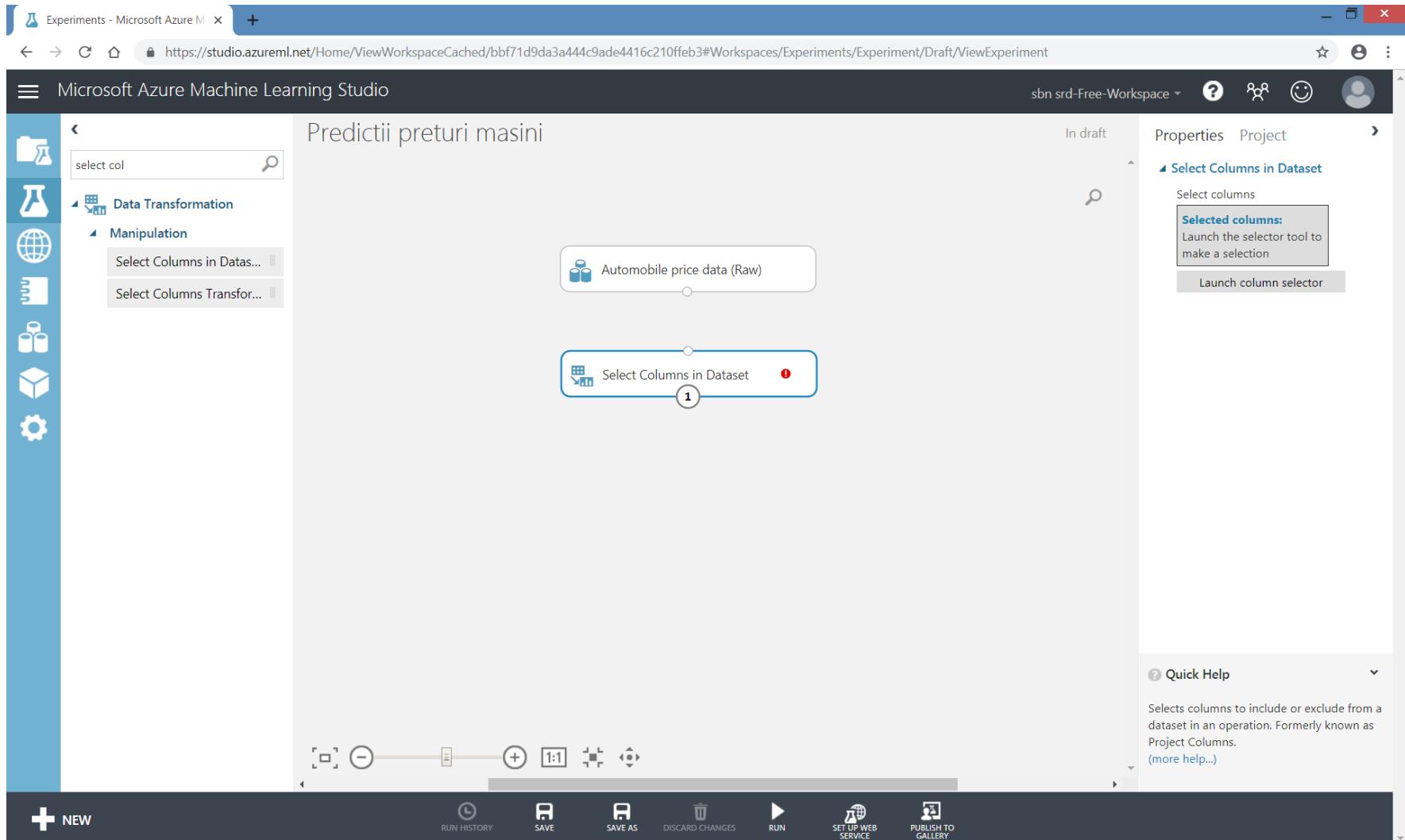
\* not among the exam topics

# Azure Machine Learning

# Car Price Prediction

\* preparing the data

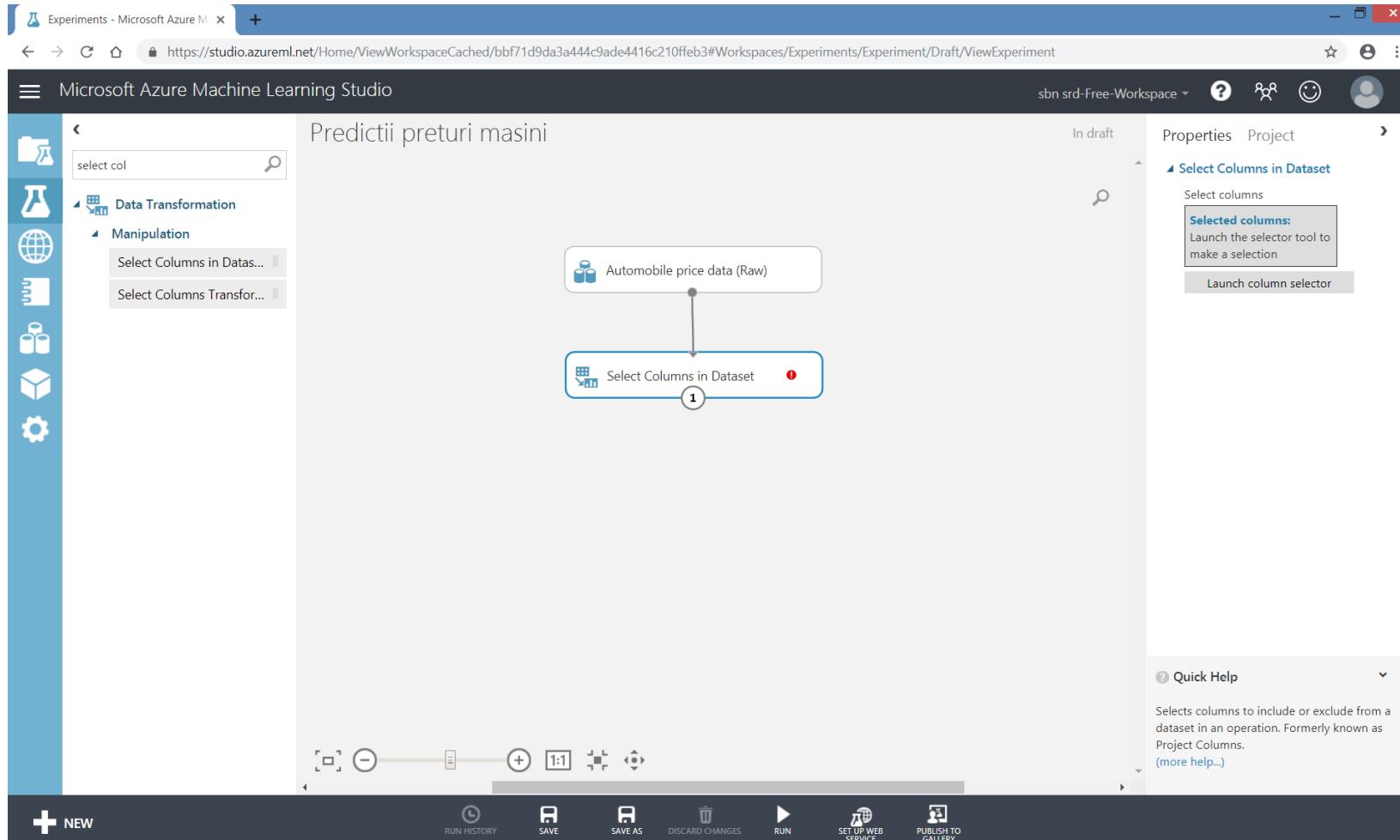
- eliminate column with missing values - *Select Columns in Dataset* module



# Car Price Prediction

\* preparing the data

- eliminate column with missing values



# Car Price Prediction

\* preparing the data

- eliminate column with missing values

- *Select Columns in Dataset*

- Launch column selector

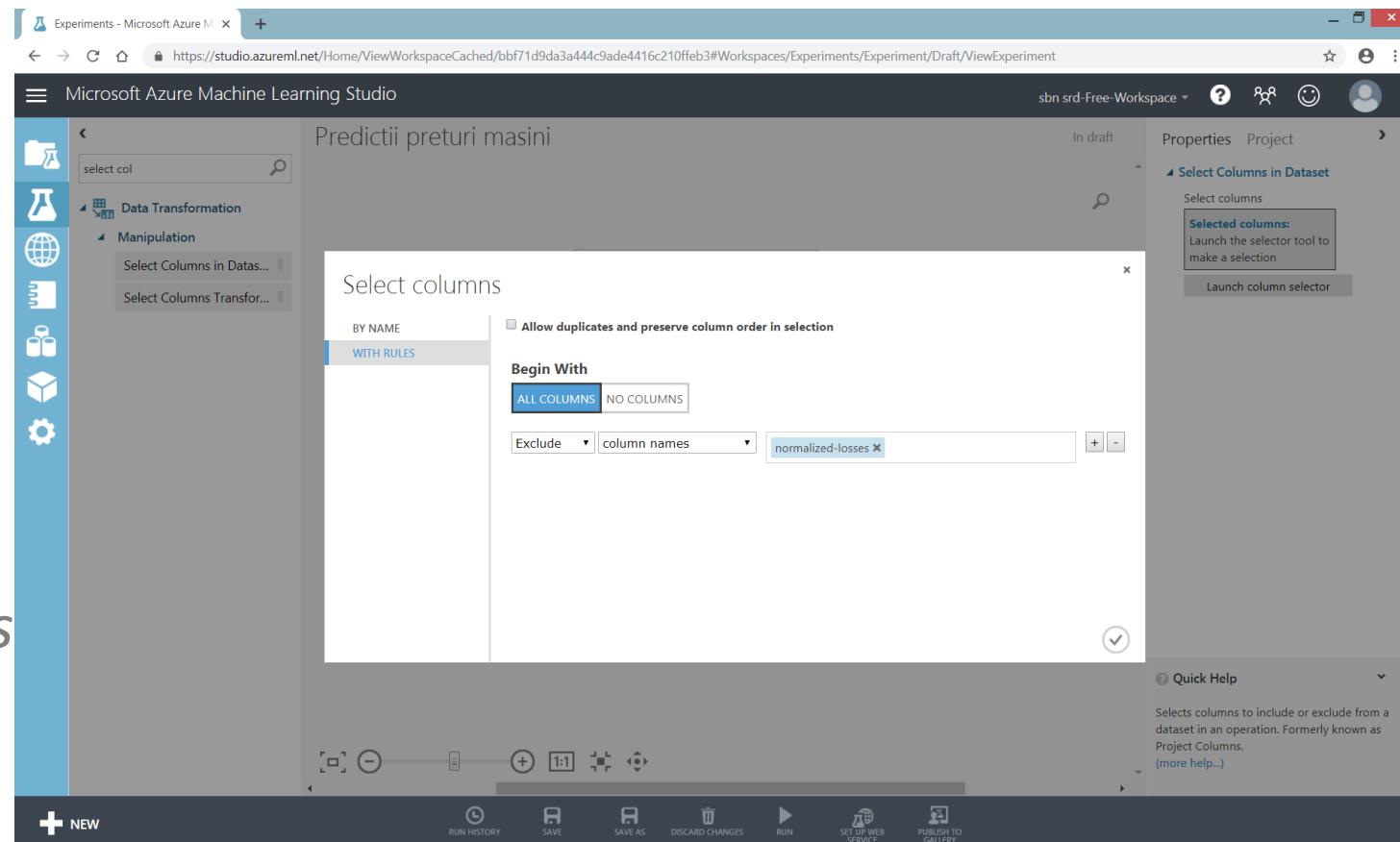
- With Rules

- Begin With

- All Columns

- Exclude

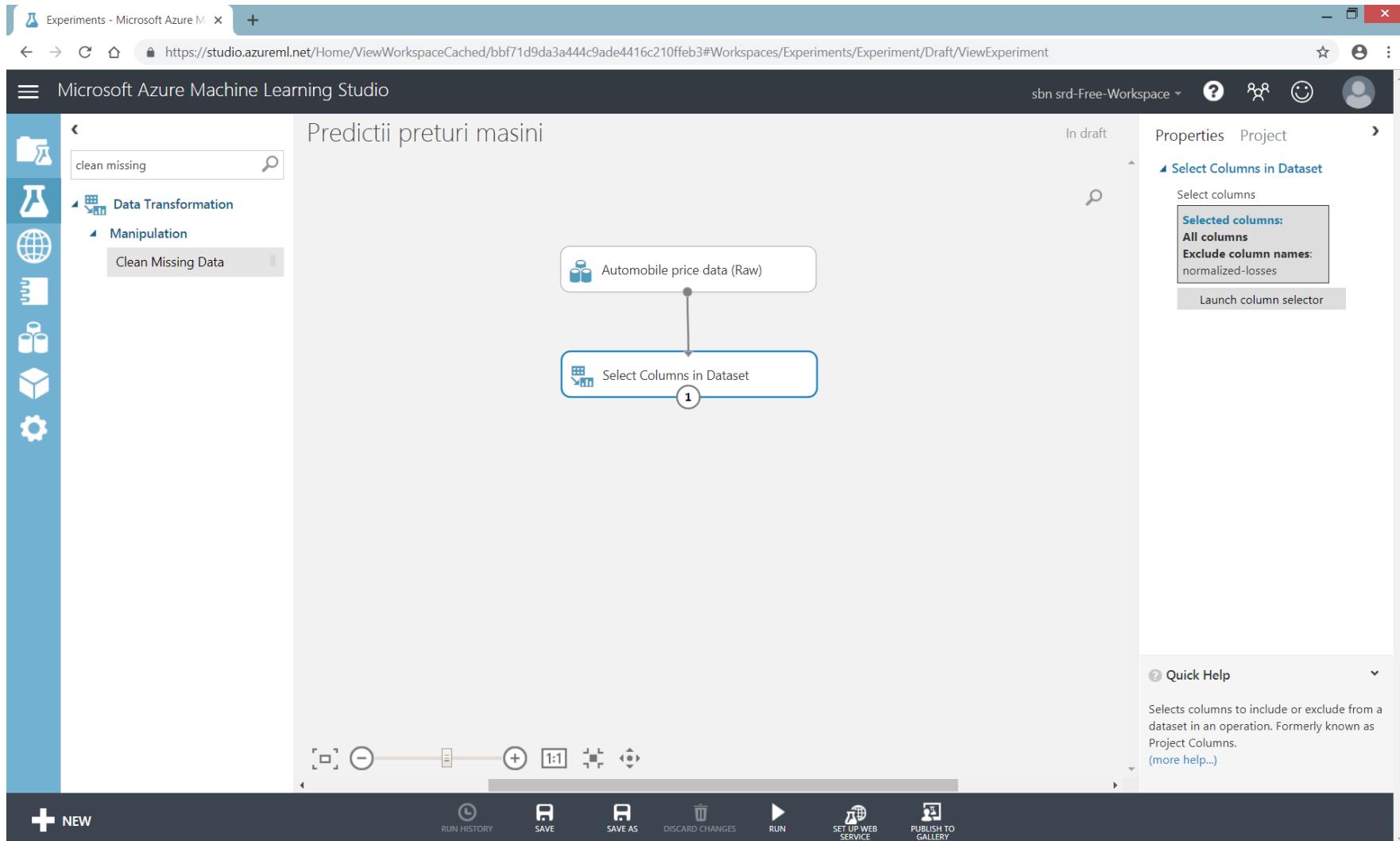
- *normalized-losses*



# Car Price Prediction

\* preparing the data

- eliminate rows with missing values – *Clean Missing Data* module

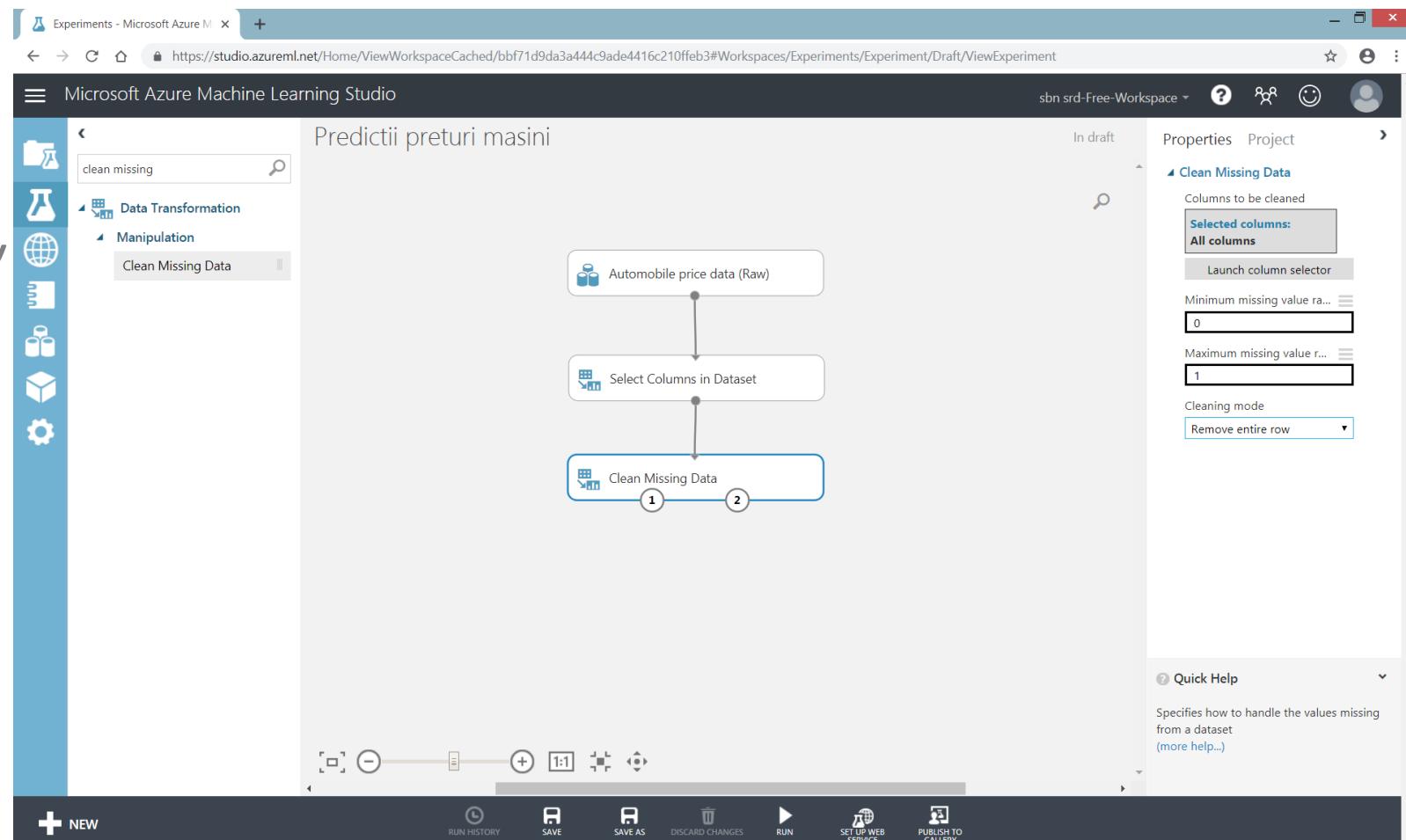


# Car Price Prediction

\* preparing the data

- eliminate rows with missing values

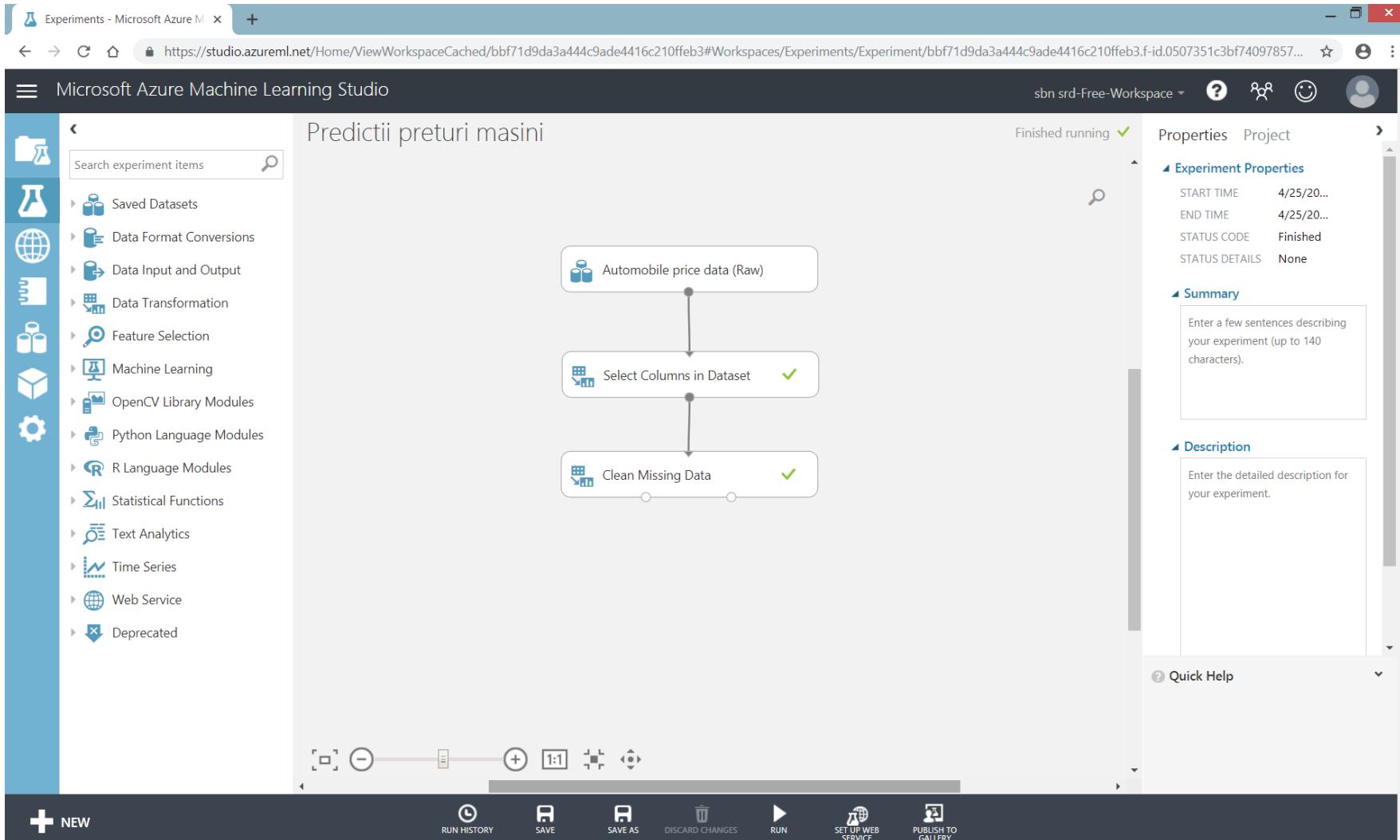
- *Clean Missing Data*
  - *Cleaning mode*
    - *Remove entire row*



# Car Price Prediction

\* running the experiment

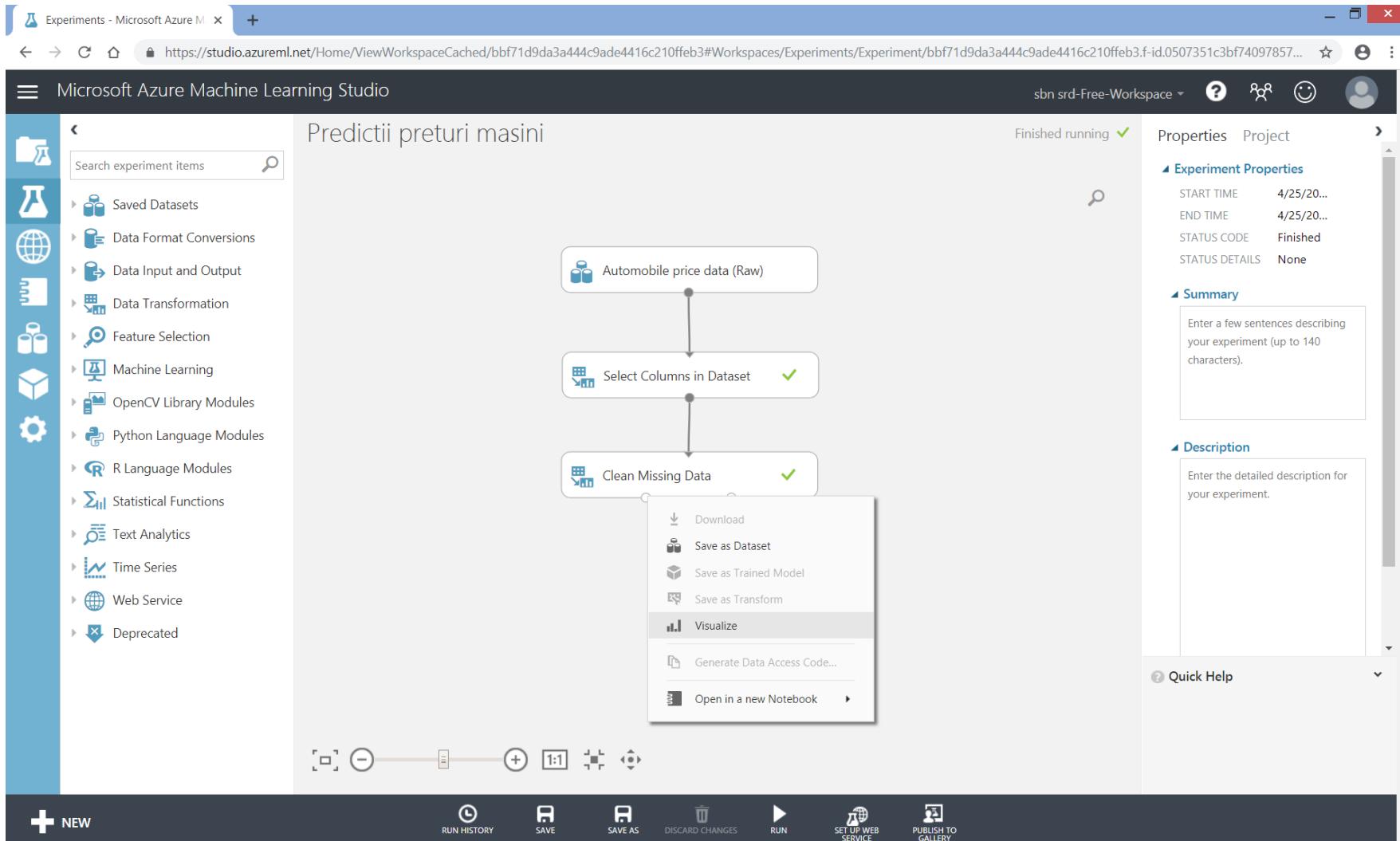
- Run



# Car Price Prediction

\* displaying the data

- *Clean Missing Data* module -> left output port -> *Visualize*



# Car Price Prediction

\* displaying the data

- *Clean Missing Data* module -> left output port -> *Visualize*

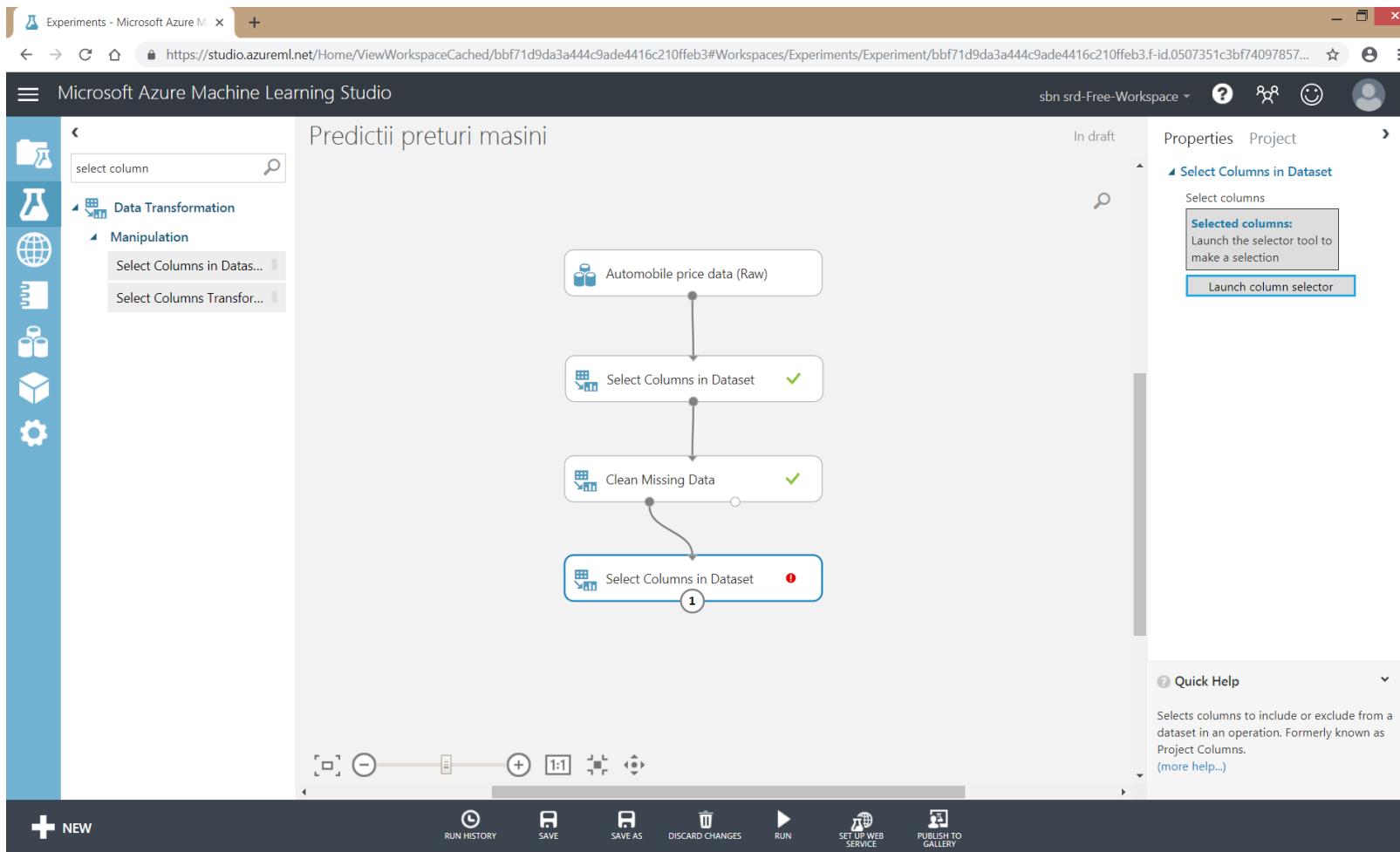
The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure Machine Learning Studio interface. The main area displays a table titled "Predictii preturi masini" with 193 rows and 25 columns. The columns include: symboling, make, fuel-type, aspiration, num-of-doors, body-style, drive-wheels, engine-location, wheel-base, and several other numerical and categorical columns. To the right of the table, there are two sections: "Statistics" and "Visualizations". The "Visualizations" section contains a histogram with the message "To view, select a column in the table." At the bottom of the screen, there is a toolbar with various icons for actions like RUN HISTORY, SAVE, DISCARD CHANGES, RUN, SET UP WEB SERVICE, and PUBLISH TO GALLERY.

|   | symboling   | make | fuel-type | aspiration | num-of-doors | body-style | drive-wheels | engine-location | wheel-base | ... |
|---|-------------|------|-----------|------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-----------------|------------|-----|
| 3 | alfa-romero | gas  | std       | two        | convertible  | rwd        | front        | 88.6            |            |     |
| 3 | alfa-romero | gas  | std       | two        | convertible  | rwd        | front        | 88.6            |            |     |
| 1 | alfa-romero | gas  | std       | two        | hatchback    | rwd        | front        | 94.5            |            |     |
| 2 | audi        | gas  | std       | four       | sedan        | fwd        | front        | 99.8            |            |     |
| 2 | audi        | gas  | std       | four       | sedan        | 4wd        | front        | 99.4            |            |     |
| 2 | audi        | gas  | std       | two        | sedan        | fwd        | front        | 99.8            |            |     |
| 1 | audi        | gas  | std       | four       | sedan        | fwd        | front        | 105.8           |            |     |
| 1 | audi        | gas  | std       | four       | wagon        | fwd        | front        | 105.8           |            |     |
| 1 | audi        | gas  | turbo     | four       | sedan        | fwd        | front        | 105.8           |            |     |
| 2 | bmw         | gas  | std       | two        | sedan        | rwd        | front        | 101.2           |            |     |
| 0 | bmw         | gas  | std       | four       | sedan        | rwd        | front        | 101.2           |            |     |
| 0 | bmw         | gas  | std       | two        | sedan        | rwd        | front        | 101.2           |            |     |
| 0 | bmw         | gas  | std       | four       | sedan        | rwd        | front        | 101.2           |            |     |

# Car Price Prediction

\* defining the *features*

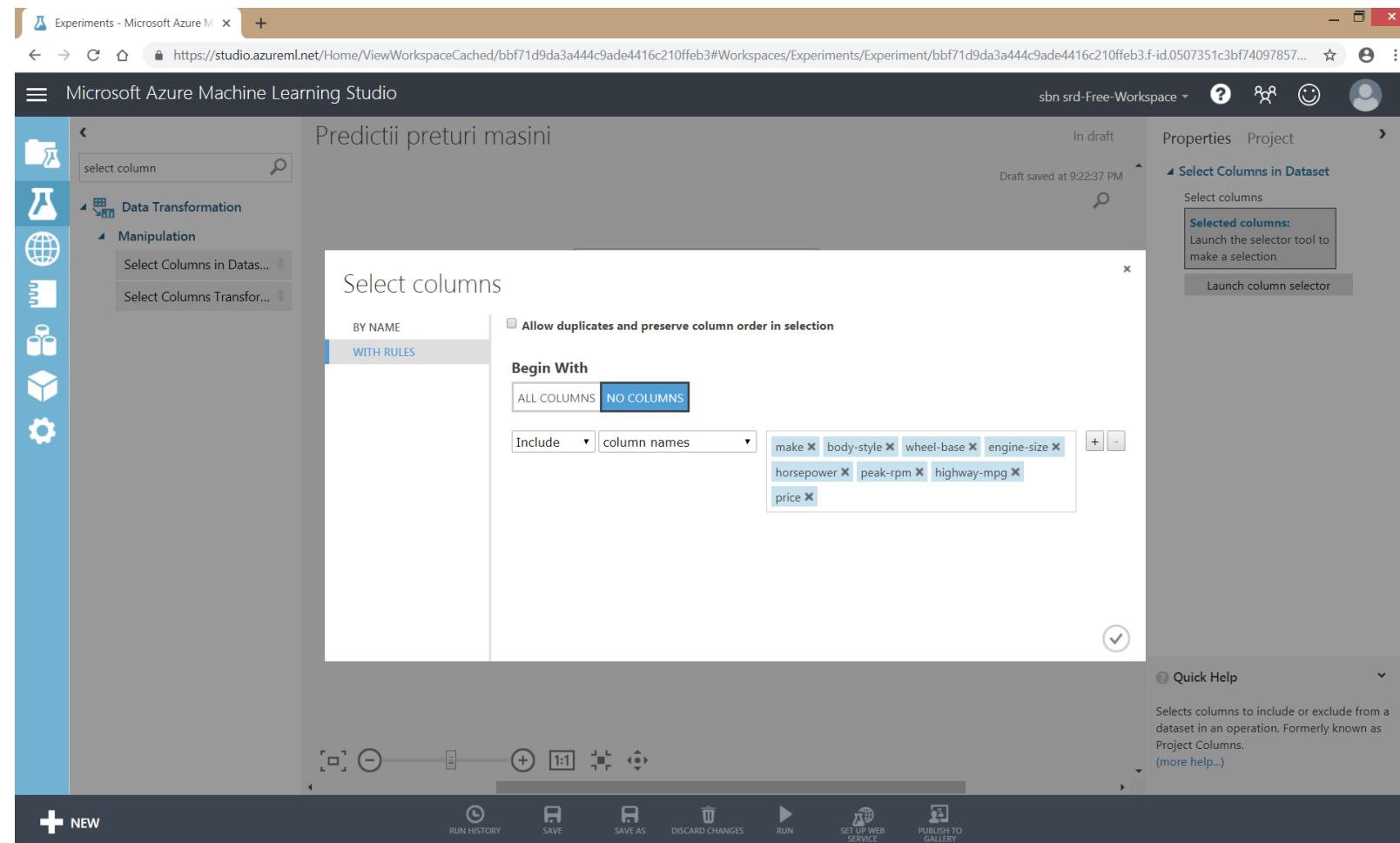
- used to create the predictive model
- *Select Columns in Dataset* module



# Car Price Prediction

\* defining the *features*

- *Select Columns in Dataset*
  - Launch column selector
    - Begin With
      - No columns
    - Include
      - *make, body-style, wheel-base, engine-size, horsepower, peak-rpm, highway-mpg, price*



- goal: predict car price from selected features

# Car Price Prediction

\* choosing / applying the algorithm

- create the training dataset and the test dataset
- training dataset
  - dataset that includes the car price
  - the model is trained on this dataset
    - it searches for correlations between a car's features and its price
- test dataset
  - dataset that includes the car price
  - the model is tested on this dataset
    - the price estimated by the model for each car is compared with the real price

# Car Price Prediction

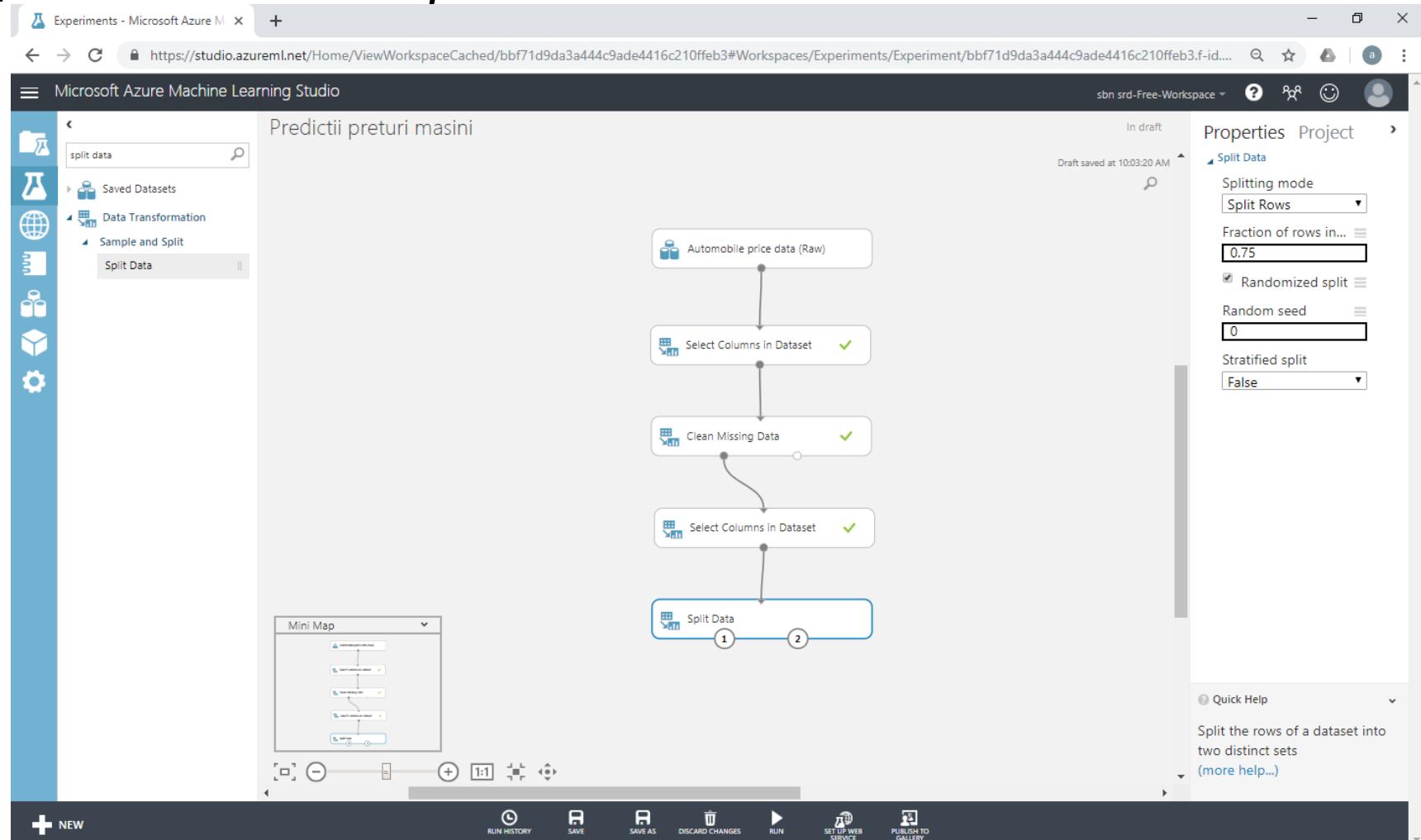
\* choosing / applying the algorithm

- create the training / test datasets - *Split Data* module

- *Split Data*

- *Fraction of rows in the first output dataset*
  - 0.75
  - i.e., training dataset - 75% of the data

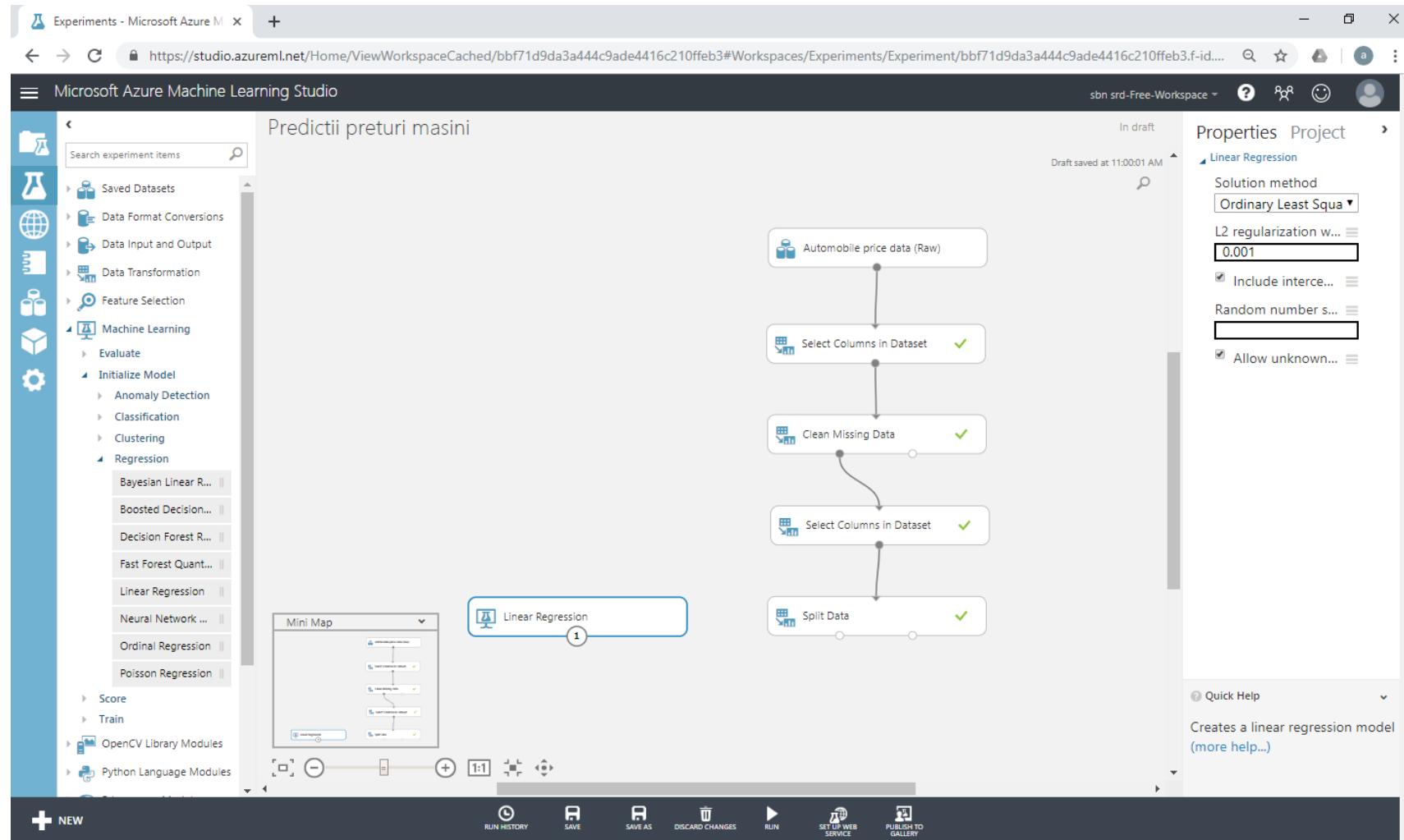
- *Run experiment*



# Car Price Prediction

\* choosing / applying the algorithm

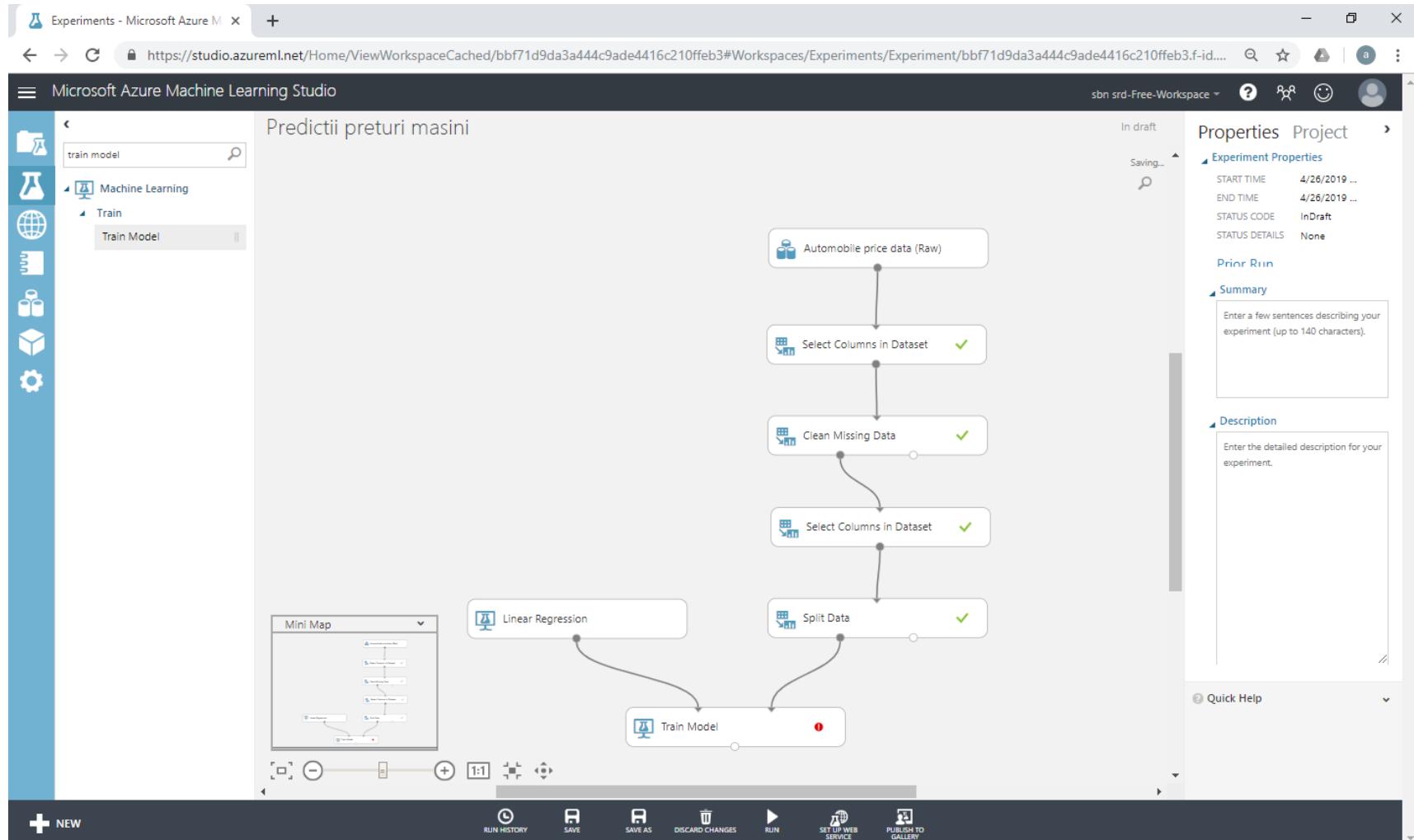
- *Machine Learning -> Initialize Model -> Regression -> Linear Regression*



# Car Price Prediction

\* choosing / applying the algorithm

- *Train Model* module



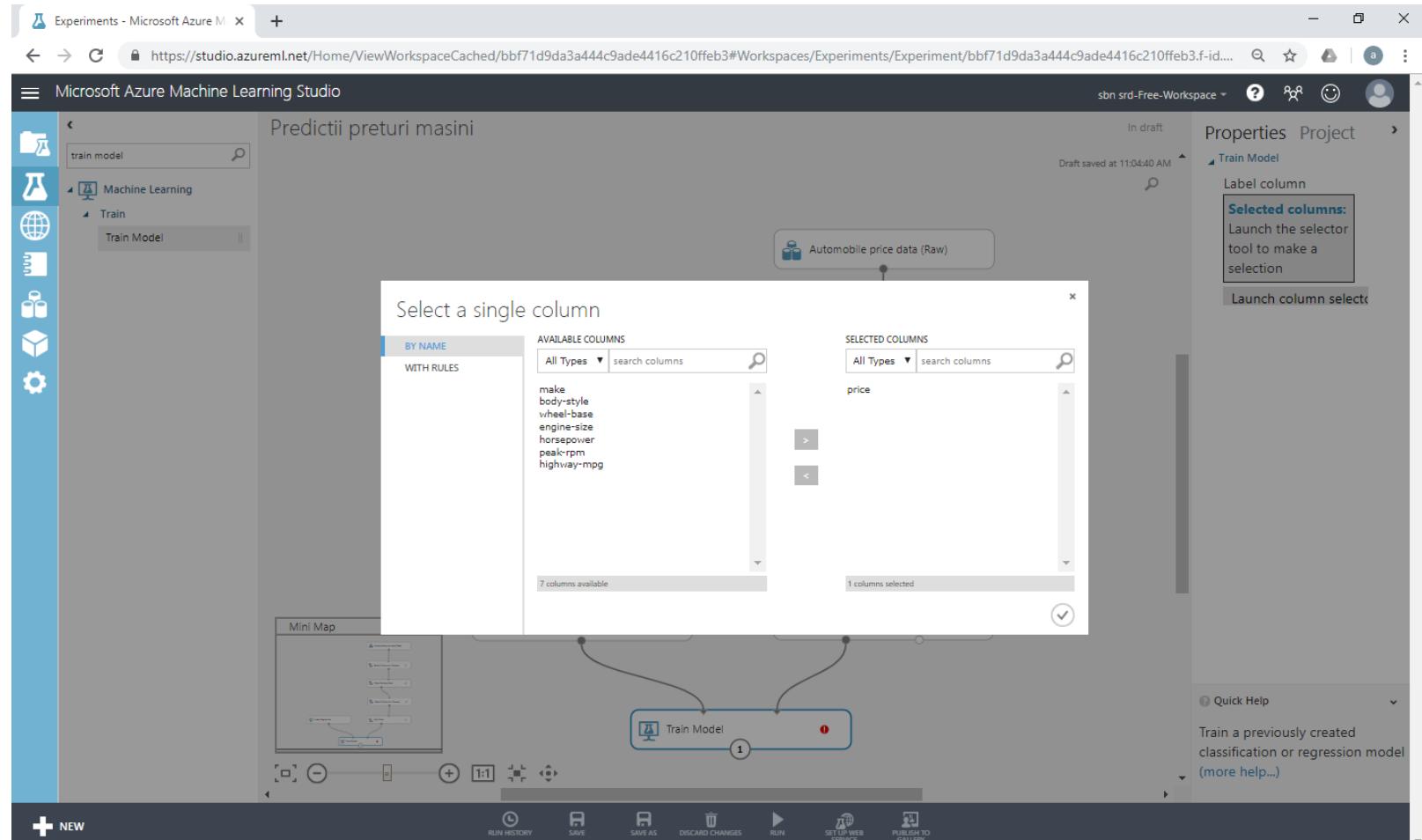
# Car Price Prediction

\* choosing / applying the algorithm

- *Train Model*

- *Launch column selector*
  - move column *price* from *Available columns* to *Selected columns*

- *Run experiment*



# Database Management Systems

Lecture 12

Azure Machine Learning\*

Azure Stream Analytics\*

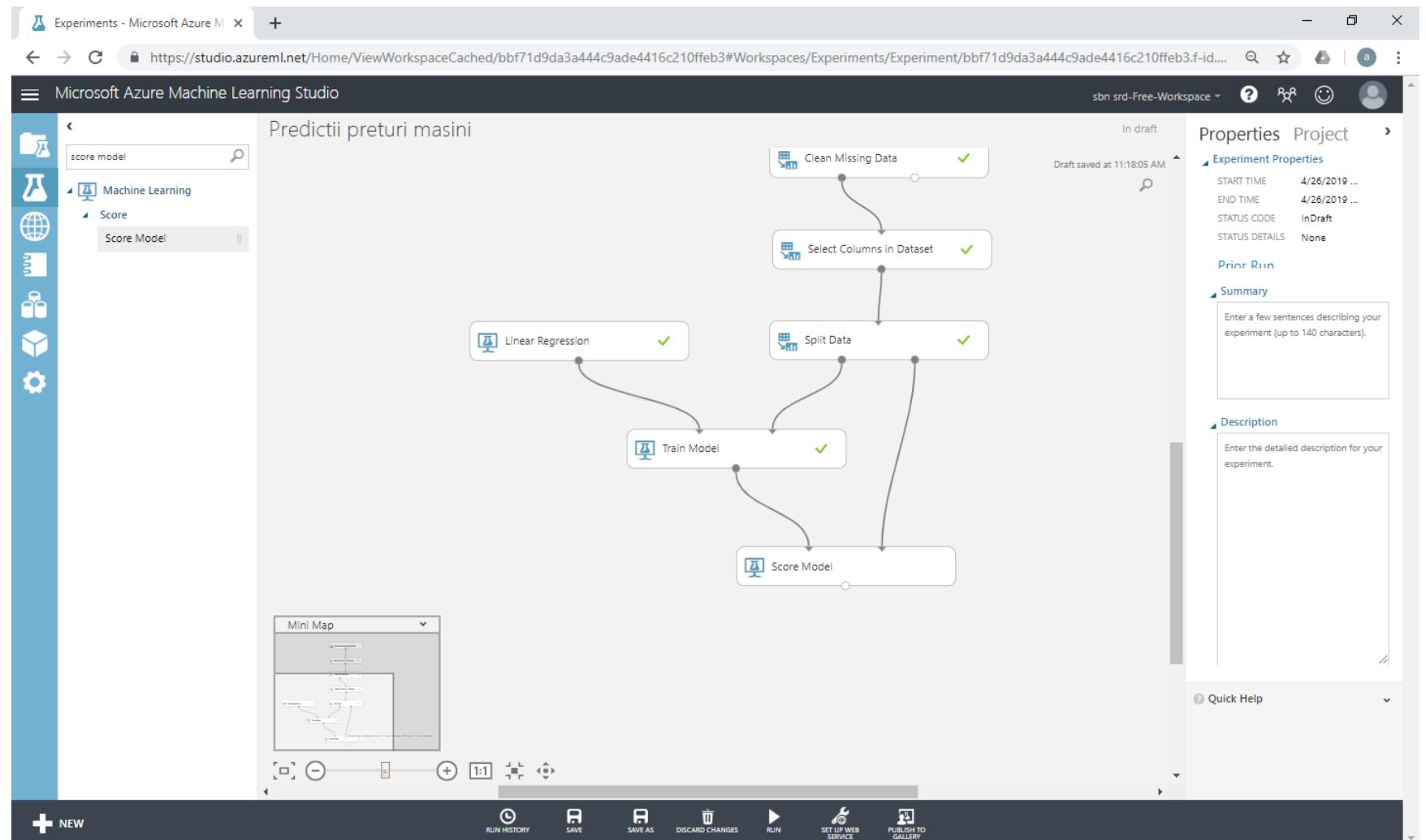
\* not among the exam topics

# Azure Machine Learning

# Car Price Prediction

\* testing the model - *Score Model* module

- *Run experiment*

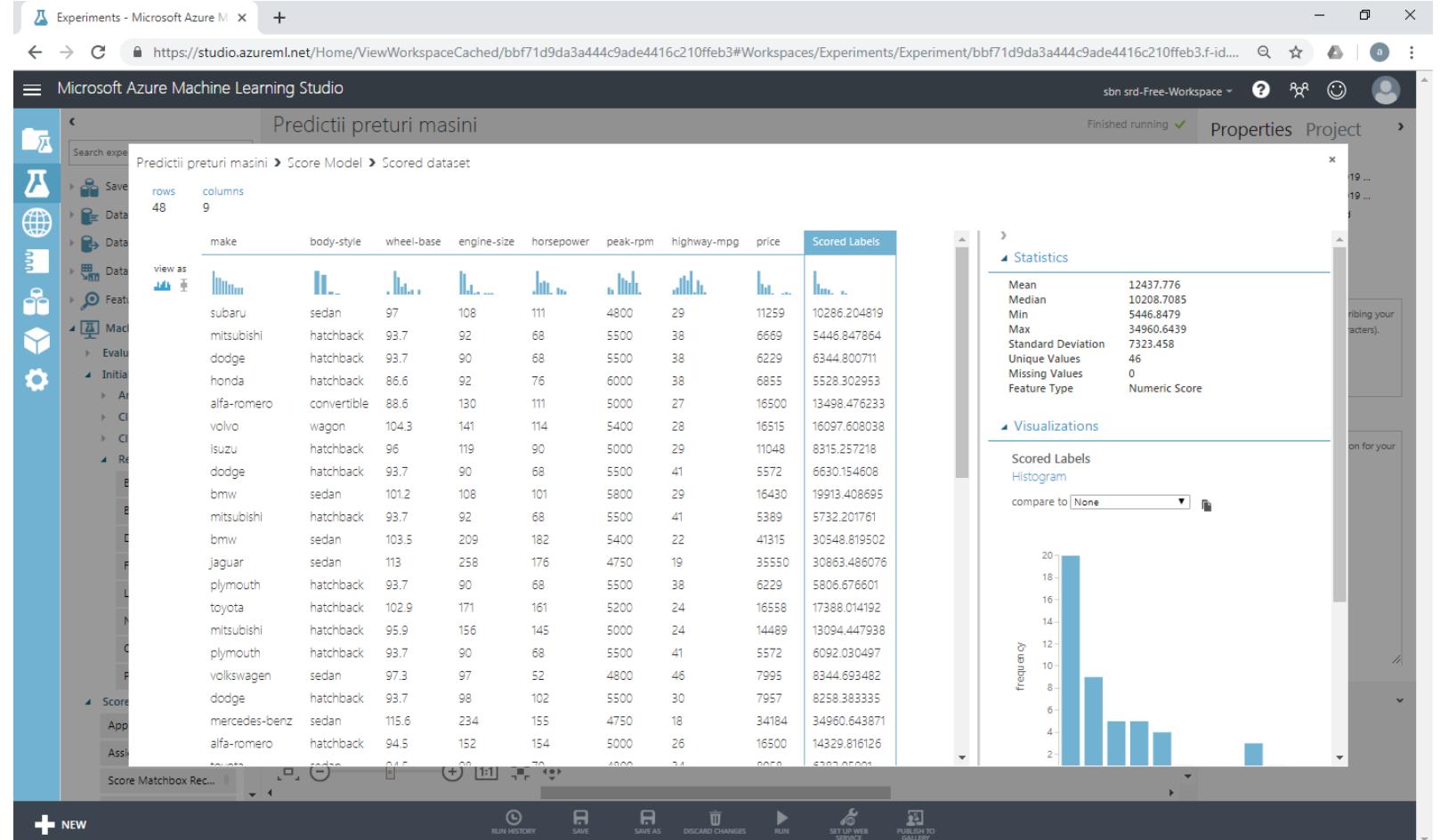


# Car Price Prediction

\* testing the model

- *Score Model* output port-> *Visualize*

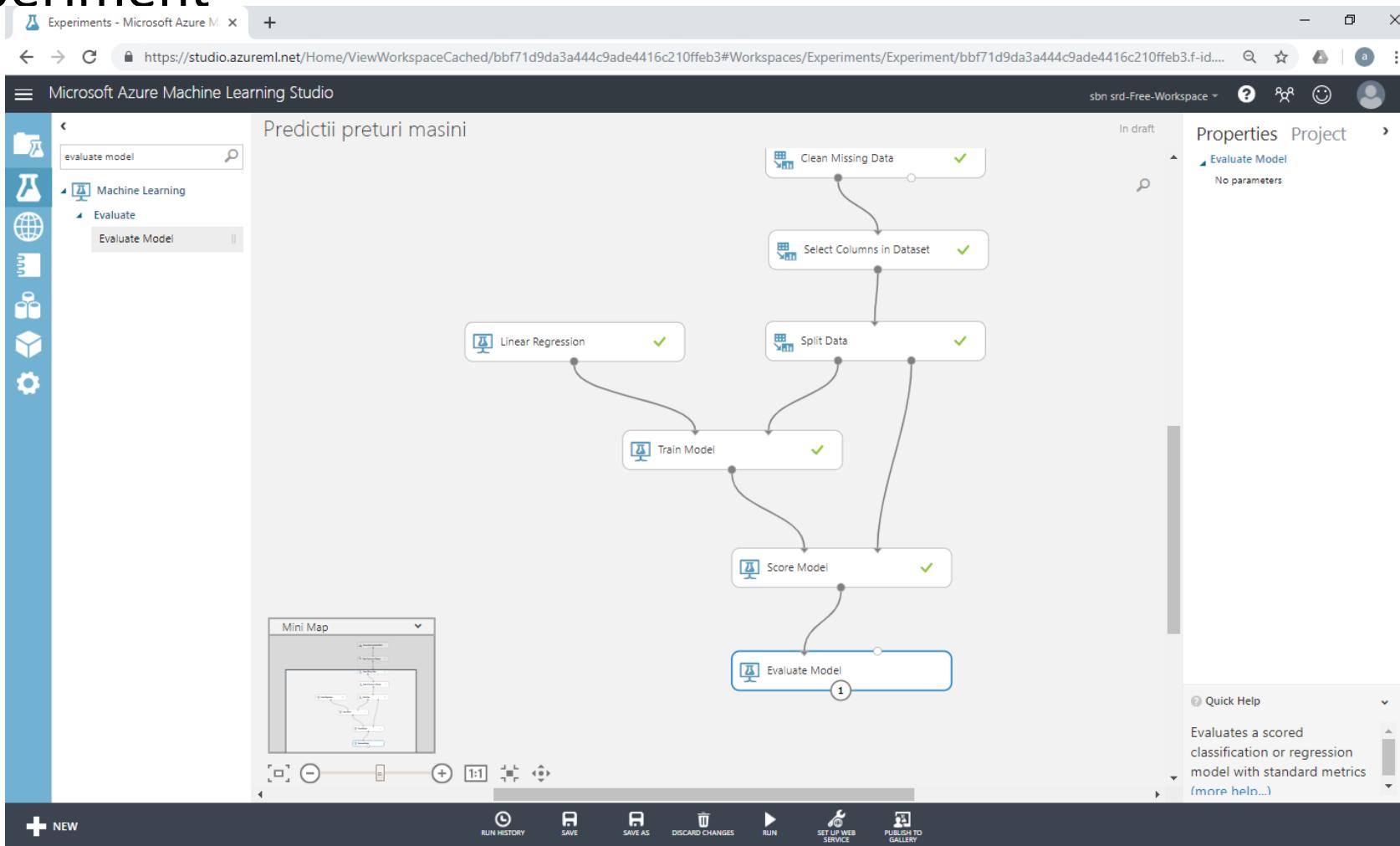
- estimated / actual values for the *price* column



# Car Price Prediction

\* testing the model

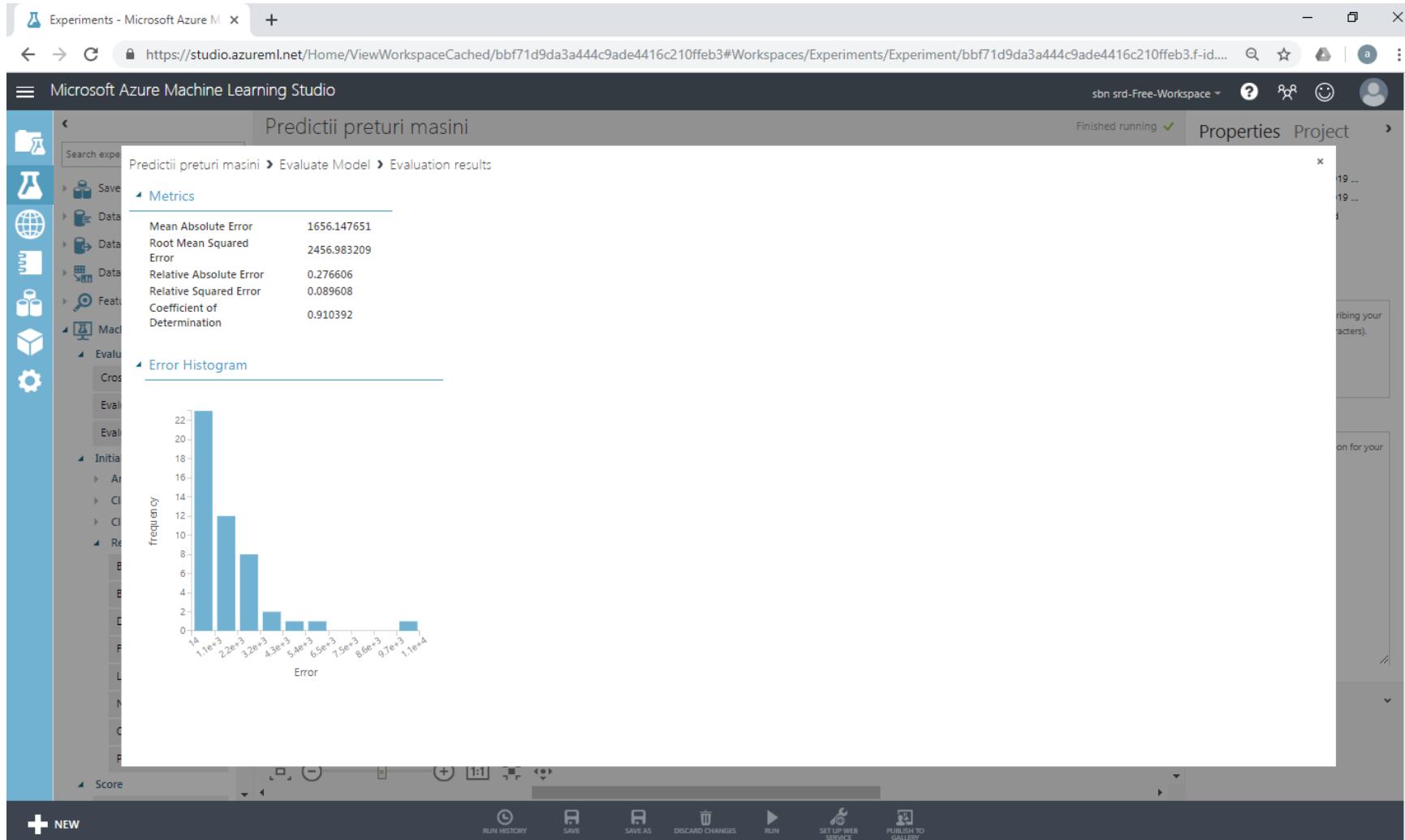
- *Evaluate Model* module
- *Run experiment*



# Car Price Prediction

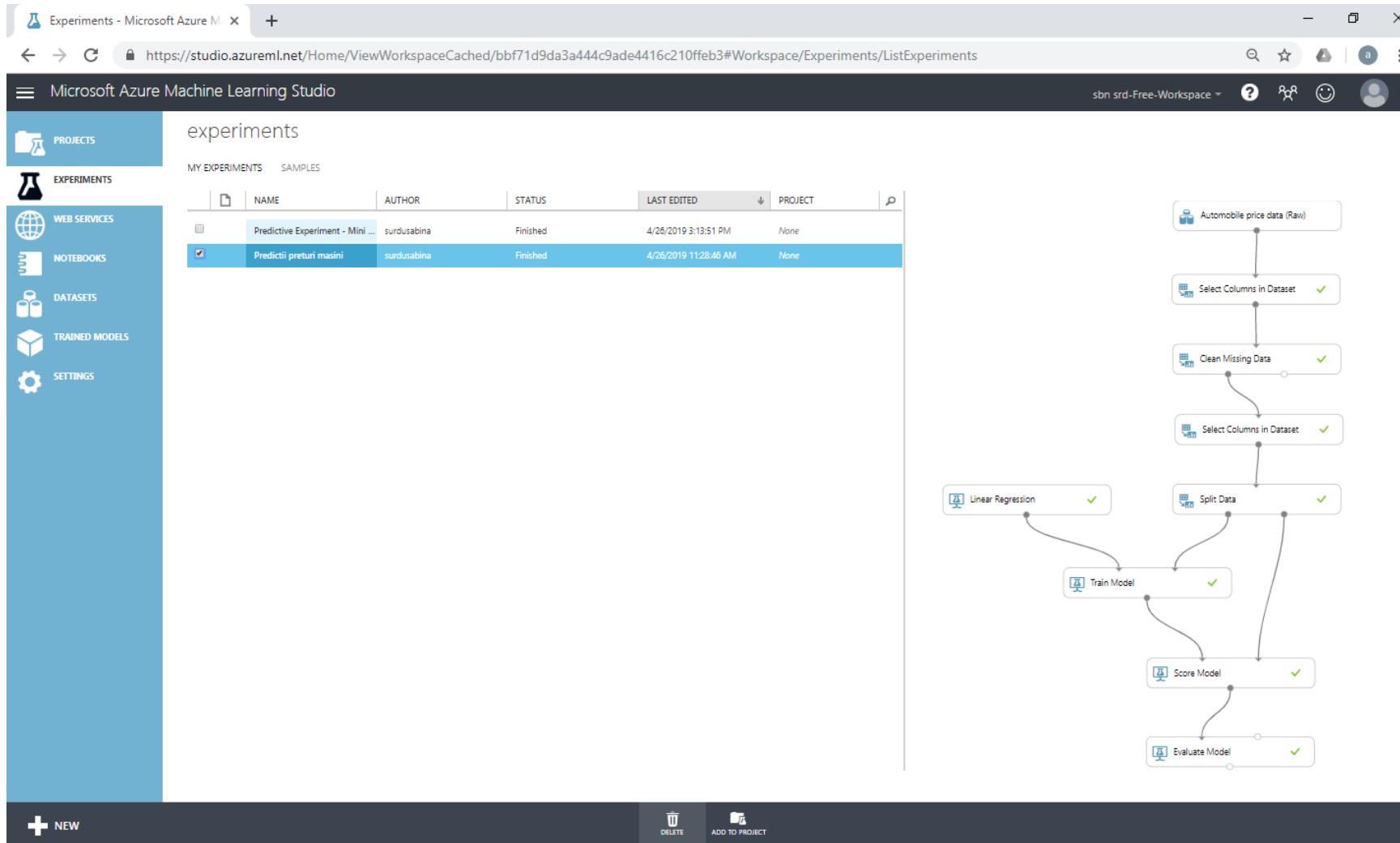
\* testing the model

- *Evaluate Model* output port -> *Visualize*



# Car Price Prediction

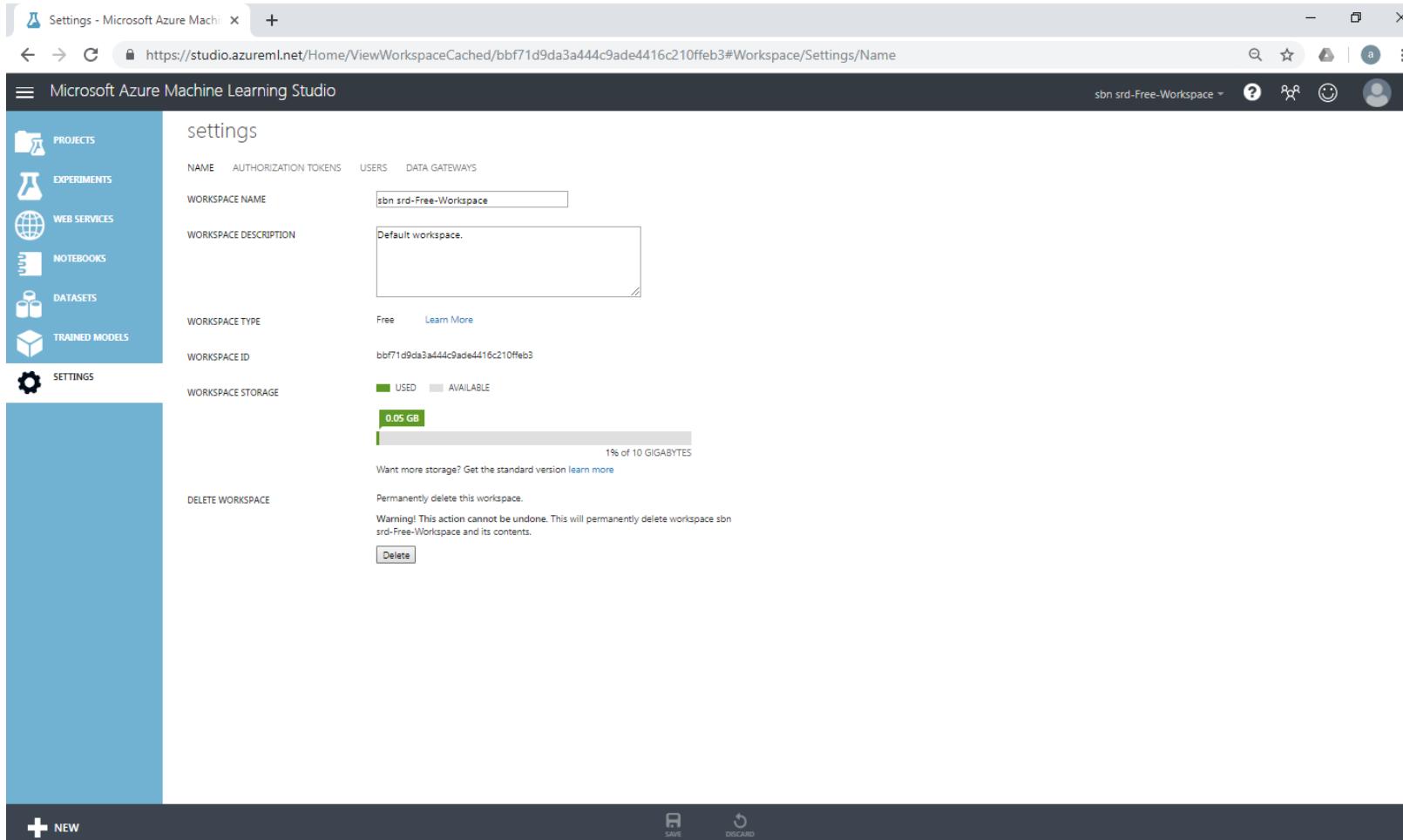
\* eliminate resources



# Car Price Prediction

\* eliminate resources

- delete workspace: *Settings* -> *Delete*

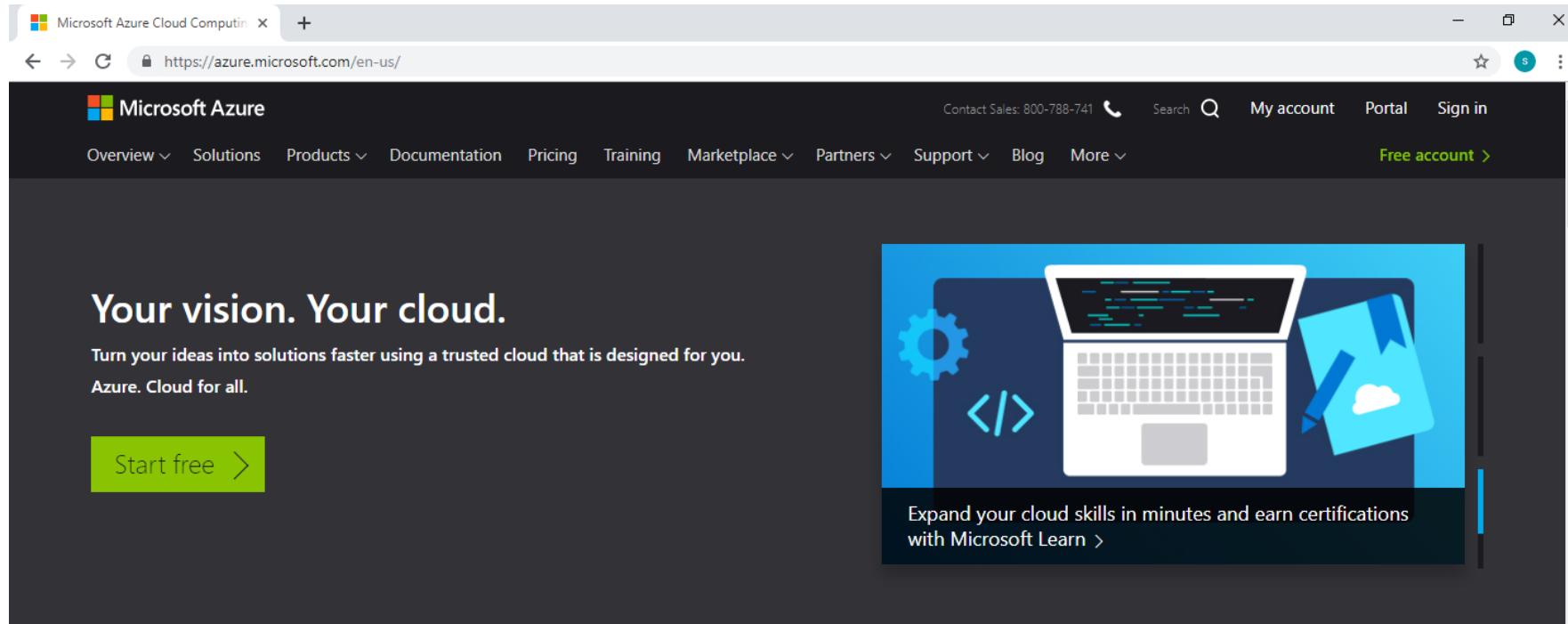


# Analiza sentimentelor Azure Machine Learning și Azure Stream Analytics

# Cont gratuit Azure (limitat) – Azure for Students

- portalul Azure

- <https://portal.azure.com/#home>



## Productive

Azure has more than 100 services with great end-to-end tools to make you successful.

[Learn more >](#)

## Hybrid

Develop and deploy where you want, with the only consistent hybrid cloud on the market. Extend Azure on-premises with Azure Stack.

[Learn more >](#)

## Intelligent

Create intelligent apps using powerful data and AI services.

[Learn more >](#)

## Trusted

Join startups, governments, and 95% of Fortune 500 businesses who run on the Microsoft Cloud today.

[Learn more >](#)

# Analiza sentimentelor: Azure Stream Analytics + Azure ML

- input

- fișier .csv cu tweet-uri încărcat în Blob storage

- publicare model pentru analiza sentimentelor ca serviciu web

- creare job

- input - fișier .csv cu tweet-uri din Blob storage

- output - alt fișier .csv în același Blob storage

- pentru fiecare tweet se stochează sentimentul (*positive*, *neutral* sau *negative*) și probabilitatea ca tweet-ul să fie pozitiv

- funcție Azure Machine Learning - apelare serviciu web ca o funcție pe fiecare tweet input

# Input

\* Create a resource -> Storage -> Storage account

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure portal interface for creating a new storage account. The left sidebar has a dark theme with various service icons and names. The main content area is titled 'Create storage account' and includes tabs for 'Basics', 'Advanced', 'Tags', and 'Review + create'. The 'Basics' tab is selected. It contains sections for 'PROJECT DETAILS' (Subscription: Pay-As-You-Go, Resource group: (New) samirg) and 'INSTANCE DETAILS' (Storage account name: samisa, Location: (US) South Central US, Performance: Standard, Account kind: StorageV2 (general purpose v2), Replication: Read-access geo-redundant storage (RA-GRS), Access tier: Hot). At the bottom are buttons for 'Review + create' and 'Next : Advanced >'.

Create storage account

Basics Advanced Tags Review + create

Azure Storage is a Microsoft-managed service providing cloud storage that is highly available, secure, durable, scalable, and redundant. Azure Storage includes Azure Blobs (objects), Azure Data Lake Storage Gen2, Azure Files, Azure Queues, and Azure Tables. The cost of your storage account depends on the usage and the options you choose below. [Learn more](#)

PROJECT DETAILS

Select the subscription to manage deployed resources and costs. Use resource groups like folders to organize and manage all your resources.

★ Subscription: Pay-As-You-Go

★ Resource group: (New) samirg  
[Create new](#)

INSTANCE DETAILS

The default deployment model is Resource Manager, which supports the latest Azure features. You may choose to deploy using the classic deployment model instead. [Choose classic deployment model](#)

★ Storage account name: samisa

★ Location: (US) South Central US

Performance: Standard

Account kind: StorageV2 (general purpose v2)

Replication: Read-access geo-redundant storage (RA-GRS)

Access tier (default): Hot

Review + create Previous Next : Advanced >

# Input

\* încărcare fișier -> Storage account -> Containers -> + Container

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure Blob service interface. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with various services like Home, Dashboard, All services, Favorites, and Storage accounts. The main area shows a storage account named "samlsa - Blobs". A modal dialog box is open, titled "New container", with fields for "Name" (set to "samlcontainer") and "Public access level" (set to "Private (no anonymous access)"). At the bottom of the dialog are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

# Input

\* încărcare fișier -> container -> Upload

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure Storage Container Overview page for a container named 'samlcontainer'. The left sidebar lists various Azure services. The main pane displays the container's details, including its authentication method (Access key) and location. A prominent 'Upload' button is visible in the top navigation bar. Below it, there are tabs for Overview, Access Control (IAM), Settings, Access policy, Properties, and Metadata. The Overview tab is selected. A search bar at the top allows users to search for blobs by prefix. A table below shows blob statistics, indicating 'No blobs found.'

# Input

\* Încărcare fișier -> alegere fișier -> *Upload*

The screenshot shows the Azure Storage Blobs service interface. On the left, the navigation menu includes options like Home, Dashboard, All services, Favorites, and various Azure services. The main area displays the 'samlsa - Blobs > samlcontainer' overview. It shows an 'Upload' button, a search bar, and a table with columns: NAME, MODIFIED, and ACCESS TIER. A message indicates 'No blobs found.' On the right, a modal window titled 'Upload blob' is open. It shows the file path 'samlcontainer/' and the file name 'input\_saml.csv'. There is a checked checkbox for 'Overwrite if files already exist'. Under the 'Advanced' section, the 'Authentication type' is set to 'Azure AD user account' (selected), and the 'Blob type' is 'Block blob'. A checked checkbox says 'Upload .vhf files as page blobs (recommended)'. The 'Block size' is set to '4 MB'. An 'Upload to folder' input field is empty. At the bottom of the modal is a large blue 'Upload' button.

# Input

\* input\_saml.csv

*Text*

*They love ice cream*

*The sky is blue*

*Machine Learning is cool*

*Machine Learning is not cool*

# Model Machine Learning -> Serviciu Web

\* model analiză sentimente (Azure AI Gallery)

- <https://gallery.azure.ai/Experiment/Predictive-Mini-Twitter-sentiment-analysis-Experiment-1>
- *Open in Studio, Sign in, selectare locație*

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL <https://gallery.azure.ai/Experiment/Predictive-Mini-Twitter-sentiment-analysis-Experiment-1>. The page is titled "Predictive Experiment - Mini Twitter sentiment analysis" by Neeraj Khanchandani, posted on December 8, 2015. It has 7 likes and social sharing links for Twitter, LinkedIn, and Email. A summary section states: "This experiment demonstrates the use of the Execute R Script, Feature Selection, Feature Hashing modules to train a text sentiment classification engine." Below it, a "Description" section says: "This specific experiment is a second step in creating a web service for [twitter sentiment analysis](#). In this step we will convert training experiment to predictive experiment." A list of steps to accomplish this follows:

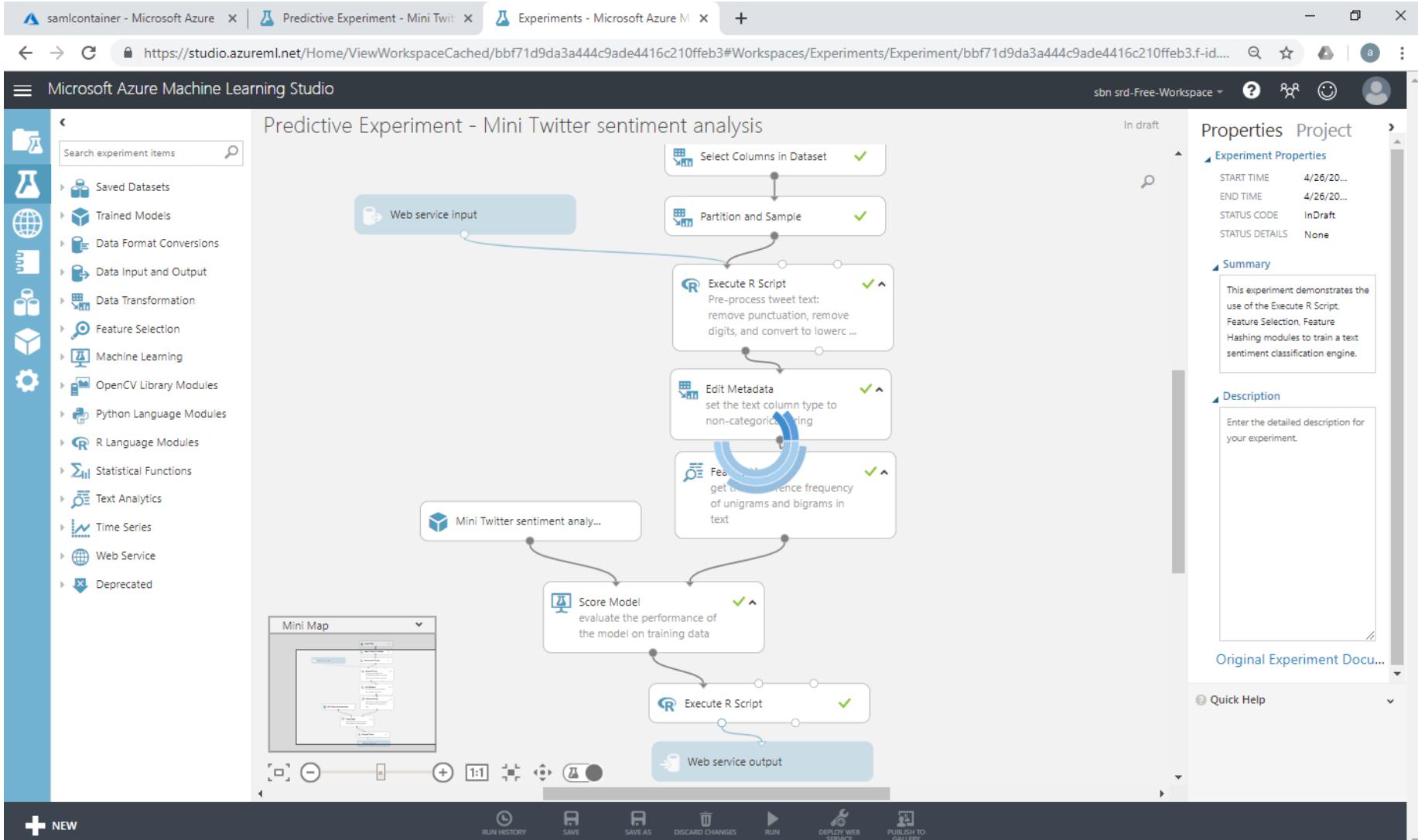
1. Go to your [training experiment](#) and click create predictive experiment under bottom menu "setup web service"
2. Go to your predictive experiment (that is this experiment)
3. Add project columns module to remove sentiment label column
4. Modify execute R experiment to skip using sentiment label
5. Make sure feature hashing bits and n-gram matches the one in training experiment
6. Run the experiment

On the right side of the page, there is a sentiment analysis meter graphic with a yellow needle pointing towards the green end, flanked by a smiling face on the left and a sad face on the right. Below the meter is a large green button labeled "Open in Studio". At the bottom, there are links for "Add to Collection", "8139 views", and "6229 downloads".

# Model Machine Learning -> Serviciu Web

\* model analiză sentimente

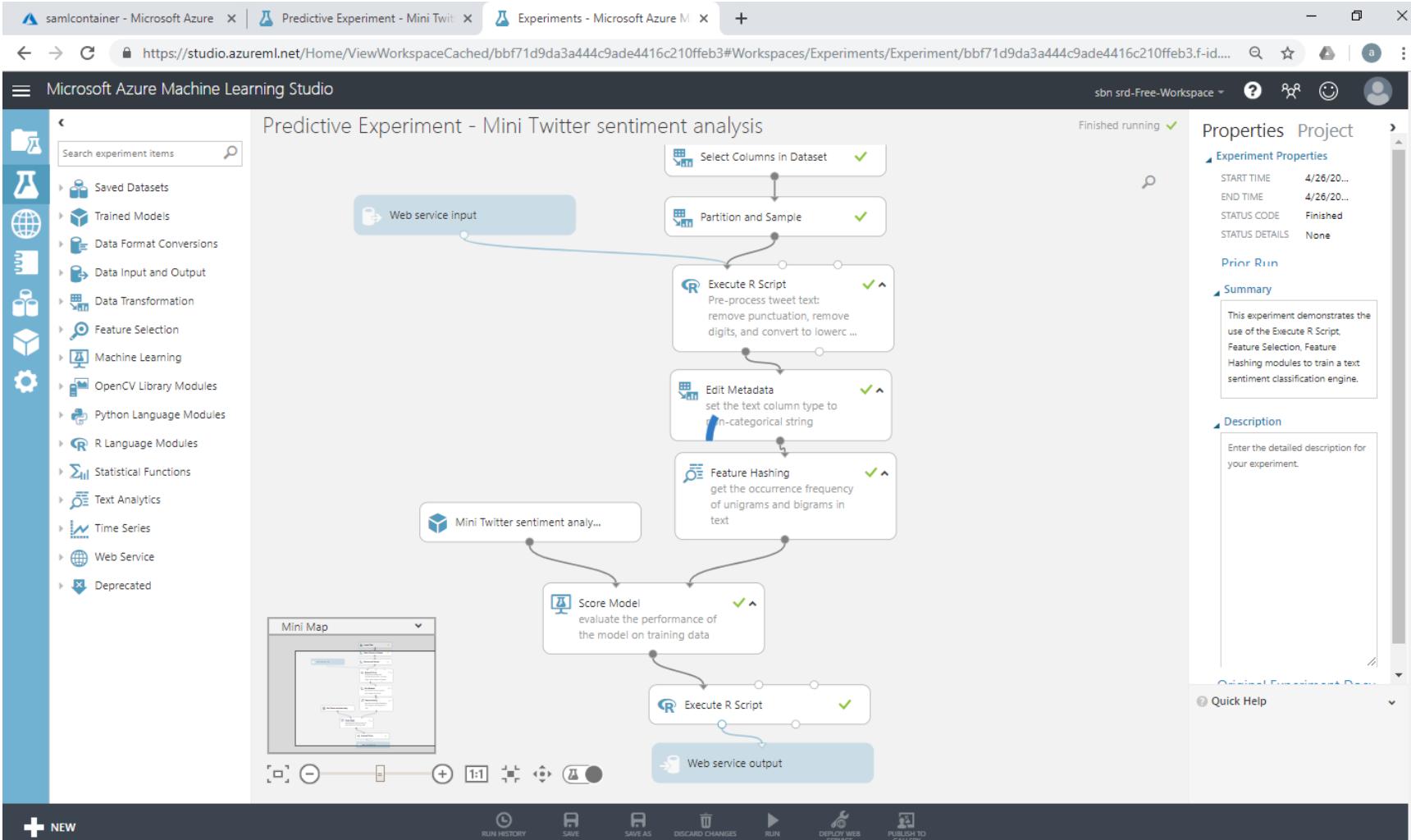
- Run



# Model Machine Learning -> Serviciu Web

\* model analiză sentimente

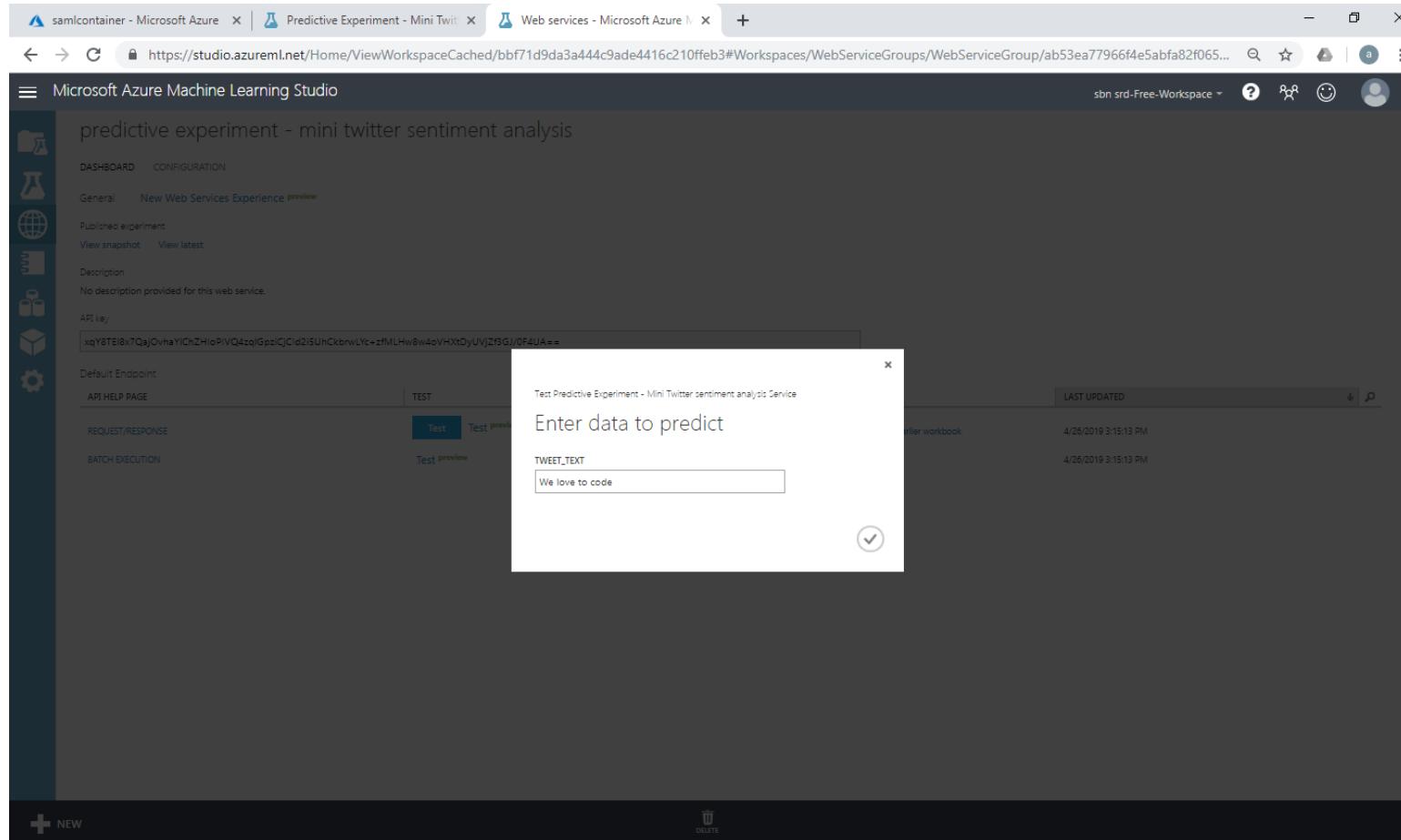
- *Deploy Web Service*



# Model Machine Learning -> Serviciu Web

\* model analiză sentimente

- testare
  - Test -> text input



# Model Machine Learning -> Serviciu Web

\* model analiză sentimente

- testare
  - rezultat
- descărcare workbook Excel (*Excel 2010 or earlier workbook*) - conține cheie API și URL serviciu web

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure Machine Learning Studio interface. On the left, there's a sidebar with icons for DASHBOARD, CONFIGURATION, General, New Web Services Experience Preview, Published experiment, View snapshot, View latest, Description (No description provided for this web service), and API key (containing a long alphanumeric string). The main area is titled "predictive experiment - mini twitter sentiment analysis". It has tabs for REQUEST/RESPONSE and BATCH EXECUTION. Under REQUEST/RESPONSE, there are "TEST" and "Preview" buttons. Under BATCH EXECUTION, there is a "Test preview" button. To the right, there's a table with columns for TEST, APPS, and LAST UPDATED. The TEST column shows "Excel 2013 or later" and "Excel 2010 or earlier workbook" with last update times of 4/26/2019 3:15:13 PM. The APPS column shows "Excel 2013 or later workbook" with the same last update time. At the bottom, a message says "Predictive Experiment - Mini Twitter sentiment analysis" test returned ["positive": "0.704714417457581"].

# Job

\* Create a resource -> Analytics -> Stream Analytics Job

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure portal interface for creating a new Stream Analytics job. The left sidebar contains a 'Create a resource' button and a list of services including Home, Dashboard, All services, Favorites (All resources, Resource groups, App Services, Function Apps, SQL databases, Azure Cosmos DB, Virtual machines, Load balancers, Storage accounts, Virtual networks, Azure Active Directory, Monitor, Advisor, Security Center, Cost Management + Billing, Help + support). The main content area is titled 'New Stream Analytics job'. It includes fields for 'Job name' (set to 'samjob'), 'Subscription' (set to 'Pay-As-You-Go'), 'Resource group' (set to 'samirg'), 'Location' (set to 'South Central US'), 'Hosting environment' (set to 'Cloud'), and 'Streaming units (1 to 192)' (set to '1'). At the bottom are 'Create' and 'Automation options' buttons.

New Stream Analytics job

Job name: samjob

Subscription: Pay-As-You-Go

Resource group: samirg

Location: South Central US

Hosting environment: Cloud

Streaming units (1 to 192): 1

Create Automation options

# Job

\* configurare input - fișier .csv încărcat anterior

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure portal interface for configuring a Stream Analytics job. The left sidebar lists various Azure services, and the main area displays the 'samljjob - Inputs' configuration page. The 'Inputs' section is currently selected. A new input configuration is being set up, with 'Blob storage' selected as the source type. The URL in the browser bar is: https://portal.azure.com/#@surdusabinayahoo.onmicrosoft.com/resource/subscriptions/37066c72-defe-4c6a-b1bd-875c3cceff91/resourceGroups/samlrg/providers/Microsoft.StreamAnalytics/jobs/samljjob/inputs.

# Job

## \* configurare input

- *Event serialization format -> CSV*

The screenshot shows the Azure Stream Analytics job configuration interface. On the left, the navigation menu includes options like Create a resource, Home, Dashboard, All services, Favorites, All resources, Resource groups, App Services, Function Apps, SQL databases, Azure Cosmos DB, Virtual machines, Load balancers, Storage accounts, Virtual networks, Azure Active Directory, Monitor, Advisor, Security Center, Cost Management + Billing, and Help + support. The main area displays the 'samljob - Inputs' page for a Stream Analytics job named 'samljob'. The 'Inputs' section is selected in the sidebar. A modal window titled 'Blob storage' is open, showing the configuration for a new input. The 'Input alias' field is set to 'inputdata'. The 'Select Blob storage from your subscriptions' option is selected, and the 'Pay-As-You-Go' subscription is chosen. Under 'Storage account', 'samlsa' is selected. The 'Container' section shows 'Use existing' selected with 'samcontainer' chosen. The 'Path pattern' field is empty. The 'Date format' is set to 'YYYY/MM/DD', and the 'Time format' is set to 'HH'. The 'Event serialization format' is set to 'CSV'. A 'Save' button is at the bottom of the modal.

# Database Management Systems

Lecture 12

Azure Machine Learning\*

Azure Stream Analytics\*

\* not among the exam topics

# Analiza sentimentelor Azure Machine Learning și Azure Stream Analytics

# Job

## \* configurare output

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure portal interface for configuring the outputs of a Stream Analytics job named "samljob".

**Left Sidebar:** The sidebar lists various Azure services: Create a resource, Home, Dashboard, All services, FAVORITES (All resources, Resource groups, App Services, Function Apps, SQL databases, Azure Cosmos DB, Virtual machines, Load balancers, Storage accounts, Virtual networks, Azure Active Directory, Monitor, Advisor, Security Center, Cost Management + Billing, Help + support).

**Top Bar:** The title bar shows "Outputs - Microsoft Azure" and the URL "https://portal.azure.com/#@surdusabinayahoo.onmicrosoft.com/resource/subscriptions/37066c72-defe-4c6a-b1bd-875c3cceff91/resourceGroups/samlrg/pr".

**Middle Area:** The main area displays the "samljob - Outputs" page under "All resources". It includes a search bar, a list of outputs, and a detailed configuration pane.

**Output List:** The list shows two outputs: "samljob" and "samlsa".

**Configuration Pane:** The right side contains a detailed configuration pane for "samljob". The "Outputs" section is currently selected. Other sections include Overview, Activity log, Access control (IAM), Tags, Diagnose and solve problems, Settings, Locks, Job topology, Inputs, Functions, Query, and General.

**SINK:** A "SINK" section is visible on the right, listing various sinks: Event Hub, SQL Database, Blob storage, Table storage, Service Bus topic, Service Bus queue, Cosmos DB, Power BI, and Data Lake Storage Gen1. "Blob storage" is highlighted with a box.

# Job

## \* configurare output

- *Event serialization format -> CSV*

The screenshot shows the Azure Stream Analytics job configuration interface. On the left, the navigation menu includes options like Create a resource, Home, Dashboard, All services, Favorites (All resources, Resource groups, App Services, Function Apps, SQL databases, Azure Cosmos DB, Virtual machines, Load balancers, Storage accounts, Virtual networks, Azure Active Directory, Monitor, Advisor, Security Center, Cost Management + Billing, and Help + support). The main area shows the 'samljob' Stream Analytics job under 'All resources'. The 'Outputs' section is selected in the left sidebar. A detailed configuration dialog is open for a 'Blob storage' sink, with the following settings:

- Output alias:** samloutput
- Storage account:** samlsa
- Storage account key:** (redacted)
- Container:** Create new (samlcontainer) or Use existing (selected)
- Path pattern:** (empty)
- Date format:** YYYY/MM/DD
- Time format:** HH
- Event serialization format:** CSV (selected)
- Delimiter:** comma ()

A 'Save' button is at the bottom right of the dialog.

# Job

## \* adăugare funcție

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Azure portal interface for managing a Stream Analytics job named "samljob". The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with various service icons. The main content area displays the "samljob - Functions" configuration page. On the right side, there is a detailed configuration panel for a function. The "FUNCTION" tab is selected, showing options for "PARAMETERS", "OUTPUT TYPE", and "FUD". A dropdown menu is open under "OUTPUT TYPE", with "Azure ML" highlighted. Other options visible in the dropdown include "Javascript UDF" and "Javascript UDA". The configuration panel also includes sections for "Overview", "Activity log", "Access control (IAM)", "Tags", "Diagnose and solve problems", "Settings", "Locks", "Job topology", "Inputs", "Functions" (which is currently selected), "Query", "Outputs", "Configure", "Storage account settings", "Scale", "Locale", "Event ordering", "Error policy", "Compatibility level", and "General".

# Job

## \* adăugare funcție

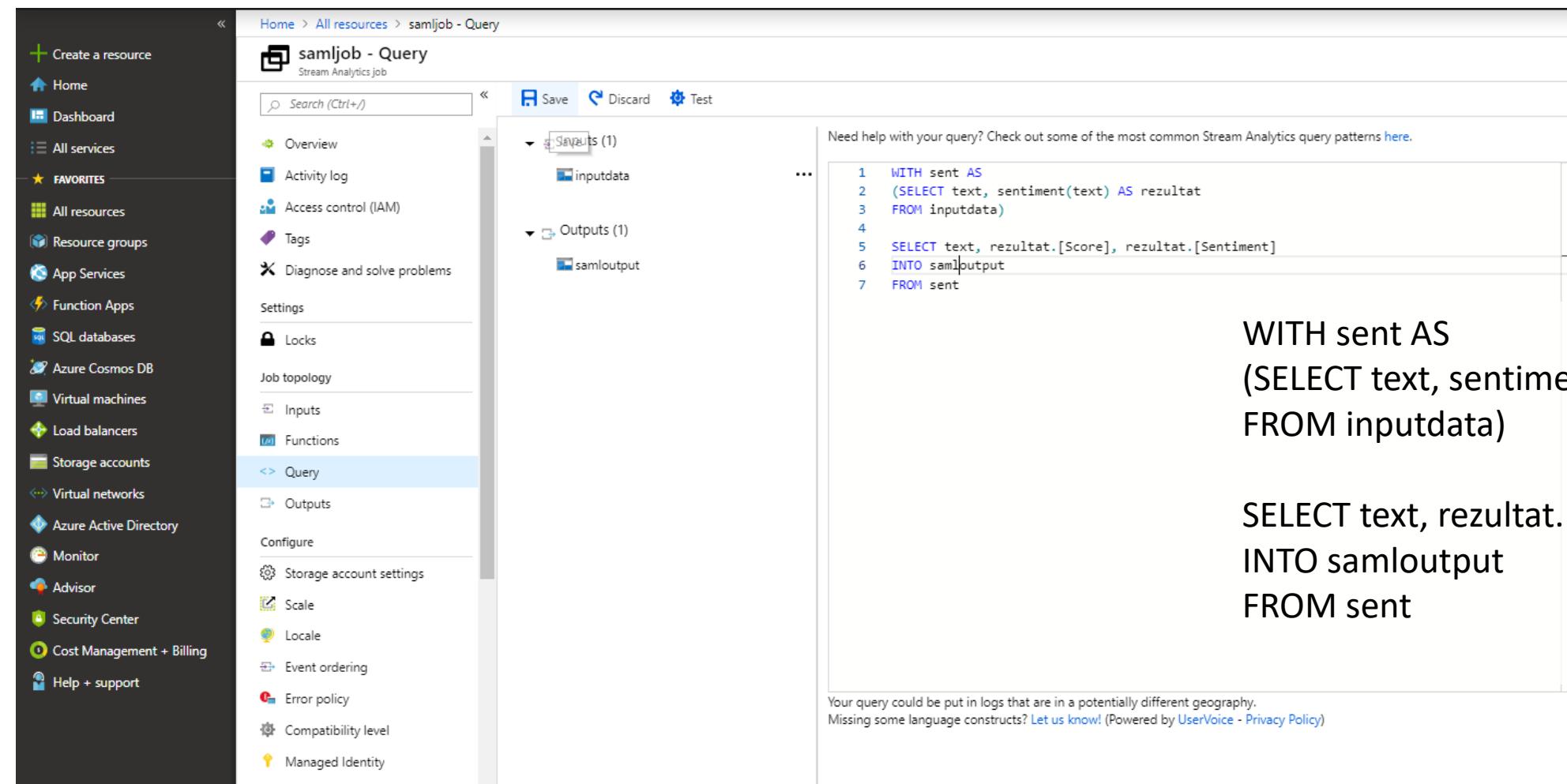
- *Provide Azure Machine Learning function settings manually*
  - introducere URL și Key din workbook Excel salvat anterior (Web Service URL și Access Key)

The screenshot shows the Azure Stream Analytics job configuration interface. On the left, the navigation menu includes 'Create a resource', 'Home', 'Dashboard', 'All services', 'FAVORITES', 'All resources', 'Resource groups', 'App Services', 'Function Apps', 'SQL databases', 'Azure Cosmos DB', 'Virtual machines', 'Load balancers', 'Storage accounts', 'Virtual networks', 'Azure Active Directory', 'Monitor', 'Advisor', 'Security Center', 'Cost Management + Billing', and 'Help + support'. The main area shows the 'samjob - Functions' blade under the 'samjob - Stream Analytics job' resource. The 'Functions' section is selected. A modal window titled 'Azure Machine Learning function' is open, showing the configuration for a new function named 'sentiment'. The 'Function alias' field contains 'sentiment'. The 'URL' field is set to 'https://ussouthcentral.services.azureml.net/workspaces/bbf7'. The 'Key' field is obscured by redaction dots. The 'Save' button is visible at the bottom right of the modal.

# Job

## \* interogare

- definire interogare de transformare care apelează funcția creată anterior pe fiecare tweet input; *Save*



The screenshot shows the Azure Stream Analytics job configuration interface. On the left, there's a sidebar with various service icons. The main area is titled "samljob - Query" and shows a Stream Analytics job named "samljob". The "Query" tab is selected. The query editor contains the following T-SQL code:

```
1 WITH sent AS
2 (SELECT text, sentiment(text) AS resultat
3 FROM inputdata)
4
5 SELECT text, resultat.[Score], resultat.[Sentiment]
6 INTO samloutput
7 FROM sent
```

The code is divided into two parts: a common table expression (CTE) named "sent" that selects the "text" column and the result of the "sentiment" function as "resultat", and a main query that selects "text", "resultat.[Score]", and "resultat.[Sentiment]" into the output table "samloutput" from the CTE "sent".

Below the code, there's a note: "Need help with your query? Check out some of the most common Stream Analytics query patterns [here](#).  
...". At the bottom, there's a footer note: "Your query could be put in logs that are in a potentially different geography.  
Missing some language constructs? [Let us know!](#) (Powered by [UserVoice](#) - [Privacy Policy](#))".

**WITH sent AS**  
**(SELECT text, resultat.[Score], resultat.[Sentiment]**  
**FROM inputdata)**

**SELECT text, resultat.[Score], resultat.[Sentiment]**  
**INTO samloutput**  
**FROM sent**

# Job

## \* demarare job

- *Start*
- *Job output start time -> Custom -> Start time:*

*moment încărcare fișier input .csv - o zi*

The screenshot shows the Azure Stream Analytics job configuration interface. On the left is the main navigation menu with various service icons. In the center, the 'All resources' blade is open, showing a list of resources with 'samlijob' selected. To the right, the 'samlijob' blade displays the job details, including its name, resource group (samrlrg), status (Created), location (South Central US), and subscription information. The 'Inputs' section shows one input named 'inputdata'. The 'Outputs' section shows one output named 'samloutput'. The 'Query' section displays a partial SQL query:

```
1 WITH  
2 (SELECT  
3 FROM  
4 )  
5 SELECT  
6 INTO  
7 FROM
```

Below the query, the 'Monitoring' section shows performance metrics for the job.

A separate 'Start job' dialog is overlaid on the right side of the interface. It shows the 'Job output start time' dropdown set to 'Custom', with the date '2019-04-25' and time '6:52:37 PM' selected. A large blue 'Start' button is at the bottom of the dialog.

# Verificare output

- container
  - descărcare fișier generat

The screenshot shows the Azure Storage Blobs Overview page for a container named "samlcontainer". The left sidebar lists various Azure services, and the main pane displays the contents of the "samlcontainer".

**Authentication method:** Access key ([Switch to Azure AD User Account](#))  
**Location:** samlcontainer

| NAME                                             | MODIFIED              | ACCESS TIER    | BLOB TYPE  | SIZE  | LEASE STATE |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|------------|-------|-------------|
| 430852246_9910bc3f97d34d92b54c661a67511314_1.csv | 4/26/2019, 7:04:29 PM | Hot (Inferred) | Block blob | 424 B | Available   |
| input_saml.csv                                   | 4/26/2019, 2:56:00 PM | Hot (Inferred) | Block blob | 100 B | Available   |

<https://portal.azure.com/#>

# Verificare output

- container
  - descărcare fișier generat

*text*

*They love ice cream*

*The sky is blue*

*Machine Learning is cool*

*Machine Learning is not cool*

*score*

*0.665407181*

*0.574048638*

*0.620857418*

*0.306780905*

*sentiment*

*positive*

*neutral*

*positive*

*negative*

# Eliminare resurse

The screenshot shows the Azure portal's 'Resource groups' blade. On the left is a dark sidebar with navigation links: 'Create a resource', 'Home', 'Dashboard', 'All services', 'FAVORITES' (with a star icon), 'All resources', 'Resource groups' (which is selected and highlighted in blue), 'App Services', 'Function Apps', 'SQL databases', 'Azure Cosmos DB', 'Virtual machines', 'Load balancers', 'Storage accounts', 'Virtual networks', 'Azure Active Directory', 'Monitor', 'Advisor', 'Security Center', and 'Cost Management + Billing'. The main area has a light gray header with 'Home > Resource groups' and a back arrow. Below the header is a toolbar with 'Add', 'Edit columns', 'Refresh', 'Assign tags', and 'Export to CSV' buttons. The main content area is titled 'Subscriptions: Pay-As-You-Go' and shows a table with one item: 'samlrg'. The table has columns for 'NAME' (with a checkmark and sorting arrow), 'SUBSCRIPTION' (Pay-As-You-Go), and 'LOCATION' (South Central). To the right of the table is a context menu with options: 'Delete resource group' (highlighted with a dashed blue border) and '...'. At the bottom of the table are filter and grouping dropdowns: 'Filter by name...', 'All locations', 'All tags', and 'No grouping'.

| NAME   | SUBSCRIPTION  | LOCATION      |
|--------|---------------|---------------|
| samlrg | Pay-As-You-Go | South Central |

Filter by name... All locations All tags No grouping

# Eliminare resurse

The screenshot shows the Azure portal interface. On the left, a dark sidebar lists various services: Create a resource, Home, Dashboard, All services, Favorites, All resources, Resource groups, App Services, Function Apps, SQL databases, Azure Cosmos DB, Virtual machines, Load balancers, Storage accounts, Virtual networks, Azure Active Directory, Monitor, Advisor, Security Center, Cost Management + Billing, and Help + support. The 'Resource groups' option is selected. The main content area shows a 'Resource groups' list with one item: 'samlrg'. A confirmation dialog box is open over the list, asking 'Are you sure you want to delete "samlrg"?'. The dialog includes a warning message: 'Warning! Deleting the "samlrg" resource group is irreversible. The action you're about to take can't be undone. Going further will delete this resource group and all the resources in it permanently.', a text input field containing 'samlrg', and a table showing 'AFFECTED RESOURCES' with two entries: 'samljob' (Stream Analytics job) and 'samlsa' (Storage account), both located in South Central US. At the bottom of the dialog are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Home > Resource groups > Are you sure you want to delete "samlrg"?

Resource groups

Default Directory

Add Edit columns More

Filter by name...

NAME

samlrg

Are you sure you want to delete "samlrg"?

Warning! Deleting the "samlrg" resource group is irreversible. The action you're about to take can't be undone. Going further will delete this resource group and all the resources in it permanently.

TYPE THE RESOURCE GROUP NAME:

samlrg

AFFECTED RESOURCES

There are 2 resources in this resource group that will be deleted.

| NAME    | TYPE                 | LOCATION         |
|---------|----------------------|------------------|
| samljob | Stream Analytics job | South Central US |
| samlsa  | Storage account      | South Central US |

Delete Cancel